Plato’s Phaedo

Greek Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

Geoffrey Steadman
# Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preface to the Series</td>
<td>v-vi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brief Introduction to the Phaedo</td>
<td>vii-viii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Use this Commentary</td>
<td>vii-viii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running Core Vocabulary (10 or more times)</td>
<td>x xi-xviii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations</td>
<td>xix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nouns, Pronouns, Correlatives</td>
<td>226-227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synopses (regular and -μ verbs)</td>
<td>228-233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alphabetized Core Vocabulary (20 or more times)</td>
<td>234-238</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Text and Commentary

I. Socrates’ Reasons for Not Fearing Death

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. 57a-59c Phaedo recalls Socrates’ last day for Echecrates</td>
<td>1-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. 59c-64a Socrates greets his friends in prison</td>
<td>7-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. 64a-69e Socrates: A philosopher seeks death</td>
<td>24-46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. Three Arguments for the Immortality of the Soul

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. 69e-72d First Argument: Generation from Opposites</td>
<td>46-58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. 72d-77a Second Argument: Recollection</td>
<td>58-77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. 77a-84b Third Argument: Affinity</td>
<td>77-104</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

III. The Objections of Simmias and Cebes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. 84c-86e Simmias’ Objection: Soul as a Harmony</td>
<td>104-113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. 86e-88b Cebes’ Objection: Weaver Analogy</td>
<td>113-118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. 88c-91c Socrates and the Value of Logos</td>
<td>119-129</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IV. Socrates’ Responses and the Final Argument

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. 91c-95a Socrates’ Reply to Simmias</td>
<td>129-143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. 95a-107b Socrates’ Reply to Cebes: The Final Argument</td>
<td>143-188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95e-99d Mechanistic Explanations of Causes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99d-102a Forms as Causes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102a-107a The Forms prove the Soul is Deathless and Indestructible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

V. Socrates’ Myths of the Afterlife and the True Earth

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>107b-115a Socrates’ myths of the Afterlife and the True Earth</td>
<td>188-213</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VI. Socrates’ Death by Hemlock

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>115b-118a Socrates’ death by hemlock</td>
<td>213-224</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1Outline from R. S. Bluck’s Plato’s *Phaedo*
Preface to the Series

The aim of this commentary is to make Plato’s *Phaedo* as accessible as possible to intermediate and advanced Greek readers so that they may experience the joy, insight, and lasting influence that comes from reading one of the greatest works in classical antiquity in the original Greek.

Each page of the commentary includes 12 lines of Greek text (Burnet’s Oxford Classical Text) with all corresponding vocabulary and grammar notes below the Greek on the same page. The vocabulary contains all words occurring 19 or fewer times, arranged alphabetically in two columns. The grammatical notes are organized according to line numbers and likewise arranged in two columns. The advantage of this format is that it allows me to include as much information as possible on a single page and yet insure that entries are distinct and readily accessible to readers.

To complement the vocabulary within the commentary, I have added a list of words occurring 10 more times at the beginning of this book and recommend that readers review this list before they read each section. An alphabetized form of the core list can be found in the glossary. Together, this book has been designed in such a way that, once readers have mastered the core list, they will be able to rely solely on the Greek text and commentary and not need to turn a page or consult dictionaries as they read.

The grammatical notes are designed to help beginning readers read the text, and so I have passed over detailed literary and philosophical explanations in favor of short, concise, and frequent entries that focus exclusively on grammar and morphology. The notes are intended to complement, not replace, an advanced-level commentary, and so I recommend that readers consult an advanced-level commentary after each reading from this book. Assuming that readers finish elementary Greek with varying levels of ability, I draw attention to subjunctive and optative constructions, identify unusual aorist and perfect forms, and in general explain aspects of the Greek that they should have encountered in first year study but perhaps forgotten. As a rule, I prefer to offer too much assistance rather than too little.
Better Vocabulary-Building Strategies

One of the virtues of this commentary is that it eliminates time-consuming dictionary work. While there are many occasions where a dictionary is absolutely necessary for developing a nuanced reading of the Greek, in most instances any advantage that may come from looking up a word and exploring alternative meanings is outweighed by the time and effort spent in the process. Many continue to defend this practice, but I am convinced that such work has little pedagogical value for intermediate and advanced students and that the time saved by avoiding such drudgery can be better spent reading more Greek, reviewing morphology, memorizing vocabulary, mastering principal parts of verbs, and reading advanced-level commentaries and secondary literature.

As an alternative to dictionary work, I recommend that readers review the core vocabulary lists. In addition to the running list of words occurring 20 or more times in this volume, there is a running list of words occurring 10 or more times on the website. I encourage readers to single out, drill, and memorize these common words before they encounter them in the reading and devote comparatively little attention to words that occur once or twice. Altogether, I am confident that readers who follow this regimen will learn the Phaedo’s vocabulary more efficiently and develop fluency more quickly than with traditional methods.

Print on Demand Books

Finally, this volume is a self-published, print-on-demand (POD) book, and as such it gives its author distinct freedoms not available in traditional publications. Since this book is no more than a pdf file waiting to be printed, I am able to respond very quickly to readers’ recommended changes and create an revised edition that is available for sale within 24 hours. If you would like to suggest changes or download a free .pdf copy of this commentary, please see one of the addresses below. All criticisms are welcome, and I would be very grateful for your help.

Geoffrey Steadman Ph.D.
geoffreysteadman@gmail.com
www.geoffreysteadman.com
An Overview of the *Phaedo*

The dialogue opens in the town of Phlius in the northeast Peloponnnessus as Phaedo, the dialogue’s namesake, recent from Athens encounters Echecrates and agrees to offer a first-hand account of Socrates’ final day and execution. The remainder of the conversation is Phaedo’s recollection of that day.

As Phaedo recounts, a group of Socrates’ friends enter the prison at daybreak with the knowledge that Socrates’ death will be imminent. Every year the Athenians garland a ship and send it to Delos, an island sacred to Apollo, to commemorate Theseus’ victory over the Minotaur, and during this time the city is not allowed to perform executions. Since Socrates’ trial occurred just as the ship set sail, Socrates has remained in prison for as many as thirty days awaiting his own execution. Now that the ship has returned, the Athenians will proceed as planned.

As the group enters, they find that Socrates has just been released from his shackles and that his wife Xanthipppe, who has been sitting beside him with a child in her arms, is being led from the room in tears. When Socrates remarks that he has been spending time putting Aesop’s fables into verse, Cebes asks why, and Socrates explains that he repeatedly received a dream encouraging him to pursue a musical life. While he had always assumed that the dream was urging him to pursue philosophy and had lived accordingly, he wanted to try his hand at verse just in case he had misinterpreted the vision. During the course of this reply, Socrates makes the provocative suggestion that philosophers wish to die as soon as possible, even though they are not permitted to end their own lives. Cebes and Simmias are greatly dismayed by Socrates’ remarks, and, when pressed, Socrates suggests that there may be something more rewarding after death.

It is at this point that the dialogue takes a turn that requires considerable more attention and mental effort from readers than the conversation to this point. Socrates departs from his usual method of questioning-and-answering and offers not one but three lengthy arguments for the immortality of the soul, which we today call the Cyclical argument (or Argument from Opposites), the Argument from Recollection, and the Affinity Argument.
Under the circumstances we expect Socrates’ friends to listen attentively, nod approvingly, and provide Socrates whatever solace they can to make his last moments as comfortable as possible, but Cebes and Simmias will not be silenced. Neither man is convinced by Socrates’ arguments, which suggests that we readers should not be persuaded either. At first with gentle laughter and whispers and later in open disagreement, the two young men offer lengthy objections of their own. Simmias proposes that, contrary to Socrates’ arguments, the soul is nothing more than a harmony of the body, which dissipates shortly after death, and Cebes argues that the soul is analogous to a garment, which is renewed by the weaver while he is alive but will not survive once the weaver perishes.

As if expressing the collective disappointment of all present in the prison, Echecrates interrupts Phaedo’s narrative to lament how Socrates’ arguments, which seemed so persuasive, have now fallen into doubt. Far from being unaware of the solemnity that the occasion requires, Simmias and Cebes have shown themselves to be earnest participants in the inquiry, and Socrates celebrates their efforts. He warns the others not to be misologists, who hate logos and are quickly deterred from rational discussion. Socrates is well aware of the Herculean task that lies ahead but insists on the need for courage and a desire for soundness (90e) when an argument fails. He urges Simmias and Cebes to “give little thought to Socrates and much more to truth” (91c).

Socrates replies first to Simmias’ objection and then to Cebes’ and in doing so adds the most detailed argument yet for the immortality of the soul, the so-called Final Argument, which involves a discussion of the nature of causes, explanations, and Platonic Forms and ends with the identification of the soul as the imperishable Form of life. Then, Socrates unexpectedly concludes with an elaborate myth of the afterlife, which promises rewards for the virtuous—if their souls are truly immortal.

Readers eager to learn of any objections are soon disappointed: there is simply no more time to talk. While Socrates removes himself to visit his family one last time, his friends discuss what has been said. Readers, however, are not privy to their replies. When Socrates rejoins the group, they marvel at how calmly and cheerfully he drinks the hemlock (117c). The task to continue the inquiry is left to us.
Characters

Outer Frame

Phaedo of Elis (b. 419/8): In the dialogue, Phaedo was a close associate of Socrates and present at the philosopher’s execution. According to a later account, Phaedo became a slave in Athens when his native city of Elis in the northwest Peloponnesus was captured during Athens’ war with Sparta. It was shortly after this time that he met Socrates and was freed—perhaps even at Socrates’ behest. Phaedo later formed a school of philosophy in Elis and was said to have written his own dialogues.

Echecrates of Phlius (fl. 399-?): We know very little about Echecrates except what is mentioned in the Phaedo. Diogenes Laertius (VIII.46) says that Echecrates was a member of a community of Pythagoreans in Phlius. If true, Echecrates is a suitable choice to listen attentively as Phaedo recalls Socrates’ arguments on immortality.

Inner Frame

Simmias of Thebes (b. 430s’s): Xenophon, a contemporary of Plato, describes Simmias, along with Crito, Phaedo, and Cebes, as an associate (ὁµιλητής) of Socrates (Mem. 1.2.48). In the Crito, Simmias and Cebes offer to provide the funds necessary to help Socrates escape from prison (45b), and in the Phaedrus Socrates notes that Simmias is particularly fond of logos (242b). Later accounts claim that both Simmias and Cebes associated with the Pythagorean teachers Philolaus and Eurytus, but Simmias’ advocacy of the non-Pythagorean view of the soul-as-a-harmony may cast some doubt on this identification.

Cebes of Thebes (430s’s – 350’s): Mentioned in several of Plato’s works along with Simmias, Cebes is described in the Phaedo as a “young man” (νεανίσκος, 89a) who speaks in a dialect peculiar to Thebes (62a).

Crito of Athens (~70 years old, b. 469): Crito is an intimate friend of the same age as Socrates. In the Apology, Crito offers to pay Socrates’ fine (38b), and in the Crito he promises to use his own influence to help Socrates escape execution (44b-46a). In the Phaedo, Crito is silent throughout much of the discussion but remains close by Socrates’ side when the philosopher finally sends away his friends, visits his family one last time, and consumes the hemlock.

Socrates of Athens (70 yrs. old; 470-399)

Xanthippe of Athens (b. ~440): Mentioned no where else in Plato’s work, Xanthippe was the young wife of Socrates, with whom she had three children: Lamprocles, Sophroniscus and Menexenus. The ages of the boys, one teenager and two children (μειράκιον...παιδία, Ap. 34d), suggest that Xanthippe was between 30 and 45. The fact that the eldest son was named after his maternal grandfather rather than after his paternal grandfather, as was the custom in Athens, suggests that Xanthippe’s family enjoyed a higher status in Athenian society than Socrates’.
How to Use this Commentary

Research shows that, as we learn how to read in a second language, a combination of reading and direct vocabulary instruction is statistically superior to reading alone. One of the purposes of this book is to encourage active acquisition of vocabulary.

1. Master the list of words occurring 10 or more times as soon as possible.
   A. Develop a daily regimen for memorizing vocabulary before you begin reading. Review and memorize the words in the running list that occur 10 or more times before you read the corresponding pages in Greek.
   B. Download and use the digital flashcards available online in ppt or jpg formats. Research has shown that you must review new words at least seven to nine times before you are able to commit them to long term memory, and flashcards are efficient at promoting repetition. Develop the habit of deleting flashcards that you have mastered and focus your efforts on the remaining words.

2. Read actively and make lots of educated guesses
   One of the benefits of traditional dictionary work is that it gives readers an interval between the time they encounter a questionable word or form and the time they find the dictionary entry. That span of time often compels readers to make educated guesses and actively seek out understanding of the Greek. Despite the benefits of corresponding vocabulary lists there is a risk that without that interval of time you will become complacent in your reading habits and treat the Greek as a puzzle to be decoded rather than a language to be learned. Your challenge, therefore, is to develop the habit of making an educated guess under your breath each time before you consult the commentary. If you guess correctly, the vocabulary and notes will reaffirm your understanding of the Greek. If you answer incorrectly, you will become more aware of your weaknesses and therefore more capable of correcting them.

3. Reread a passage immediately after you have completed it.
   Repeated readings not only help you commit Greek to memory but also promote your ability to read the Greek as Greek. You learned to read in your first language through repeated readings of the same books. Greek is no different. The more comfortable you are with older passages, the more easily you will read new ones.

4. Reread the most recent passage immediately before you begin a new one.
   This additional repetition will strengthen your ability to recognize vocabulary, forms, and syntax quickly, bolster your confidence, and most importantly provide you with much-needed context as you begin the next selection in the text.

5. Consult an advanced-level commentary for a more nuanced interpretation
   After your initial reading of a passage and as time permits, consult the highly readable notes in books by Rowe. Your initial reading will allow you to better understand the advanced commentary, which in turn will provide a more insightful literary analysis than is possible in this volume.
**Plato’s *Phaedo***

**Core Vocabulary (10 or more times)**

The following is a running list of all 297 words that occur ten or more times in *Phaedo*. All words occurring twenty or more times are not included elsewhere in the commentary. Words occurring 10-19 times, however, are found in this list as well as in all corresponding vocabulary lists throughout the book.

The number of occurrences, indicated at the end of the dictionary entry, were tabulated by the author. The left column indicates the page number where the word first occurs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ακούω, ακούσομαι, ἡκουσα, ἀκῆκοα, ἡκοῦσθην</td>
<td>to hear, listen to</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἄλλος, -η, -ο</td>
<td>othother</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἄν</td>
<td>modal adv.</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀνήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ</td>
<td>a man</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀπο-θνήσκω, -θανοῦμαι, -θανον, -τέθυνκα</td>
<td>to die off, perish</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἄρα</td>
<td>then, therefore, it seems, it turns out</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>αὐτός, -η, -ός</td>
<td>self; he, she, it; the same</td>
<td>455</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀφικνέομαι, ἀφίξομαι, ἀφικόμην, —, ἀφίγμαι, —</td>
<td>to come, arrive</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>γάρ</td>
<td>for, since</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>γε</td>
<td>at least, at any rate; indeed</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην, γέγονα</td>
<td>come to be, be born</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δέ</td>
<td>but, and, on the other hand</td>
<td>474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δή</td>
<td>indeed, surely, really, certainly, just</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δίκη, ἡ</td>
<td>justice; lawsuit, trial, penalty</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐγώ</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>εἰμί, ἔσομαι</td>
<td>to be, exist</td>
<td>680</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>εἶπον</td>
<td>aor. said, spoke (aor. λέγω, φημι)</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ον</td>
<td>that, those</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐν</td>
<td>in, on, among. (+ dat.)</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ἐχεκράτης, ὁ</td>
<td>Echecrates</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἡξω, ἔξω, ἔσχον, ἔσχηκα</td>
<td>have, hold, possess; be able; be disposed</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἴ</td>
<td>or (either...or); than</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἴμει:</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θάνατος, ὁ</td>
<td>death</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>καί</td>
<td>and; also, even, too, in fact</td>
<td>1371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>νῦν</td>
<td>now; as it is</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὁ, ἦ, τό</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>2279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὅσα, -α, -ον</td>
<td>of what sort, as</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὁσίς, ἒτις, ὁ τι</td>
<td>whoever, whichever, whatever</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὁτι</td>
<td>that; because</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὁ-δέ:</td>
<td>and not, but not, nor, not even</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὁ-τε</td>
<td>and not, neither...nor</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὁδ-εἰς, ὁδ-είς, ὁδ-έν</td>
<td>no one, nothing</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὁνυ</td>
<td>and so, then</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
01 οὐτος, αὐτή, τοῦτο: this, these, 459
01 πάνυ: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 70
01 παρα-γίγνομαι, -γενήσομαι, -εγενόμην: to come near, be present, 11
01 περι: around, about, concerning, 123
01 πίνω, πίομαι, ἐπίον, πέπτωκα, πέπομαι, ἐπῶθην: to drink, 16
01 πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 13
01 πῶς: how? in what way?, 34
01 σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
01 Σωκράτης, -ους, ὁ: Socrates, 117
01 τελευτάω, τελευτήσω, τετελεύτηκα: to end, finish, die, 31
01 τίς, τί: anyone, anything, someone, -thing, 283
01 τίς, τί: who? which?, 117
01 τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17
01 Φαίδων, -ωνος, ὁ: Phaedo, 31
01 φάρμακον, τό: medicine, remedy, drug, 10
01 χρόνος, ὁ: time, 47
01 ὦ: O! oh! 164
02 ἄρχω, ἄξω, ἥγαγον, ἥξα, ἥγιοι, ἥχθην: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 13
02 αἰ: always, forever, in every case, 47
02 δῆλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
02 εἰ: if, whether, 138
02 εἰς: into, to, in regard to (+ acc.), 102
02 ἐκ, ἐξ: out of, from (+ gen.), 106
02 έκαστος, -η, -ον: each, every one, 42
02 ἔτη: still, besides, further, 56
02 κατά: down from (gen), down along (acc), 78
02 λέγω, λέξω (ἐρέω), ἐλέξα (ἐπιον), εἴλοχα, ἐλέγην: to say, speak, 214
02 μέν: on the one hand, 214
02 ναί: yes, yea, 15
02 οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14
02 πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13
02 πολύς, πολλά, πολύ: much, many, 102
02 ποτέ: ever, at some time, once, 27
02 τότε: then, at that time, 30
02 τυγχάνω, τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον, τετύχηµα: chance upon, attain; happen, 51
02 ύστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; adv. later 17
02 φαίνω, φανώ, ἐφηνα, ἐφάνθην (ἐφάνην): show; mid. appear, seem, 46
02 φησί, φήσω, ἐφήσα: to say, claim, assert, 304
02 ως: as, thus, so, that; when, since, 166
03 ἄρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 12
03 διά: through (gen), on account of, because of (acc), 89
03 ἐπειδὴ: whenever, 29
03 θεός, ὁ: a god, divinity, 32
03 μηδ-εἰς, μηδ-εἵα, μηδ-ἔν: no one, nothing, 24
03 ὁταν: ὅτε ἂν, whenever, 28
03 πάλιν: again, once more; back, backwards, 26
03 πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
03 πρίν: until, before, 28
03 ὧσπερ: as, just as, as if, 81
04 ἀλλά: but; well, 217
04 δύναµαι, δυνησία, δεδυνηθην: to be able, can, 15
04 ἐγω-γε: I for my part, 39
04 ἐτερός, -α, -ον: one of two, other, different, 58
04 μή: not, lest, 151
04 μήν: truly, surely, certainly, 22
04 οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ: not, 306
04 ούδαμος: in no way, not at all, 11
04 πάρ-ειμι, -έσομαι: to be near, be present, be at hand, 29
04 πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: every, all, the whole, 122
04 πάσχω, πείσοµαι, ἔπαθον, πέπονθα: to suffer, experience, 43
04 πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11
04 προ-θυμέομαι: to be eager, zealous, ready, 12
04 σο: you, 112
04 τοιοῦτος, -α, -οτο: such, 103
04 ύμεῖς: you, 28
05 Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
05 ἀπό: from, away from. (+ gen.), 31
05 αὖ: again, once more; further, moreover, 42
05 δοκέω, δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι: to seem (good), think, imagine, 109
05 εἴ-περ: if really, if that is to say (to imply doubt), 20
05 εἰκός, ὀτός, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 18
05 εἰς, μία, ἐν: one, single, alone, 25
05 εἰςθα: to be accustomed, 12
05 ἐκεῖ-σε: thither, to that place, 10
05 ἐρχομαι, εἰμι, ἠλθον, ἐληλυθα, —, —: to come or go, 31
05 εὖ: well, 19
05 ἡδονή, ἥ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
05 θεῖος, -α, -ου: divine, sent by the gods, 15
05 λόγος ὁ: word, speech, discourse, account 115
05 μέλλω, μελλήσω, ἐμέλησα: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
05 μη-δέ: and not, but not, nor, 20
05 οἶδα: to know, 38
05 οἴσομαι (οίμαι), ὀἴσομαι, ὀηθην: to suppose, think, imagine, 71
05 οὔτως: in this way, thus, so, 104
05 πάθος, -εος, τό: suffering, misfortune 11
05 πού: somewhere, I suppose, 48
05 τε: and, both, 152
05 τοι-νυν: well then; therefore, accordingly, 21
05 φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
05 ὡςτε: so that, that, so as to, 23
06 Κέβης, Κέβητος ὁ: Cebes, 90
06 παντά-παι: all in all, absolutely 15
06 παρά: from, beside, alongside; in respect to 36
06 Σιμμίας, Σιμμίου, ὁ: Simmias, 85
07 πρόσθεν: before, 10
08 ἀλλήλος, -α, -ον: one another, 28
08 ἐπειδή: when, since, after, 24
08 ἕως: until, as long as, 15
08 ἥκω: to have come, be present, 14
08 ἡμέρα, ἡ: day,
08 μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 30
08 ὅδε, ἥδε, τοδέ: this, this here, 45
08 ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that 10
08 ὅπερ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ: the very one who, very thing which, 42
08 πρότερος, -α, -ον: before, previous; earlier, 29
09 γιγνώσκω, γνώσομαι, ἔγνωκα: learn, know, recognize 12
09 ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that 10
09 ὅπερ, ὅπερ, ὅπερ: the very one who, very thing which, 42
09 πρότερος, -α, -ον: before, previous; earlier, 29
09 ἀναγκάζω, ἀναγκάσω, ἡμαγκάσα: to force, compel, require, 10
09 ἀνθρώπος, ὁ: human being, 66
10 βουλεύομαι, βουλήσομαι, -ει, -ς, βεβούλησαι, ἔβουλήθην: wish, want, 28
10 δύο: two, 23
10 ἐάν: εἰ ἢν, if (+ subj.), 30
10 (ἐ)θέλω ἔθελήσω, ἡθέλησα, ἠθέληκα, —, —: to be willing, wish, 17
10 ἐν-νοέω, -νοήσω, νοήσα, νενόηκα, ἐνοήθην: to notice, consider, 18
10 ἔναντίος, -α, -ον: opposite, contrary, 63
10 ἐξωμα: to be like, seem likely (dat.), 24
10 καλέω, καλέω, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην: call, summon, 24
10 λαμβάνω, λήσω, ἔλαβον, λέληθα: to take, receive, catch, grasp, 29
10 πρός: to (acc), near, in addition to (dat), 62
10 ύπό: by, because of, from (gen), under (dat)50
10 φύω, φύσω, ἐφυν (ἐφυσα), πέφυκα: bring forth; grow; be by nature, 14
11 ἀληθής, -ές: true, 63
11 ἀνα-μιμητικός, -μηνός, -ἐμφανής: to remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16
11 ἀπο-κρίνωμαι, ἀπο-κρινούμαι, ἀπο-ἐκρίθη: to answer, reply, 13
11 ἐρωτάω, ἐρωτήσω, ἥρόμην: to ask, inquire, question, 12
11 Ζεὺς, ὦ: Zeus, 11
11 ἤδη: already, now, at this time, 16
11 νη: by... (+ acc, invoking a god ), 14
11 ποιέω, ποιήσω, ἐποίησα, πεποίηκα, πεποίημαι, ἐποίηθην: do, make, 64
11 χρή: it is necessary, is fitting; must, ought, 23
12 βίος, ὦ: life, 28
12 ὅς, ἦ, ὦ: who, which, that, 360
12 πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
12 τοιόσοδε, -άδε, -όνδε: such, 20
13 ἀπ-έρχομαι, -εμι, -ηλθον, -ἐληλυθα, —: to go away, depart, 14
13 δεῖ: it is necessary, must, ought (+ inf.), 37
13 ἐπιστᾶμαι, ἐπιστήσομαι, ἡμιστηθην: know, know how, understand, 13
13 πείθω, πείσω, ἐπείσα, πέποιθα, πέπεισομαι, ἐπείσθην: persuade; obey 29
13 πρῶτος, -η, -ον: first, earliest, 25
14 αἰσθάνομαι, αἰσθήσομαι, ἰσθόμην, ἰσθήμαι: perceive, feel, realize, 11
14 ἤξιος, -α, -ον: worthy of, deserving of, 15
14 αὐτοῦ (αὐτοῦ), ἤς, -ο: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 37
14 γῆ, γης ᾗ: earth, land, ground, 44
14 δια-λέγομαι, -λέξομαι, -ελέξάμην, -ελέξθην: converse with, discuss, 13
14 ἐπί: near, at (gen.), to (acc), near, at (dat.), 51
14 ἡμι: to say, ἦ δ’ ὅς – ‘he said’), 57
14 ἴσος, -η, -ον: equal to, the same as, like, 30
14 μέντοι: however, nevertheless; certainly, 37
14 πράγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair, 18
14 φιλό-σοφος, ὦ, ἦ: pursuer of wisdom, 18
15 ἐαυτοῦ, ἦς, -ο: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 24 see also αὐτοῦ
15 ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
15 ἐρωμαι, ἐρησομαι, ἥρόμην: to ask, enquire, question, 12
15 ἴσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19
15 μάλιστα: most of all; certainly, especially, 28
16 ἀπας, ἀπασα, ἀπαν: every, quite all, 14
16 ζάω, ζήσω, ζήσα, ζήκα: to live, 35
16 βαιμαστός, -η, -ον: wonderful, marvelous, strange, 11
16 θνήσκο, θνοῦμαι, ἔθανον, τεθηκα: to die, 31
16 μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 28
16 νυν-δη: just now, 15
16 οὐδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 11
17 μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, great, important, 25
18 ἀνάγκη, ἦ: necessity, force, constraint, 36
18 οὔκοον: therefore, then, accordingly, 42
19 ἀγαθός, -η, -ον: good, brave, capable, 28
Core Vocabulary

19 ἀγανακτέω, ἀγανακτήσω, ἡγανάκτησα: to be annoyed, be troubled, 12
19 ἀμείβω, -ον (-ους): better, 10
19 ἐπι-θυμεώ, ἐπιθυμήσω, ἐπεθύμησα, ἐπιθυμήθην: to desire, long for, 10
19 νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
19 φεύγω, φεύξομαι, ἔφυγον, πέφευγα, —, —: to flee, escape, 10
20 ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
20 δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
20 όμο-λογέω: to agree, acknowledge, 25
20 φέρω, οἴσω, ἤνεκγκα, ἑνήνοχα, ἡνέχθην: to bear, carry, bring, convey 20
20 χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well, 12
21 ἄπτω: fasten, grasp (gen); kindle, set fire; 11
21 δίδωμι, δώσω, δέωκα, δέδωκα, δέδομαι, δέδοθην: give, offer, grant, 15
21 ἐν-θάδε: hither, thither, 17
21 ἐπ-είτα: then, next, secondly, 20
21 ὁμοίος, -α, -ον: similar, resembling, 24
21 παρ-ἐξω, -εξω, ἐ-εσχον, -εσχηκα: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
22 κακός, -η, -όν: bad, base, cowardly, evil, 20
23 μᾶλλον: more, rather, 38
24 ἐρέω: will speak (fut. λέγω), 24
24 ὁρθός, -η, -όν: straight, upright, right, 25
24 ὁσος -η -ον: as many as; all who, all which 22
25 δρα: introduces a yes/no question, 37
25 ἡγέομαι, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγησάμην, ἡγήθην: lead; consider, believe (dat) 23
25 σῶμα, -ατος, τό: the body, 104
25 ψυχῆ, ἡ: breath, life, spirit, soul, 138
26 σκοπέω (for ther tenses, use σκέπτομαι): to look at, examine, consider 30
27 μετ-ἐξω, -εξω, -εσχον, -εσχηκα: to partake of, have share in (gen) 13
27 πότερος, -α, -ον: which of the two? whether?, 19
28 φρόνησις, -εος, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, prudence, 15
29 αἰσθήσις, -εος, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
29 μη-τε: and not, neither...nor, 15
31 καλός, -η, -όν: beautiful, fair, noble, fine, 32
31 μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, height, 17
32 καθαρός, -ά, -όν: clean, pure, spotless, 22
32 χράομαι, χρήσομαι, ἔχρησάμην, ἔχρησθην: to use, employ, enjoy, 11
33 ἀναγκαῖος, -α, -ον: necessary, inevitable, 20
33 ἐπιθυμία, ἡ: desire, longing, yearning, 10
33 ἰκανός, -η, -όν: enough, sufficient; capable, 27
34 ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11
34 φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 10
34 φύσις, -εος, ἡ: nature, character; form, 11
37 ἐνεκα: for the sake of, because of, for (gen.) 13
ὅβελτιστος, τόπος, συγ, ἀ, ἀ, ἂτίθη, ἂνἀγεφρόνησις, ἀκαλή, ἐλύρα, ἐμανθήσατο, μεῖζον, μεῖζον: put to flight, terrify, frighten, 15
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
προσ-ήκει: be at hand; it belongs to, befits 15
μείζων, μείζον: larger, greater, 26
悝όμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
ἐλάττων, -ον: smaller, fewer; less, 26
Ἦπτων, -ου: less, weaker, inferior, 16
κάλος: well; beautifully, 11
ἡλίγος, -η, -ου: few, little, small, 15
ἐπ-ἡλιγμὶ, -ολῳ, -όλεσα, -όλωλα: to destroy, kill, ruin; die, 43
φρόνησις, -εως, η: intelligence, wisdom, prudence, 15
εἶ-ἀ: either...or; whether...or, 13
γένεσις, -εως, η: origin, beginning, generation, 16
μανθάνω, μαθήσομαι, ἐμαθῶν, μεμάθηκα, —:—: to learn, understand, 12
ἐπ-μεμάθησα, -δέξω, -δεξες, -δέδεξα, -εδέχθην: demonstrate, prove 11
κύκλος, ο: a circle, round, ring, 10
ἐνα-μιμησις, -εως, η: recollection, recall, 11
εἶδος, -εως, το: form, shape, figure, 17
ἐπιστήμη, η: knowledge, understand, 20
λύρα, η: lyre, 11
ἐμαυτου, -ης, -ου: myself, 20
ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
ὁστισ-ουν, ἦττισουν, ὅτι-ουν: whosoever, 11
ἀδής, -ες: unseen, invisible, 12
ὄρατος, -η, -ου: to be seen, visible, 17
τιθημι, θησω, ἐθηκα, τεθηκα, τεθειμαι, ἐτέθην: set, put, place, arrange, 10
ἀ-θάνατος, -ου: undying, immortal, 28
ἄ-ὀρατος, -ου: unseen, invisible, 12
συγ-χωρεω, χωρήσω, ἔχωρησα, κεχώρηκα: come together; concede 13
τόπος, ο: a place, region, 22
βέλτιστος, -η, -ου: best, 14
ὄτηθ: where; in what way, how, 11
σιμικρός, έδο, -ου: small, little, 19
ἀρμονία, η: harmony, a fastening, joint, 44
θερμός, -η, -ου: hot, warm; subst. heat, 11
ψυχρός, -α, -ου: cold, chill, frigid, 10
δέξομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδέξαμην, δεδεγμαι, ἐδέχθην: to receive, accept, 26
ῥέω, ῥυθομαι, ῥρρυνη, ῥρρυθκα, —, —: to flow, run, stream, 10
πλεών, -ου: more, greater, 17
Core Vocabulary

118 ἀν-ώλεθρος, -α, -ον: indestructible, 12
127 αἰτία, ἡπ: cause, responsibility, blame, 31
146 προσ-τίθημι, θήσω, ἑθηκα, τέθηκα, ἐτέθην: to add, attribute, 10
147 ἀήρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
147 πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 14
148 οὐρανός, ὁ: sky, heaven, 10
154 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water, 14
162 σμικρότης, -τητος, ἡ: smallness, 10
174 περιττός -η -όν: odd, remarkable, 15
175 ἅρτιος, -α, -ον: even, suitable, 14
194 θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 12
Abbreviations

abs. absolute  impf. imperfect  pl. plural
acc. accusative  imper. impersonal  plpf. pluperfect
act. active  indic. indicative  pred. predicate
adj. adjective  i.o. indirect object  prep. preposition
adv. adverb  inf. infinitive  pres. present
aor. aorist  inter. interrogative  pron. pronoun
app. appositive  m. masculine  ptw place to which
comp. comparative  n(eut.) neuter  reflex. reflexive
dat. dative  nom. nominative  rel. relative
dep. deponent  obj. object  seq. sequence
d.o. direct object  opt. optative  sg. singular
f. feminine  pple. participle  subj. subject
gen. genitive  pf. perfect  superl. superlative
imper. imperative  pfw place from which  voc. vocative

1s, 2s, 3s denote 1st, 2nd, and 3rd singular.  1p, 2p, 3p denote 1st, 2nd, and 3rd plural.

Stephanus Page Numbers

The universal method for referring to pages in any of Plato’s dialogues is through Stephanus page numbers. This paging system was developed by Henri Estienne (Lat., Stephanus), who published a multi-volume edition of Plato’s dialogues in 1578. Stephanus divided each page in his edition into roughly equal sections, which he labeled with the letters a, b, c, d, and e. This system allowed his readers to locate a particular passage not only by the page number but by the section letter as well (e.g. 58a, 58b, 58c, 58d, 58e, 59a…). Many modern editions, including the Greek text in this volume, have adopted this system and gone one step further by dividing the sections into individual lines (e.g. 327a1, 327a2, 327a3…). This paging system offers the same advantages as chapters and verses in the Bible. Since most editions of Plato include the Stephanus page numbers in the margins of the text, a reader can pick up any volume of Plato—in Greek or in translation—and easily locate a particular passage in the dialogue.

Because Stephanus placed the Phaedo on pages 57-118 in his first volume of Plato, the Phaedo begins on Stephanus page 57a1 and ends on page 118a17. In this commentary all of the grammatical notes are arranged and labeled according to this paging system. Since most of the entries on a given page of commentary have the same Stephanus page number, I have identified the page number only once and labeled all subsequent grammatical note entries by the section letter and line number (e.g. 327a1, a2, a3…b1, b2, b3, b4…).
But what's it made of? It’s made of neurons. It’s made of lots of tiny robots. And we can actually explain the structure and operation of that kind of soul, whereas an eternal, immortal, immaterial soul is just a metaphysical rug under which you sweep your embarrassment for not having any explanation.

- Daniel Dennett

If you can't explain consciousness in terms of the existing fundamentals — space, time, mass, charge — then as a matter of logic, you need to expand the list. The natural thing to do is to postulate consciousness itself as something fundamental, a fundamental building block of nature.

- David Chalmers

To make the ancients speak, we must feed them with our own blood.

- von Wilamowitz-Moellendorff
EX. αυτός, ὁ Φαίδων, παρεγένος Σωκράτει ἐκείνη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὁ τὸ φάρμακον ἔπινεν ἐν τῷ δεσμωτηρίῳ, ἡ ἄλλου τοῦ ἱκουσάς;

ΦΑΙΔ. αυτός, ὁ Ἐξέκρατες.

EX. τί οὖν δὴ ἐστιν ἄττα εἶπεν ὁ ἄνηρ πρὸ τοῦ θανάτου; καὶ πῶς ἐτελεύτα; ἦδεως γὰρ ἂν ἔγω ἀκούσαμι. καὶ γὰρ οὔτε τῶν πολιτῶν Φλειασίων οὐδεὶς πάνυ τι ἐπιχωριάζει τὰ νῦν Ἀθηναῖε, οὔτε τις ξένος ἂφικται χρόνου συχνοῦ ἐκεῖθεν ὡσίς ἂν ἥμιν σαφές τι ἀγγείλαι οἶός τ’ ἢν περὶ τούτων, πλὴν γε δὴ ὃτι φάρμακον πῶς ἀποθάναι τῶν δὲ ἄλλων οὐδὲν ἔξεχε φράζεων.

ΦΑΙΔ. οὐδὲ τὰ περὶ τῆς δίκης ἃρα ἐπύθεσθε ὃν τρόπον ἐγένετο;
EX. ναί, ταύτα μὲν ἢμιν ἢγγειλέ τις, καὶ ἑθαμάξομέν τε ὑπὸ τὰ πάλαι γενομένης αὐτῆς πολλῷ ὥστερον φαίνεται ἀποθανών. τί οὖν ἦν τοῦτο, ὁ Φαίδων; 

ΦΑΙΔ. τύχη τις αὐτῶ, ὡς Ἐχέκρατες, συνέβη· ἔτυχεν γὰρ τῇ προτεραίᾳ τῆς δίκης ὥς πρώμα ἐστεμιμένη τοῦ πλοίου ὃς εἰς Γῆδον Ἀθηναίοι πέμπουσιν.

EX. τούτῳ δὲ δὴ τί ἔστων;

ΦΑΙΔ. τοῦτ’ ἐστὶ τὸ πλοῖον, ὡς φασίν Ἀθηναίοι, ἐν ὁ Θησεύς ποτε εἰς Κρήτην τοὺς ἔδετα ἐκεῖνος ὥχετο ἢ ἂγων καὶ ἔσωσε τε καὶ αὐτὸς ἑσώθη. τῶ οὖν Ἀπόλλωνι ηὐξαντο ἡ ὕλη ὡς λέγεται τότε, εἰ σωθεῖν, ἐκάστον ἔτους θεορίαν ἀπάξειν εἰς Γῆδον· ἢν δὴ ἀεὶ καὶ νῦν ἐτί ἐξ ἐκεῖνον κατ᾽ ὅγγελλῳ: to announce, proclaim, report, 3 ἄγω: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 12 Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον: Athenian, of Athens, 6 ἅπ-ἄγω: to bring back, lead away, 2 Ἀπόλλωνος, Ἀπόλλωνος, ὁ: Apollo, 4 δήλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14 δίκη, ἡ: justice; lawsuit, trial; penalty, 11 δις: twice, doubly, 3 ἐπτά: seven, 1 ἔτος, -εως, τὸ: a year, 2 εὐχομαι: to pray, vow; boast, 3 θαυμάζῳ: to wonder, marvel, be amazed at, 7 θεωρία: voyage, spectacle, sight-seeing, 3 3 ἦμιν: dat. pl. ind. object, ἡμείς kai...ye: and...in fact; emphasizes the intervening word 4 πάλαι γενομένης αὐτῆς: while this...; gen. absolute, concessive in sense πολλῷ: far, ‘by much,’ dat. of degree of difference ὥστερον: later; adv. acc. 5 ἀποθανόνων: aor. pple ἄποθανόνω 6 αὐτῶ: to him; interest συνέβη: 3rd sg. asigmatic aor. συμβαινόν ἔτυχεν...ἐστεμιμένη: τοῦγάρ, here aor., + pple often translates as ‘happens to...’; here with the pf. pass pple στρέφω 7 τῇ προτεραίᾳ: on...; time when τῆς δίκης: the trial; gen. of comparison with προτεραία, i.e. ‘earlier than the trial’ Θησεύς, ὁ: Theseus, 1 Κρήτη, ἡ: Crete, 1 ναί: yes, yea, 15 οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14 πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13 πέμπω: to send, conduct, convey, dispatch, 2 πλοῖον, τὸ: vessel, ship, 5 προτεραίος, -α, -ον: on the day before, 3 πρόμα, ἡ: stern, back of the boat, 2 στρέφω: to crown, wreck, put around, 2 συμβαινόν: to happen, occur, result, 8 σφιξο: to save, keep, preserve, 4 ὥστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; adv. later 9 τοῦτο...δῆ: precisely this; pred. of ἐστίν 10 φασίν: 3s pres. φημί 11 τοὺς...ἐκεῖνοι: those...; i.e. ‘the famous’ ὥχετο: 3s impf. mid. οἶχομαι 11 Αἴγαλος...ἐσωθε: 3s aor. active and passive respectively, ὅσωξο 2 Πηγάστων: aor. εὐχομαι; add or Ἀθηναίοι ὡς...τότε: as it is said...; parenthetical ἐς...αὐτῶν: that, if they... they would bring back; equiv. to fut. more vivid, (εἰ ὁν subj., fut.), aor. pass. opt. replaces aor. pass. subj. in secondary sequence ἐκάστου ἔτους: gen. of time within 3 ἢ δῇ: which very (spectacle); relative ἐξ ἐκείνου (χρόνον): denoting time κατά (ἐν) αὐτῶν: yearly; ‘year by year,’ κατά is distributive in sense
ἐνιαυτὸν τῷ θεῷ πέμπουσιν. ἐπειδὰν οὖν ἄρξωνται τῆς θεωρίας, νόμος ἐστὶν αὐτῶς ἐν τῷ χρόνῳ τούτῳ καθαρεύειν τήν πόλιν καὶ δημοσία μηδένα ἀποκτείνων, πρὶν ἀν εἰς Δήλον τε ἀφίκηται τὸ πλοῖον καὶ πάλιν δεύορ· τούτῳ δὲ ἐνίσετε ἐν πολλῷ χρόνῳ γίγνεται, ὅταν τύχωσιν ἄνεμοι ἀπολαβόντες αὐτοὺς. ἄρχὴ δ' ἐστὶ τῆς θεωρίας ἐπειδὰν ὁ εἰερεύς τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος στέψῃ τήν πρύμναν τοῦ πλοίου· τούτῳ δὲ ἔτυχεν, ὡσπερ λέγω, τῇ προτεραίᾳ τῆς δίκης γεγονός. διὰ ταύτα καὶ πολὺς χρόνος ἐγένετο τῷ Σωκράτει ἐν τῷ δεσμωτηρίῳ ὁ μεταξὺ τῆς δίκης τε καὶ τοῦ θανάτου.

EX. τί δὲ δὴ τὰ περὶ αὐτῶν τὸν θάνατον, ὁ Φαίδων; τί ἂν τὰ λεχθέντα καὶ πραγμάτων, καὶ τίνες οἱ παραγενόμενοι

άνεμος, -ου, ὁ: wind, 4
ἀπο-κτεῖνο: to kill, slay, 5
ἀπο-λαμβάνων: take away or apart, cut off 1
Ἀπόλλωνος, Ἀπόλλωνος, ὁ: Apollo, 4
ἄρχῃ, ἡ: a beginning; rule, office, 8
ἀρχο: to begin; rule, be leader of (gen) 12
δεσμωτήριον, τό: prison, 6
δεύο: here, to this point, hither, 7
δήλος: -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
δημόσιος, -α, -ον: public, of the people, 1
δίκη, ἡ: justice; lawsuit, trial; penalty, 11
ἐναυτός, ὁ: long period of time, year, 1
ἐν-οτε: sometime, 7

b4 ἄρξωνται: indefinite temporal clause governing a pres. subjunctive
αὐτοῖς: for them...; dat. of possession
5 τὴν πόλιν...: that the city...; acc. subject in ind. disc. governing two infinitives; μηδένα is acc. object of present inf. ἀποκτείνω
6 δημοσία: at public (expense)
πρὶν ἄν...ἀρίκητα: until...; governs ἄν + aor. subj. in a general temporal clause
8 ἐν πολλῷ χρόνῳ: over a long time
τύχωσιν...: the winds happen...; i.e. contrary winds, general temporal clause; τυγχάνω, here aor., governs a pple
c2 στέψῃ: 3s aor. subjunctive στρέφω in a general temporal clause
ἐτυχεν...γεγονός: see b8 above; neut.

ΦΑΙΔΩΝ

θεωρία, ἡ: voyage, spectacle, sight-seeing, 3
ιερεύς, -έως, ὁ: a priest, sacrificer, 1
καθαρεύειν: to be pure, be clean, 2
μεταξύ: between, betwixt, 6
νόμος, ὁ: law, custom, 1
παρα-γίγνομαι: to come near, be present, 11
πέμπω: to send, conduct, convey, dispatch, 2
πλοῖον, τό: vessel, ship, 5
πόλις, ἡ: a city, 1
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
προτεραία: -α, -ον: on the day before, 3
πρύμνα, ἡ: stern, back of the boat, 2
στρέφω: to crown, wreath, put around, 2

nom. sg. pf. pple γίγνομαι
3 τῇ προτεραίᾳ: on...; time when
προτεραία: the trial; gen. of comparison with προτεραία
4 καὶ: in fact, actually; with preceding demonstrative (GP 308)
ἐγένετο τῷ Σωκράτει: i.e. Socrates came to have...; dat. of possession
5 ὁ μεταξὺ...χρόνος: prepositional phrase in the attributive position modifying χρόνος
6 τὶ δὲ δὴ: and what precisely (were)...
τὰ...: the circumstances, the matters
7 λεχθέντα, πραγμάτων: neutral pl. aor.. pass. pple, λέγω, πράττω, τίνες...: who (were); supply linking verb
tōn ἐπιτηδείων τῷ ἀνδρί; ἦ σὺκ εἰὼν οἱ ἄρχοντες παρεῖναι, ἀλλ' ἔρημος ἐτελεύτα φίλων;

d ΦΑΙΔ. οὐδαμῶς, ἀλλὰ παρῆσαν τινες, καὶ πολλοὶ γε.

ΕΧ. ταύτα δὴ πάντα προθυμήθητι ὡς σαφέστατα ἦμιν ἀπαγγέλαι, εἰ μὴ τίς σοι ἀσχολία τυγχάνει οὔσα.

ΦΑΙΔ. ἀλλὰ σχολάζω γε καὶ πειρόσομαι ύμῖν διηγήσασθαι καὶ γὰρ τὸ μεμνήσθαι Σωκράτους καὶ αὐτὸν λέγοντα καὶ ἄλλου ἀκούοντα ἐμοίγε ἀεὶ πάντων ἥδιστον.

ΕΧ. ἀλλὰ μὴν, ὦ Φαῖδων, καὶ τοὺς ἀκονσομένους γε τοιοῦτοις ἑτέρους ἔχεις· ἀλλὰ πειρῶ ὡς ἂν δύνῃ ἀκριβεστατά διεξελθεῖν πάντα.

e ΦΑΙΔ. καὶ μὴν ἐγὼγε θαυμάστω ἐπαθὸν παραγενόμενος.

---

άκριβης, -ές: exact, accurate, precise, 5
ἄτα-ἀγγέλλω: to report, announce, 1
ἄρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 12
ἀ-σχολία, ἡ: business, occupation, 3
δι-εξ-έρχομαι: to pass through, go through 5
δι-πιγγέω: set out in detail, relate, narrate, 3
δύναμι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἐάω: to permit, allow, let be, suffer, 9
ἐπιτήδειος, -ης, -ον: fitting, favorable; friend 3
ἔρημος, -ον: alone, desolate, bereft of (gen) 2

c8 τῶν ἐπιτηδείων: among…; partitive gen.
τῷ ἀνδρὶ: dat. obj. of compound verb
εἰον: εἰ-ον, 3p impf. εἶω
παρεῖναι: inf. πάρεμι, add subject φίλους
9 ἐπελεύτα: ἐτελεύτα-ε, -contract verb
d1 παρῄσκον: impf. πάρεμι
καὶ...γε: actually...in fact; elsewhere ‘and...in fact,’ emphatic, GP 147

2 ταύτα δὴ: these very things, precisely these
προθυμήθητι: imperative, aor. mid/pass.
ῶς...: as...as possible; + superlative adv.
3 ἀπαγγελεῖα: aor. inf.
τίς...ἀσχολία: any;...τίς before an enclitic
σοι: dat. of possession
τυγχάνει: happens to; + pple, fem. sg. εἰμ
4 ἄλλα...γε: well...in fact; or ‘well, yes...’
both articles are expressing assent, GP 131
5 καὶ γὰρ: for in fact; καὶ is adverbial
tὸ μεμνήσθαι: articular inf. as subject, pf.

ηδύς, -είς, -ύ: sweet, pleasant, glad, 5
θαυμάσιος, -ιος, -ον: wonderful, marvelous, 3
μυνήσκω: to remind, recall, recollect, 6
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 11
παρα-γίνομαι: to come near, be present, 11
πειρά-σαν: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11
προ-θυμόμεια: to be eager, zealous, ready, 12
σχολάζω: to have leisure, devote oneself to 1
φίλος-ης, -ον: dear, friendly; noun friend, kin 8

mid. inf. μυνήσκω + gen.
Σωκράτους: Σωκράτε-ος, gen. sg.
καὶ...λέγοντα...καὶ ἀκούοντα: both while...and while...; participles agree with implied acc. subject of μεμνήσθαι
αὐτόν: i.e. Socrates, obj. of λέγοντα
6 ἄλλον: gen. of source with ἀκούοντα
πάντων: partitive gen. with ἥδιστον
(ἐστὶν) ἥδιστον: predicate, supply ἐστίν
7 ἀλλὰ μὴν: well, certainly; in assent GP 343
καὶ...λέγοντα...καὶ ἀκούοντα: both while...and while...; participles agree with implied acc. subject of μεμνήσθαι
αὐτὸν: i.e. Socrates, obj. of λέγοντα
8 πειρῶ: πειρά-σα, mid. imperative
ὡς...δύνῃ...: as accurately as you are able;
‘however...you are able’ indefinite relative with ἄν + 2s pres. mid. subj. δύναιμαι
e1 καὶ μὴν: and certainly, and to be sure; an assent in response to a request, GP 355
ἐπαθὸν: 1s aor. πάσχω
οὐτε γὰρ ὃς ἐκανάτω παροντά με ἀνδρὸς ἐπιτηδείου ἔλεος εἰσήῃ: εὐδαίμων γὰρ μοι ἁνήρ ἐφαίνετο, ὦ Ἐξέκρατες, καὶ τοῦ τρόπου καὶ τῶν λόγων, ὃς ἀδεώς καὶ γενναίως ἐτελεύτα, ὥστε μοι ἐκείνον παρότασθαι μηδ’ εἰς Ἀιδοὺ ἱόντα ἄνευ θείας μοίρας ἱέναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκεῖσε ἀφικόμενον εἰ πράξεων εἴπερ τις πάντοτε καὶ Ἀλλος. διὰ δὴ ταῦτα οὐδὲν πάνυ μοι ἔλευνον εἰσήη, ὡς εἰκὸς ἄν δόξειν εἰναι παρόντι πένθει, οὔτε ἀν ἡδονὴ ὡς ἐν φιλοσοφίᾳ ἡμῶν ὄντων ὤσπερ εἰώθεμεν —καὶ γὰρ οἱ λόγοι τοιοῦτοι τινες ἤσαν—ἀλλ’ ἀτεχνῶς ἀτοπὸν τί μοι πάθος παρῆν καὶ τις ἀθῆς κρᾶσις ἀπὸ τῇ θδονῆς συγκεκραμένη ὁμοῦ καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς λύψης, ἐνθυμομένῳ ὅτι αὐτίκα ἐκεῖνος ἔμελλε τελευτᾶν. καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες

ἀ-δέης, -ες: fearless, 1
ἀ-ήθης, -ες: unaccustomed, 1
Ἀιδής, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
ἄνευ: without, 9
ἀ-τεχνῶς: simply, absolutely, really, 6
ἀ-τοπος, -ου: strange, odd, extraordinary, 9
αὐτίκα: straightway, at once; presently, 2
γενναίος, -ας, -ου: noble, well-bred, 4
εἰο-ἐρχομαι: to go in, enter, 6
ἐλεώδα: to be accustomed, 12
ἐκεῖ-σε: thither, to that place, 10
ἐλεοῦς, -ης, -ου: piteous, pitted, pitiable, 1
ἐλεος, ὁ: pity, mercy, compassion, 1
ἐν-θυμεσαι: to take to heart, ponder, 2
ἐπιτηδειος, -ης, -ου: fitting, favorable; friend 3
εὐ-δαίμων, -ου: happy, fortunate, blessed, 5
ηδονῆ, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
θεῖος, -ας, -ου: divine, sent by the gods, 15
κρᾶσις, -εως, ἡ: mixing, blending, 4
λύπη, ἡ: pain, grief, 8
μοῖρα, ἡ: due measure, portion, one’s lot, 2
ὀμοῖο: at the same place or time, together, 3
πάθος-εος τό: experience incident passion 11
παρ-ἰστημι: to present, offer, set near, 3
πένθος, -εος, ὁ: woe, grief, sadness, 1
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
πώ-ποτε: ever yet, ever, 6
συγκεκράμεναι: to mix up together, blend, 1
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17
φιλο-οφίλα, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13

5 e2 ὡς...παρόντα: as if being present at...; + dat., ὡς + pple expresses alleged cause
ансρος ἐπιτηδείου: subjective gen. with ἄνθετο, dat. of compound verb
3 εἰσήη: impf. εἰο-ἐρχομαι
εὐδαίμων...ἀνήρ: nom. predicate
4 τοῦ τρόπου...τῶν λόγων: both in manner and in words; with εὐδαίμων, which governs a gen. (S 1412).
ὡς: how...!; exclamatory
5 ὡστε μοι ἐκείνον...παρίστασθαι...: so that it comes to me that that one...; + inf., a result clause; παρίστασθαι is impersonal εἰς Ἀιδοὺ...: (to the house) of Hades
μηδ’...ἄνευ: not without...; i.e. ‘with...’

59a1 δὴ ταῦτα: these very things; emphatic
οὐδέν πάνυ εὐδείνον: not quite any pity
2 ὡς...ἐν δόξειν: as it would seem...; potential aor. opt.
παρόντι πένθει: for one present in grief
οὔτε...ἡδονή: nor again was there pleasure
3 ὡς...ἀντων: on the grounds of...; gen. abs.
4 καὶ γάρ: for in fact
6 συγκεκραμένῃ: pf. pass. pple with κρᾶσις ἐνθυμομένῳ ὅτι: thinking that; with μοι

λούτα, ἱέναι: acc. sg. pple and inf. ἔρχομαι
6 ἀλλὰ καί: but in fact (that he...)
7 εἰπέρ...ἀλλος: if anyone else ever in fact (fared well in the underworld)
σχέδον τι οὕτω διεκείμεθα, τοτὲ μὲν γελώντες, ἐνίοτε δὲ δακρύοντες, εἰς δὲ ἡμῶν καὶ διαφερόντως, Ἀπολλόδωρος— οὐθα γὰρ ποὺ τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ τὸν τρόπον αὐτοῦ.

EX. πῶς γὰρ οὖ;  
ΦΑΙΔ. ἐκείνος τε τοῖν παντάπασιν οὕτως εἶχεν, καὶ αὐτὸς ἔγωγε ἐτεταράῳμην καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι.
EX. ἔτυχον δὲ, ὁ Φαίδων, τίνες παραγενόμενοι;
ΦΑΙΔ. οὕτως τε δή ὁ Ἀπολλόδωρος τῶν ἐπιχωρίων παρῆν καὶ Κριτόβουλος καὶ ὁ πατήρ αὐτοῦ καὶ ἔτι Ἐρμογένης καὶ Ἐπιγένης καὶ Αἰσχύνης καὶ Ἀντισθένης. ἦν δὲ καὶ Κτήσιππος ὁ Παιανίευς καὶ Μενέξενος καὶ Ἀλλοι τίνες τῶν ἐπιχωρίων. Πλάτων δὲ σήμαι ἰσθένει.

### Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Αἰσχύνης, ὁ</td>
<td>Aeschines, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Αὐτισθένης, ὁ</td>
<td>Antisthenes, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ἀπολλόδωρος, ὁ</td>
<td>Apollodorus, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀ-οθενεῖον</td>
<td>to be ill, weak; be not strong, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>γελάω</td>
<td>to laugh, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δακρύω</td>
<td>to weep, shed tears, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δι-κειματικός</td>
<td>especially; differently, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐν-χώριος, -α, -ου</td>
<td>local, native, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Επιγένης, ὁ</td>
<td>Epigenes, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ερμογένης, ἴσχυς</td>
<td>Hermogenes, 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Κριτόβουλος, ὁ</td>
<td>Critoboulus, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Κτήσιππος, ὁ</td>
<td>Ctesippus, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Μενέξενος, ὁ</td>
<td>Menexenus, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Παιανίς, ὁ</td>
<td>Paeneius, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>παντά-πασα: all in all, absolutely 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>παρα-γίγνομαι:</td>
<td>to come near, be present, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>πατήρ, ὁ</td>
<td>a father, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Πλάτων, ὁ</td>
<td>Plato, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>σχέδον: nearly, almost, just about, 8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ταράττω: to trouble, stir, agitate, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>τοτέ: sometimes, at some time, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>τρόπος, ὁ</td>
<td>a manner, way; turn, direction, 17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

| Фημι, Фήσω, ἔφησα: to say, claim and ἦμι: to say |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| Present | Imperfect | Present | Imperfect |
| 1st | Φήμι | ἐφημοῦν | ἦμι | ἦν 4 times |
| 2nd | Φήσω | ἐφης | ἦμι | ἦν 4 times |
| 3rd | Φήσιν | ἐφησαν | ἦσι | ἦν 53 times |

---

6
EX. ξένοι δὲ τινες παρήσαν;

ΦΑΙΔ. ναί, Συμμίας τέ γε ὁ Θηβαῖος καὶ Κέβης καὶ οἱ Φαιδώνθης καὶ Μεγαρόθεν Εὐκλείδης τε καὶ Τερψίων.

EX. τί δέ; Ἀριστιππὸς καὶ Κλεόμβροτος παρεγένοντο;

ΦΑΙΔ. οὐ δήτα· ἐν Αἰγίνη γὰρ ἐλέγοντο εἶναι.

EX. ἄλλος δὲ τις παρῆν;

ΦΑΙΔ. σχεδὸν τι οίμαι τούτους παραγενέσθαι.

EX. τί οὖν δή; τίνες φής ἥσαν οἱ λόγοι;

ΦΑΙΔ. ἐγώ σοι εξ ἀρχῆς πάντα πειράσομαι διηγήσασθαι. ἀεὶ γὰρ δὴ καὶ τὰς πρόσθεν ἡμέρας εἰόθεμεν φοιτᾶν δ και ἐγώ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι παρὰ τὸν Σωκράτη, συλλεγόμενοι ἐσωθὲν εἰς τὸ δικαστήριον ἐν ὧ καὶ ἡ δίκη ἐγένετο· πλησίον

Αἰγίνη, ἥ: Aegina, 1
Ἀριστιππὸς, δ.: Aristippus, 1
ἀρχῆς, ἥ: a beginning; rule, office, 8
δήτα: certainly, to be sure, of course, 5
δι-πρόκλημα: set out in detail, relate, narrate, 3
δικαστήριον, τὸ: court, 2
δίκη, ἥ: justice; lawsuit, trial; penalty, 11
ἐισωθα: to be accustomed, 12
Εὐκλείδης, ὁ: Euclides, 1
ἐν θέδων: from dawn, at dawn, 1
ἡμέρα, ἥ: day, 7
Θηβαῖος, -ης-ον: Theban, 2
Κλεόμβροτος, ὁ: Cleombrotus, 1

Μεγαρόθεν: from Megara, 1
ναί: yes, yea, 15
ξένος, ὁ: guest-friend, friend, stranger, 3
παρα-γήνυμαι: to come near, be present, 11
πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11
πλησίος, -ης-ον: near to, (gen) 4
πρόσθεν: before, previous, 10
συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 4
σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 8
Τερψίων, ὁ: Terpion, 1
Φαιδώνης, ὁ: Phaedonides, 1
φοιτάω: to go to and fro, visit, 2

11 παρήσαν: 3p impf. πάρ-ειμι
c1 ναί...γε: yes indeed; γε adds assent
2 τί δέ;: What?; ‘what about this?’ expresses surprise and precedes a follow-up question
6 σχεδὸν τι: pretty much; or ‘just about’ as often in approximations
7 τί οὖν δή;: What then
φής: 2s pres. φημὶ

ἡμερα: from εἰμί, see p. 232
d1 γάρ δή: for indeed; here opening a narrative and in assent to a question
τάς...ἡμέρας: during...; acc. of duration
2 καὶ...καὶ: both...and
παρὰ: to the side of...; acc. place to which
3 ἐν φοί: in which (court); relative pronoun
ἡ δίκη: the trial

Two Common Translations of ἐξώ

| ἐξώ + infinitive | to be able + inf. | ἐἰς ὁμοφήνεμα ἐξώ σοι 57b3 | he was able to say
| ἐξώ + adverb | to be + adjective | ἐξέλεωσα ἐκ ὁμοφήνεμα 59b3 | he was able to choose
| -holds, -is disposed | | ἐχεῖ σύνωσις ἐξώ 68c3 | he was so
| | | Σύνωσις ἐχεῖ ἐξώ 65b3 | it is so
Socrates Greets his Friends

γάρ ἂν τοῦ δεσμωτηρίου. περιμένουμεν οὖν ἐκάστοτε ἐώς ἀνοιχθεὶ τὸ δεσμωτήριον, διατρίβοντες μετ' ἄλληλων, ἀνεφ-γετο γάρ οὐ πρώ. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀνοιχθεὶ, εἰσήμεν παρὰ τὸν Σωκράτη καὶ τὰ πολλὰ διημερεύομεν μετ' αὐτοῦ. καὶ δὴ καὶ τὸτε πρωάτεροι συνελέγημεν· τῇ γὰρ πρωτεραίᾳ [ἡμέρᾳ]

5 ἐπειδὴ εξῆλθομεν ἐκ τοῦ δεσμωτηρίου ἐσπέρας, ἐπιθύμημεν ὅτι τὸ πλοῖον ἐκ Δήλου ἀφγυμένον εἴη. παρηγγελμέναι οὖν ἄλληλοι ήκεν ὡς πρωάτατα εἰς τὸ εἰώθος. καὶ ήκομεν καὶ ἠμῖν εξελθὼν ὁ θυρωρός, ὀσπερ εἰώθει ὑπακούειν, εἶπεν περι-μένειν καὶ μὴ πρότερον παριέναι ἐώς ἢν αὐτὸς κελεύσῃ· 'λύουσι γάρ,' ἐφη, 'οἱ ἐνδέκα Σωκράτη καὶ παραγγέλλουσιν ὅπως ἂν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τελευτᾷ,' οὐ πολὺν δ' οὖν χρόνον

ἀ-οἶγνυμι: to open, open up, 3 δεσμωτήριον, τὸ: prison, 6 Δήλος, ἡ-, -οῦ: Delos, 2 δια-τρίβω: to spend time, waste time, 5 δι-μερευμα: to pass the day, 1 εἰς-ήρχομαι: to go in, enter, 6 εἰσθα: to be accustomed, 12 ἐκάστο-στε: each time, on each occasion, 4 ἐν-δεκα: eleven, 3 ἐξ-ήρχομαι: to go out, come out, 5 ἐσπέρα, ἡ: evening, eve, 1 ἐως: until, as long as, 15 ἴκω: to have come, be present, 14 ἡμέρα, ἡ: day, 7

θυρωρός, ὁ: door-keeper, doorman, 1 κελεύω: to bid, order, command, exhort, 8 λύω: to loosen, dissolve, break up, 7 ὤς: how, in what way; in order that, that 10 παρ-αγγέλλω: to pass word along, order 4 παρ-ήρχομαι: to go pass, enter, 5 περι-μένω: to wait for or around, await, 6 πλοῖον, τὸ: vessel, ship, 5 πρωτεραίος, -ας, -οῦ: on the day before, 3 πρῶ: early in the morning, 3 πνεύδαμοι: to learn by inquiry or hearsay, 3 συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 4 ὑπ-ακοῦω: to listen, heed, give ear, 1

2 ἀνοιχθεὶν εἴη: periphrastic plpf. opt. (pf. pass. pple ἀφ-κελεύσαι + opt. εἴη); the opt. is replacing an indicative in secondary seq.
3 ἄλληλοις: to one another; ind. object ὡς...: as...as possible; + superlative adv. πρῶ
4 τὸ εἰώθος: the accustomed (place); neut. sg. pf. pple εἰώθα
5 ἐπεν: told; i.e. commanded, + dat. ind. obj.
6 μὴ...: μὴ replaces οὐ in a wish or command αὐτὸς: he himself; intensive ἀν κελεύσῃ: aor. subj. indefinite temporal
7 ὅπως...: that...; ἄν + 3s aor. subj.as an indirect command

4 ἐως ἀνοιχθει: until... was opened; aor. pass. opt. ἀν-οἶγνυμι, replacing an ἄν + subjunctive in secondary seq., here the indefinite temporal clause implies purpose
5 ἀνεφγέτο: would be opened; customary (iterative) impf. pass. ἀν-οἶγνυμι
6 ἀνοιχθεῖ: it was opened; same as above εἰσήμεν: would...; customary (iterative) impf εἰσέρχομαι
7 τὰ πολλά: many (times); adverbial acc. καὶ δὴ καί: and especially, ‘and indeed also’
8 πρωάτερον: comparative adv. πρῶ εἰς ἐσπέρας: during...; gen. of time within ἐπιθυμεῖσθαι: aor. πνεύδαμοι
επισχῶν ἥκεν καὶ ἐκελέουν ἡμᾶς εἰσιέναι. εἰσίντες οὖν κατελαμβάνομεν τὸν μὲν Σωκράτη ἅρτι λελυμένον, τὴν δὲ Ἐανθίππην—γιγνώσκεις γάρ ἐχουσάν τε τὸ παιδίον αὐτοῦ καὶ παρακαθήμενην. ὡς οὖν εἶδεν ἡμᾶς ἡ Ἐανθίππη, ἀνήψφημος, τε καὶ τοιαῦτ' ἄττα ἔπεν, οἷα δὴ εἰώθασαν αἱ γυναῖκες, ὅτι ὁ Σωκράτης, ὅστατον δὴ σε προσεροῦν ὑνὸς ἔπιτήδειος καὶ σὺ τοῦτοὺς· καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης βλέψας εἰς τὸν Κρίτωνα, ὁς Κρίτων, ἐφη, ἀπαγέτω τις αὐτῇν οὐκαδένα;

καὶ ἐκείνην μὲν ἀπῆγον τινες τῶν τοῦ Κρίτωνος βοῶσάν τε καὶ κοππομένην· ὁ δὲ Σωκράτης ἀνακαθίζομεν εἰς τὴν β κλίνην, συνέκαμψε τε τὸ σκέλος καὶ ἐξέτρεψε τῇ χειρὶ, καὶ

ἀνα-καθίζω: to set up: mid. sit up, 1
ἄν-ευφημέω: shriek, cry aloud; break silence 1
ἀπ-ἀγω: to lead away, carry off, 2
ἀρτι: just, exactly, 4
βλέπτω: to look at, see, 3
βοάω: to cry aloud, to shout, 3
γιγνώσκει: learn to know, to learn, realize 12
γυνη, γυναῖκος, η: a woman, wife, 6
εἰωθάναι: to be accustomed, 12
ἐκ-τρίβω: to rub, rub thoroughly, 1
ἐπι-σέχονται: hold up, restrain; wait, stop, 4
ἐπιτιθέομαι, -η, -ον: fitting, favorable; friend 3
ἦκω: to have come, be present, 14
κατα-λαμβάνω: to seize, lay hold of, find, 1
κελέω: to bid, order, command, exhort, 8
κλίνῃ, ἦ: couch, 2
κόπτω: to knock, beat, wail, 1
λῶ: to loosen, dissolve, break up, 7
Ξανθίππη, ἡ: Xanthippe (Socrates’ wife) 2
οίκα-δέ: homeward, home, 1
παιδίον, τό: a little or young child, child, 2
παρα-κάθημα: to sit down beside, 1
προσ-ερέω: will address, will speak to, 1
σκέλος, -εος, τό: leg, 6
συγ-κάμπτω: to bend, bend together, 2
ὐστάτως, -η, -ον: latter, last, 1
χειρ, χείρ, η: hand, 1

Τῆς χείρι for the very last time; superlative adverb

σύ τοῦτος: supply προσεροῦσι
βλέψας: nom. sg. aor. pple βλέπτω
ἔφη: 3s impf. φημί
ἀπαγέτω: let…lead away; 3rd person imperative
τῶν τοῦ Κρίτωνος: of Crito’s (men)
βοῶσαν: acc. sg. pres. pple, βοάω
κοππομένην: waiting

ἡ δὲ ὅς — ‘and this one said’

Over 50 times, Plato uses the 3rd sg. impf. ἡμι and demonstrative ὅς to change speakers.
Socrates Greets his Friends

ἐδύναι μὴ ἄνθρωποι ἤδυ· ὡς θαυμασίως πέφυκε πρὸς τὸ δοκοῦν ἐναντίον εἶναι, τὸ λυπηρόν, τὸ ἀμα μὲν αὐτῷ μὴ ἔχειν παραγγέλειν τῷ ἄνθρωπῷ, ἐὰν δὲ τις διώκῃ τὸ ἐτερον καὶ λαμβάνῃ, σχεδόν τι ἀναγκάζεσθαι ἄλις λαμβάνειν καὶ τὸ ἐτερον, ὡσπερ ἐκ μιᾶς κορυφῆς ἦμμένω δι᾽ ὄντε. ὡς, ἐάν μοι δοκεῖ, ἐφῇ, εἰ εἰνενόησεν αὐτὰ Λύσωπος, μύδον ἂν συνθείναι ὡς ὁ θεὸς βουλόμενος αὐτὰ διαλάβαι πολεμοῦντα, ἐπειδή οὐκ ἔδυνατο, συνήψεν εἰς ταύταν αὐτὸς τὰς κορυφὰς, καὶ διὰ ταύτα ὅ ἂν τὸ ἐτερον παραγενηται ἐπακολούθει ὑστερον καὶ τὸ ἐτερον. ὡσπερ ὅν καὶ αὐτῷ μοι ἑοικεν· ἐπειδή ὑπὸ τοῦ δεσμοῦ ἦν ἐν τῷ σκέλει τὸ ἀλγείνων,

Αἰσιώτατος, ὁ: Aesop, 3 ἀλγείνω, ἱ-, -όν: painful, grievous, 1 ἀναγκάζομαι: to force, compel, require, 10 ὁ-τοπος, -ου: strange, odd, extraordinary, 9 δεσμός, ὁ: a binding, bond, fetter, 2 δι-αλλάττω: reconcile, give in exchange, 1 διώκω: to pursue, follow; prosecute, 2 δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15 ἑθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17 ἐπ-ακολουθεῖν: to follow after, pursue, 3 ἡδύς, -εία, -εύ: sweet, pleasant, glad, 5 θαυμάσιος, -α-, -ον: wonderful, strange, 3 τρίβων ἁμα: i.e. the parts of his body where the bindings were removed ὡς ἄτοπον...τι: how strange a thing; in exclamation; neuter pred. of inf. εἰμί 4 τοῦτο ὁ: this thing which; subject of ἐοικε ὡς θαυμάσιος: how amazing πέφυκε: it is (by nature); pf. φῶς 5 πρὸς: with regard to...; or in relation to... τὸ δοκοῦν...τὸ λυπηρόν: that seeming to be (its) opposite, the painful; pple δοκέω τὸ...αὐτῶ μὴ (ἐ)θέλειν: in respect to those two not being willing...; the articular inf. is an acc. of respect; αὐτῶ is dual acc. subj. 6 τὸ ἄνθρωπο: in a person; dat. of compound verb ἔνας...λαμβάνειν: and if...; 3rd sg. subjunctive in a pres. general condition (εἰ + ἄν + subj., pres. indicative), the apodosis is an inf. κορυφή, ἡ: top, head, 2 λυπηρός, -ή, -όν: painful, distressing, 1 μύδος, ὁ: story, word, speech, 7 παρα-γάγωμαι: to come near, be present, 11 πολεμεώ: wage war, make war, (+ dat.), 1 σκέλος, -εσ, τό: leg, 6 συν-ἀπτω: to fasten or join together, unite, 1 συν-τίθημι: to put together, combine, 7 σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 8 τρίβω: to rub, knead; wear out, 5 ὑστερος, -α-, -ον: later, last; adv. later 17 φῶς: bring forth, beget; by nature, 14

7 τὸ ἐτερον...τὸ ἐτερον: the one...the other; i.e. pleasure and pain, respectively σχεδὸν τι: pretty much, just about ἀναγκαζόμαι: (one) is compelled; supply an acc. subject referring to τις above ἡμμένω: attached; dual pf. pass. ἀπτω 8 c1 δῦ(ο) ὄντε: although...; dual nom. pple εἰμί εἰ ἐνενόησεν...ἀν συνθείναι: if...had...he would have composed; past contrafactual 3 συνήψεν: 3s aor. συν-ἀπτω + dat. εἰς ταύτων: in the same (place); τὸ αὐτὸν 4 τὰς κορυφᾶς: by their heads; acc. respect ὃ ἄν: in whomever; dat. of compound verb in an indefinite relative clause (ἀν + subj.) 5 αὐτῷ μοι: to me myself; intensive pronoun 6 ὑπὸ...because of...; gen. of cause; impf. εἰμί τὸ ἀλγείνων: equiv. to τὸ λυπηρόν above
ἦκεν δὴ φαίνεται ἐπακολουθοῦν τὸ ἡδύ.

ὁ οὖν Κέβης ύπολαβὼν, νῆ τὸν Δία, ὥ Σώκρατες, ἐφθεῖ, εὖ ἐποίησας ἀναμνήσας με. περὶ γὰρ τοῦ τῶν ποιημάτων ἢν πεποίηκας ἐνετίνας τοὺς τοῦ Αἵσωπου λόγους καὶ τὸ εἰς τὸν Ἀπόλλων προοίμιον καὶ ἄλλοι τινὲς με ἠδίκη ἢροντο, ἀτὰρ καὶ Εὐηνος προκῆν, ὅτι ποτὲ διανοθεὶς, ἐπειδή δεύρω ἥλθες, ἐποίησας αὐτά, πρότερον οὐδὲν πώτερον ποιήσας.

ἐι οὖν τί σοι μέλει τοῦ ἔχειν ἐμὲ Εὐηνῳ ἀποκρίνασθαι ὅταν με αὐθίς ἐρωτᾶ——εὖ οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι ἐρήσεται· εἰπὲ τί χρῆ λέγεις.

λέγε τούνν, ἐφθεῖ, αὐτῷ, ὥ Κέβης, τάληθῇ, ὅτι οὐκ ἐκεῖνῳ βουλόμενος οὐδὲ τοῖς ποιήμασιν αὐτῶν ἀντίτεχνος

7 δὴ: then; temporal ἐπακολουθοῦν: neut. sg. pres. pple τὸ ἡδύ: pleasure; ‘the pleasant’
8 ὑπολαβῶν: nom. sg. aor. pple τὸν Δία: acc. sg. Ζεὺς
9 εὖ γ(ε): well indeed; emphatic ἐποίησας: 2s aor.

Ἀίσωπος, ὥ: Aesop, 3 ἀνα-μνημήσκω: remind (acc. gen.) 16 ἀντὶ-τεχνός: -on: rival in an art (+ dat), 1 ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 13 Ἀπόλλων, Ἀπόλλωνος, ὥ: Apollo, 4 ἀτὰρ: but, yet, still, 1 αὖθις: back again, later, 9 διηρ: here, to this point, hither, 7 δια-νοεῖμαι: to think, consider, intend, 6 ἐν-τείνω: to stretch, strain tight, 3 ἐπ-ακολουθεῖν: to follow after, pursue, 3 ἔρωμαι: to ask, enquire, question, 12 ἐρωτᾶμαι: to ask, inquire, question, 10

Εὐηνος, ὥ: Evenus, 6 Ζεὺς, ὥ: Zeus, 11 ἡδύ: already, now, at this time, 16 ἡδύς, -εία, -ύ: sweet, pleasant, glad, 5 ἠκώ: to have come, be present, 14 μέλια: there is a care for (dat.) for (gen.), 4 νῆ: by…(+ acc, invoking a god ), 14 ποίημα, -ατος, τό: poem; product, 3 προοίμιον, τό: hymn (short poem), proem, 1 πρᾶγμα, -να, -ον: early; day before yesterday, 1 πώ-ποτε: ever yet, ever, 6 ὑπο-λαμβάνω: to take up, reply; suppose, 8

3 ἢροντο: iterative impf. ἔρωμαι πράγμα: day before yesterday; adv. acc. ὅτι ποτὲ διανοθεὶς: thinking what in the world…; i.e. ‘what in the world were you thinking;’ nom. aor. dep. pple διανοοῦμαι; ὁτι ποτὲ expresses surprise in ind. question
4 αὐτά: these things; ‘them,’ i.e. the poems
5 τι σοι μέλει τοῦ ἔχειν: there is any care for you for being able; τι is an inner acc.; ἔχειν is an articular infinitive that often means ‘is capable or able’ when governing an inf.

ἕρωτα: 3s pres. subj. σα-contract verb in an indefinite temporal clause

6 ἐρήσεται: fut. deponent ἔρωμαι
8 τοῖνν: Well…; in reply (GP 571)

7 ἡδύ: what in the world were you αὐτά: these things; ‘them,’ i.e. the poems
8 ὁτι: you know; particle (GP 547-8)
11 ἔρωτα: 3s pres. subj. a-contract verb in an indefinite temporal clause
Socrates Greets his Friends

e εἶναι ἐποίησα ταῦτα—ἠδή γὰρ ὡς οὐ ράδιον ἐπὶ-ἀλλ’ ἐνυπνίων τινῶν ἀποσειρώμενος τὶ λέγοι, καὶ ἀφοσιούμενος εἰ ἄρα πολλάκις ταύτην τὴν μουσικὴν μοι ἐπιτάττοι ποιεῖν. ἦν γὰρ δὴ ἄττα τοιάδε: πολλάκις μοι φοιτῶν τὸ αὐτὸ ἐν- ὑπνίῳ ἐν τῷ παρελθόντι βίῳ, ἄλλοτ’ ἐν ἄλλῃ ὤψι παινό- μενον, τὰ αὐτὰ δὲ λέγον, ὥσ Ὁσκρατεῖς, ἐφη, ἀδελφή μουσικὴν ποιεῖ καὶ ἐργάζον, καὶ ἐγὼ ἐν γε τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ ὁπερ ἐπραττὸν τοῦτο ὑπελάμβανον αὐτὸ μοι παρακελεύεσθαι τε καὶ ἐπικελεύειν, ὥσπερ ὁ τοῖς θέουσι διακελεύομενοι, καὶ ἐμοὶ στίῳ τὸ ἐνυπνίον ὁπερ ἐπεραττὸν τοῦτο ἐπικελεύειν, μουσικῆν ποιεῖν, ὡς φιλοσοφίας μὲν ὄντος μεγίστης μουσι- κῆς, ἐμοὶ δὲ τοῦτο πράττοντος. νῦν δ’ ἐπειδὴ ἢ τε δίκι

61 ἀλλ’ ὤτε: at another time, at other times, 4 ἀτο-περάδωμα: to make trial of, test (gen.) 1 ἄρα: then, therefore, it seems, it turns out, 5 ἀφ-οσιάω: atone, expiate, purify, 2 δια-κελεύομαι: encourage one another (dat) 1 δίκη: justice; lawsuit, trial; penalty, 11 ἐν-ὑπνίῳ, τό: dream, vision seen in sleep, 5 ἐπι-κελεύω: to encourage besides, 2 ἐπι-τάττω: to order, enjoin, command, 1 ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor, toil, 4 θέω: to run, 1 μεγίστος, -ης, -ου: very big, greatest, 6

e1 ἧδη: 1s plpf. σῖδα, simple past in sense ὡς...ἐὴ: that it would be; 3s opt. εἰμί opt. in secondary sequence 2 ἐνυπνίων τινῶν...τὶ λέγοι: what certain dreams mean; lit. ‘some dreams, what they mean,’ proleptic use of ἐνυπνίων 3 εἰ...πολλάκις: if by chance..., if perhaps...; common idiom for πολλάκις after εἰ ἐπιτάττω: ordered; opt. replacing indicative in secondary sequence 4 ἦν...ἄττα τοιάδε: for indeed they were something of this sort; 3rd sg. impf. with neut. pl. subject; ἄττα is indefinite τινα φοιτῶν: φοιτάω, neuter sg. pple φοιτάω modifying ἐνυπνίον τὸ αὐτὸ ἐνυπνίον: the same dream παρελθόντι: i.e. the past; dat. sg. aor. pple παρέρχομαι

μουσική, ἢ: music, 5 ὄψις, -ῶς, ἢ: vision, appearance, form; face, 6 παρ-ἐρχομαι: to go pass, enter, 5 παρα-κελεύομαι: to order, urge, encourage, 3 πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14 πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12 πρόσθεν: before, 10 ῥάδιος, -α, -ων: easy, ready, 9 τοιόθεδε, -άδε, -όδε: such, 20 ὑπο-λαμβάνω: to take up, reply; suppose, 8 φιλο-σοφία, ἢ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13 φοιτάω: to go to and fro, visit, 2

5 ἀλλοτρ ἐν ἄλλῃ ὄψῃ: sometimes in one vision, at other times in another vision; as often when two forms of ἀλλος are in junctaposition φαινόμενον...λέγον: pres. mid. and active participles modifying ἐνυπνίον 6 τὰ αὐτά: the same things; obj. of pple 7 ποία: ποιε-ε; sg. imperative ἐργάζομαι(σ): sg. mid. imperative γε: at least; restricting ἐν...χρόνῳ ὑπελάμβανον...: I supposed that it (αὐτό) was urging me and encouraging this (τοῦτο)

61a1 ὥσπερ...ὕπτω: just as...so (too) τοῖς θέουσι: those running; pple θέω ὡς...διην...πράττοντος: on the grounds of...being...and...doing; ὡς + pple (here, two gen. abs.) expressing alleged cause
ἐγένετο καὶ ἡ τοῦ θεοῦ ἐορτή διεκώλυε με ἀποθήσκειν, ἔδοξε χρῆναι, εἰ ἄρα πολλάκις μοι προστάττοι τὸ ἐνύπνιον ταύτην τὴν δημώδη μουσικήν ποιεῖν, μὴ ἀπειθῆσαι αὐτῷ ἄλλα ποιεῖν ἀσφαλέστερον γὰρ εἶναι μὴ ἀπείναι πρὶν ἀφοσιώσασθαι ποιήσαντα ποιήματα καὶ πιθώμενον τῷ ἐνύπνιῳ. 

οὔτω δὴ πρῶτον μὲν εἰς τὸν θεόν ἐποίησα οὐ ἢν ἢ παροῦσα θυσία: μετὰ δὲ τὸν θεόν, ἐννοῆσας ὅτι τὸν ποιητήν δέοι, εἰπέρ μέλλοι ποιητής εἶναι, ποιεῖν μύθους ἀλλ' οὐ λόγους, καὶ αὐτὸς οὐκ ἢ μυθολογικός, διὰ ταῦτα δὴ οὐς προχείρους εἴρχων μύθους καὶ ἡπιστάμην τοὺς Αἰσώπου, τοῦτων ἐποίησά οὐς πρῶτοι ἐνέτυχον. ταῦτα οὖν, ὥ Κέβης, Εὐήνω φράζε, καὶ ἔρρωσθαι καὶ, ἀν σωφρονή, ἐμὲ διώκειν ὡς τάχιστα.

5 ἔδοξε: it seemed (to me); supply μοι
6 χρῆναι: inf. χρῆ
  εἰ...πολλάκις: if by chance..., if perhaps...
  προστάττω: ordered; opt., secondary seq.
7 δημώδης: δημώδε-σ, acc. sg., 3rd decl. adj.
  ἀπειθήσα: aor. inf. ἀ-πειθέω
8 ἀσφαλέστερον...ἐλίναι: for it was...; inf. εἰμι
governed by ἔδοξε; comparative adj.
  μὴ ἀπέλανα: not to depart; i.e. in death, the
  inf. ἀπ-ἔρχομαι is the subject of ἐλίναι
b1 πιθώμενον: aor. mid. pple. πίθω
2 οὔτω δὴ: in just this way, in precisely this way; or δὴ may be inferential: ‘then’
  πρῶτον μὲν...μετὰ δὲ τὸν θεόν: first...and after the god; adverbial acc.
  εἰς τὸν θεόν: for the god

θυσία, ἢ: sacrifice, offering, 2
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
μουσικός, ἢ-ῶν: musical, educated, cultured 1
μυθο-λογικός, ἢ-ῶν: poetical, inventive, 1
μύθος, ὁ: story, word, speech, 7
ποιήμα, -ατος, τό: poem; product, 3
ποιητής, οῦ, ὁ: maker, creator, poet, 6
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
προ-χείρος, -οῦ: at hand, ready, 1
προσ-τάττω: to order, assign, appoint, 5
ῥόμνυμι: make strong; ἐρωτάω, good-bye, 1
σωφρονέω: to be wise, be sound, temperate 1
tαχύς, εία, ψ: quick, swift, hastily, 9
φράζεω: to point out, tell, indicate, 6
οὗ: whose; relative, gen. sg.
παροῦσα: pple πάρ-ειμι
3 τὸν ποιητήν: acc. subject of ποιεῖν
  δέοι: it was necessary that; opt. δεῖ in
  secondary seq., governs acc. + inf.
4 μέλλοι: one was going...; opt.
5 αὐτὸς: I myself...; intensive, 1s impf. εἰμι
  οὗ...μύθους: what myths...; relative adj.
  τοὺς Αἰσώπους (µύθους): add noun
6 τοῦτων: among these; partitive gen.
7 οἷς: (those) which; dat. of compound
  ταύτα...ἐρρώθωσα: these things, (namely)
  both to fare well and...; pf. mid. inf.,
  the pf. imper. ἐρωτάω is used to say goodbye
  ἄν: if...; εἰ ἄν + 3s pres. subj.
  ὡς...: as...as possible; ὡς + superlative
Socrates Greets his Friends

61c

καὶ ὁ Συμμίας, οὖν παρακελεύῃ, ἡφη, τοῦτο, ὁ Σωκρατές, Εὔνως. πολλὰ γὰρ ὣς ἐντευχήθη τῷ ἀνδρὶ σχεδὸν οὖν ἐξ ὧν ἐγὼ ἥσθημαι οὐδ’ ὑπωστιοῦν σοι ἕκατον εἶναι πεισέω.

τὶ δὲ; ἦ δ’ ὥς, οὐ φιλόσοφος Εὔνως; ἐξειούσαι δοκεῖ, ἡφη ὁ Συμμίας.

ἐθελόσει τοῖς καὶ Εὔνως καὶ πᾶς ὧτι ἀξίως τοῦτο πράγματος μέτεστιν. οὐ μέντοι ἰσως βιάσεται αὐτῶν’ οὐ γάρ φασι θεμιτὸν εἶναι. καὶ ἀμα λέγων ταῦτα καθήκει τὰ σκέλη ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν, καὶ καθεξόμενος οὕτως ἢδη τὰ λοιπὰ διελέγετο.

Ἀθηναῖος, -α-, -ον: Athenian, of Athens, 6
αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
ἀξίος, -α-, -ον: worthy of, deserving of, 15
ἀτ-ἐρχομαι: to come away, depart, 14
βιάζω: to do violence to, force, overpower, 2
δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἐκόνως, ἐκόνως, ἐκόνω: willing, intentionally, 3
ἐν-τυγχάνω: chance upon, encounter (dat) 5
Εὔνως, ο: Evenus, 6
ἥδη: already, now, at this time, 16
θεμιτός, -ος, -ον: lawful, right, righteous, 4
καθ-ζομαι: to sit down, 2
καθ-ιμαι: to let down, send down, 2
κελεύω: to bid, order, command, exhort, 8
λοιπός, ἴ, -όν: remaining, the rest, 3
μέτ-εστιν: there is a share of (gen) for (dat), 1
ὁπωσιστοῦν: in any way whatever, 5
παρα-κελεύμαι: order, urge, encourage dat 3
πράγματος, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
παρακελεύεσθαι: to persuade (σως), 9
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἥ: pursuer of wisdom, 18

1 ἀπεμι: 1s fut. ἀτ-ἐρχομαι
οὕς: as...; parenthetical
οὖν παρακελεύῃ...τοῦτο: what a thing this (is) you encourage...!; in exclamation, 2s pres. mid., παρακελεύει(σ)αι
ἐφη: 3s impf. φημί
3 πολλά: many times; i.e. often; adv. acc. ἐντευχῆ: 1st sg. pf. ἐντυγχάνω
4 ἐξ ὧν: from (the things) which; ‘from what,’ ἐξ (τοῦτων) ἃ, acc. pl. relative attracted into gen. of missing antecedent ἥσθημαι: impf. αἰσθάνομαι
ἐκόνων εἶναι: so as to be willing; or just ‘willingly,’ a common infinitive absolute
5 πεισέω: fut. mid. τείθο
6 τὶ δέ: What (then)?; expresses surprise and precedes a follow-up question
ἡ δ’ ὥς: see note on pg. 9
οὐ (ἐστιν): Is...not...?; add verb
7 καὶ...καὶ: both...and
ὁτῳ...μέτεστιν: to whomever...; relative, alternative to ὧτιν, dat. sg. of ὅτις, 9
πράγματος: i.e. being a φιλόσοφος ἵσως: perhaps; adv. ἵδος
βιάσεται: fut. mid., i.e. commit suicide αὐτόν: ἐςαυτόν, reflexive pronoun
10 φασι: (people) say; 3p pres. φημί
θεμιτὸν εἶναι: that it...; ind. discourse καθήκει: aor. καθ-ιμαι
14 τὰ λοιπὰ: the rest, the rest (of things)
ἡρετο ὁν αὐτόν ὁ Κέβης: πώς τοῦτο λέγεις, ὡς Σώκρατες, τὸ μὴ θεμίτων εἶναι ἑαυτὸν βιάζοντι, ἐδέλειυ δὲ ἀν τῷ ἀποθνῄσκοντι τὸν φιλόσοφον ἔπεσθαι;

τί δέ, ὡς Κέβης; οὐκ ἄκηκόστε σὺ τε καὶ Συμμίας περὶ τῶν τοιούτων Φιλολάω συγγεγονότες;

οὐδέν γε σαφές, ὡς Σώκρατες.

ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ ἐγὼ ἐξ ἄκοης περὶ αὐτῶν λέγω· ἂ μὲν ὀν τυχάνω ἀκήκοοι φθόνος οὐδεὶς λέγειν. καὶ γὰρ ἵσος καὶ μᾶλιστα πρέπει μέλλοντα ἐκεῖσε ἀποδημεῖν διασκοπεῖν εἰ τε καὶ μυθολογεῖν περὶ τῆς ἀποδημίας τῆς ἐκεῖ, ποιὰν τινὰ αὐτὴν οἴόμεθα εἶναι· τί γὰρ ἂν τις καὶ ποιῶ ἀλλὸ ἐν τῷ μέχρι ηλίου δυσμῶν χρόνῳ;

ἀκοῆ, ἂ: hearing, 1
ἀπο-δημῶ: to be away (from home), 1
ἀπο-δημία, ἂ: being abroad, going abroad, 2
βιάζω: to force, overpower, 2
δια-σκοπέω: to examine or consider well, 2
δυσμική, ἂ: setting, 2
ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ἐκεῖ-σε: thither, to that place, 10
ἐπομεναί: to follow, accompany, escort, 9
ἐρομαι: to ask, enquire, question, 12
ἥλιος, ὁ: the sun, 7

δ3 ἠρετο: aor. ἔρωμαι
πώς...λέγεις: How do you say this...? or possibly “what do you mean by this...”

4 τὸ...εἰναι: (namely) that it is...; articular inf. in apposition to τοῦτο
βιάζομαι: to harm oneself; the mid. is reflexive, έαυτόν is acc. subject
ἐθέλειν δ...ἀν: but that...would be willing...; τὸν φιλόσοφον is the acc. subject. an inf. + ἀν in place of a pres. opt. + ἀν (potential opt.) in direct speech
τὸ ἀποθνῄσκοντα: dat. pple. with ἔπεσθαι

6 τι δέ: What?; ‘what about this?’ expresses and precedes a follow-up question
ἀκηκόστε: 2nd pl. pf. ἄκολος

7 συγγεγονότες: while...; pf. pple governs a dat. of compound verb; συγ-γίγνομαι
θεμίτω, -ῆ, -όν: lawful, right, righteous, 4
Κέβης, Κέβητος ὁ: Cebeus, 85 + 5 lower case
μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 5
μυθο-λογεῖν: to tell stories or tales, 1
ποίος, -α, -ον: what sort of? what kind of?, 9
πρέπει: it is fitting, it is suitable (impers.) 8
σαφῆς, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
συγ-γίγνομαι: to be with, associate with, 2
φθόνος ὁ: ill-will, refusal from ill-will +inf. 1
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἂ: pursuer of wisdom, 18
Φιλολάω, ὁ: Philolaus, 2

8 γε: at least, at any rate; restrictive
9 ἀλλὰ μὴν: but certainly, but surely; strong adversative often after a negative; cf. 63a4
καί: also, too; adverbial with ἐγώ ἂ μὲν: (the things) which...; (ταῦτα) ἂ, the missing antecedent is obj. of λέγειν
10 τυχάνῳ ἀκηκοῶ: I happen to have...; complementary pple, pf. ἄκολο

φθόνος οὐδεὶς: (there is) no...; supply a linking verb, λέγειν is an explanatory inf.
καί γὰρ ἤγει: for in fact perhaps
e1 καί μάλιστα πρέπει: it is even especially fitting; καί emphasizes adv. of intensity

2 ποιαν τινὰ: (namely) what sort...; ind. question, in apposition; αὐτῷ, 'it,’ refers to fem. ἀποδημεία and is acc. subj. of εἶναι ἄν...ποιοι: could one do...; potential opt.
κατὰ τί δὴ οὖν ποτε οὔ φασι θεμιτῶν εἶναι αὐτῶν ἕνως ἀντίκεισθαι, ὡς Σωκράτες; ἦδη γὰρ ἠγωγεί, ὀπερ νῦνδὴ σὺ ἦρου, καὶ Φιλολάος ήκουσα, ὅτε παρ' ἦμιν διήτατο, ἦδη δὲ καὶ ἄλλων τινῶν, ὡς οὐ δέοι τοῦτο ποιεῖν· σαφὲς δὲ περὶ αὐτῶν οὐδένος πώποτε οὔδεν ἀκῆκοα.

62 ἀλλὰ προθυμεῖσθαι χρή, ἐφεί τάχα γὰρ ἄν καὶ ἀκούσαις. ἵσως μέντοι θαυμαστὸν σοι φανεῖται εἰ τοῦτο μόνον τῶν ἄλλων ἀπάντων ἀπλοῦν ἐστιν, καὶ οὐδέποτε τυγχάνει τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ, ὅσπερ καὶ τάλλα, ἐπίσταν ὥστε καὶ οἷς βέλτιον ὁν τεθνάναι ἢ ζῆν, οἷς δὲ βέλτιον τεθνάναι, θαυμαστὸν ἱσως σοι φαίνεται εἰ τοῦτοι τοῖς ἀνθρώποις μὴ ὅσιον αὐτῶς ἑαυτὸς εἰ ποιεῖν, ἀλλὰ ἄλλων δὲ περιμένεις εὐεργέτητιν.

---

άπας, ἀπασα, ἀπαν: every, quite all, 14
ἀπλικ(δ)ος, η, ον: single, simple, plain, 3
ἀπο-κτείων: to kill, slay, 5
βελτίων, -ον (-ονος): better, 7
δι-αιτάω: to diet; mid. live, 1
ἐρομαι: to ask, enquire, question, 12
ἐφ-εργητης, -ου, ο: benefactor, good-doer, 1
ηδη: already, now, at this time, 16
θαυμαστος, -ης, -ον: wonderful, strange, 11
θεμιτος, -ης, -ον: lawful, right, righteous, 4

κατα τι ποτε: why in the world...;
“according to what...” ποτε intensifies τι, δὴ οὖν are both inferential and emphasize one another: ‘precisely then’
οὕ φασι: do they say that...not; οὐ negates the ind. statement; 3p φημι
εὕναι: that it is...; impersonal, ind. disc.

αὐτῶν εαυτῶν: acc. subj. and obj. of inf.

διπερ: the very thing which...; the missing antecedent is object of ἡκουσα

ηρου: ἴπε(σο), 2s aor. mid. ἔρωμαι
Φιλολαος: from...: gen. of source

παρ᾽ ἠμὶν: among us; or ‘by our side’

διπτάω: 3rd sg. impf. mid. δι-αιτάω

και αλλων τινων: from...also; source

ως: (namely) that it was...necessary; opt. in ind. discourse in secondary seq.

οὐδενος: from...: gen. of source

ἀκηκοα: 1s pf. άκουσω

δοσις, ἀνωτερου: hallowed, sacred, ordained, 4
δε: when, at some time, 7

οὐδε-ποτε: not ever, never, 11

περι-μένω: to wait for, await, 6

προ-θυμειν: to be eager, zealous, ready, 12


πω-ποτε: ever yet, ever, 6

σαφης, -ης: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16

ταχα: presently, quickly; perhaps, 2

Φιλολαος, ο: Philolaus, 2

ἀν...ακουσαις: you may hear; potential

ανειται: impersonal fut. φαινομαι

των...αμαντουν: of all other (principles)

τυγχανει...ον: it happens...to be; common translation for complementary pple ειτι

τω ανθρωπωρ: for...; dat. of interest

δοσε και τα(α) αλλα: just as respect to other things also; acc. of respect

ἐπιν όντε...ἐπιν αλιτων οις: at any time and for anyone; idioms, the original expressions had missing antecedents: ‘there is (a time) when and there are (those) for whom’ (S 2513-15)

πεθαναι: to be dead; pf. inf. θυσκω

η: than; following comparative βελτιον

οις δε: but to whomever (it happens to be).;

the antecedent is ανθρωπος below

ει...μη δαισιν: if (it is) not righteous that...

ει ποιειν: to treat well + acc.; i.e. suicide

αλλου ευεργετην: acc. obj. of inf.
καὶ ὁ Κέβης ἰρέμα ἐπιγελάσας, Ἰττω Ζεὺς, ἐφη, τῇ αὐτῶι φωνῇ εἰπὼν.
καὶ γὰρ ἂν δόξειν, ἐφη ὁ Σωκράτης, οὔτω γ᾽ εἶναι ἄλογον· οὐ μέντοι ἀλλ᾽ ἰσως γ᾽ ἔχει τινὰ λόγον. οὐ μὲν οὖν ἐν ἀπορρήτωι λεγόμενοι περὶ αὐτῶι λόγος, ὡς ἐν των φρουρᾳ ἔσμεν οἱ ἀνθρωποὶ καὶ οὐ δεὶ δὴ ἐαυτὸν ἐκ ταύτης λύειν οὐδ᾽ ἀποδιδράσκειν, μέγας τὲ τίς μοι φαίνεται καὶ οὐ ῥάδιος διιδεῖν· οὐ μέντοι ἀλλὰ τόδε γέ μοι δοκεῖ, ὁ Κέβης, εὗ λέγεσθαι, τὸ θεοὺς εἶναι ἡμῶν τοὺς ἐπιμελουμένους καὶ ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐν τῶι κτημάτωι τοῖς θεοῖς εἶναι. ἡ σοὶ οὐ δοκεῖ οὕτως;
ἐμοιγε, φησὶν ὁ Κέβης.
ὦ κύριε, ἢ δ᾽ ὅσ, καὶ σὺ ἄν τῶν σαυτῶν κτήματων εἶ τι αὐτὸ ἑαυτῷ ἀποκτείνω, μὴ σημηναντός σου ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν τιθνάιναι, χαλεπάνοις ἄν αὑτῷ καὶ, εἰ τινὰ ἔχουσι τίμωριαν, τίμωροῖ ἄν;

πάνε γ᾽, έφη.

Ἰσων τούτων ταύτη ὡκ ἄλογον μὴ πρότερον αὐτὸν ἀποκτείνων δεῖν, πρὶν ἀνάγκην τινὰ θεὸς ἐπιπέμψῃ, ὁσπερ καὶ τὴν νῦν ἢ μίαν παροῦσαν.

ἀλλ᾽ εἰκός, έφη ὁ Κέβης, τοῦτο γε φαίνεται. ὃ μέν-

τοι νυνὶ ἔλεγες, τὸ τοὺς φιλοσόφους ῥαδίως ἄν ἐθέλειν

d ἀποθνήσκει, έσικεν τοῦτο, ὃ Σώκρατες, ἀτόπω, εἴπερ ὁ

νυνὶ ἔλεγομεν εὐλόγως ἔχει, τὸ θεὸν τε ἔινα τὸν ἐπιμε-
λούμενον ἡμῶν καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐκείνων κτήματα εἶναι. τὸ γὰρ μὴ ἀγανακτεῖν τοὺς φρονιμωτάτους ἔκ ταύτης τῆς θεραπείας ἀπιόντας, ἐν ἐπιστατοῦσιν αὐτῶν οἴπερ ἄριστοι εἰσὶν τῶν ὁντων ἐπιστάται, θεοί, οὐκ ἔχει λόγον· οὐ γὰρ ποι Ἀυτός γε αὐτοῦ ὁδεῖται ἄμελον ἐπιμελήσσεσθαί ἐλευθέρος γενόμενος. ἀλλ' ἄνοιγον μὲν ἄνθρωπος τάχι ἄν οἰηθεὶ καταστάσας, ἐφεκτέον εἶναι ἀπὸ τοῦ δεσπότου, καὶ οὐκ ἂν λογίζοιτο ὦτι οὐ δεῖ ἀπὸ ἐν τοῦ ἄγαθοῦ πευκεῖν ἀλλ' ὅτι μάλιστα παραμένειν, διὸ ἀλογίσως ἂν πευκεῖν· ὦ δὲ νοῦν ἐπονομοῦ ποι ἂν οἶεν παρὰ τῷ αὐτοῦ βελτίων. καίτοι οὕτως, ὦ Σῶκρατες, τοῦτον εἶναι εἰκὸς ἢ ὦ πνεῦν ήλεγετο τοὺς μὲν γὰρ φρονίμους ἀγανακτεῖν ἀποθηκήσαντα πρέπει, τοὺς δὲ ἀφρονας.

ἄγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12 ἀ-λογίστως, -ov: unreasonable, thoughtless, 1 ἀμέλεων, -on (-ove): better, 10 ἀ-νόητος, -ov: foolish, unintelligent, 5 ἀρισταῖς, -ης, -ov: best, most excellent, 6 ἀφρος, -οῦτος: senseless, foolish, 1 βελτίων, -on (-ove): better, 7 δεσποτῆς, ὁ: master, lord, 6 δίο: δ' ὦ, on account of which, on which account, 4 εἰκός, ὁτος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 18 ἐλευθέρος, -ης, -ov: free, 1 ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for, 10 ἐπι-μελέομαι: take care of or that, (gen) 4 ἐπί-στατέω: be in charge over, be set over, 1 ἐπιστατής, ὁ: overseer, one set in charge, 1 θεραπεία, ἡ: service; care, fostering, 1 καῖτος: and yet, and indeed, and further, 8 κτήμα, -ατος, τό: possession, property, 3 λογίζομαι: to reason, calculate, count, 9 νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14 νυν-δή: just now, 15 παρα-μένω: to abide, remain, 2 πρέπει: it is fitting, it is suitable (impers.) 8 τάχα: presently, quickly; perhaps, 2 φευκτός, ὁν: to be fled, to be escaped, 1 φρόνιμος, -on: sensible, wise, prudent, 8

3 ἡμῶν: obj. of ἐπιμελεύομεν
4 τό...ἀγανακτεῖν: that...not be aggravated; the articular inf. is subject of ἔχει below
4 τοὺς φρονιμωτάτους: those;...; superlative
5 ἀπιόντας: acc. pl. pple ἀπ-ἐρχομαι
6 ὅτι...ἀπωτάτων: of the things existing
7 ὅτι...ἀποτικεῖ: has no account; i.e. is not reasonable
8 ὁ...ὑπέθειν: would...; potential opt. (3s aor. pass. deponent οἱμαι)
9 φευκτόν εἶναι: namely that (he) must flee;
10 'it is to be fled (by him)' impersonal verbal adj. + εἰ με expresses obligation, here with missing dat. of agent
11 ἐν λογίζοιτο: potential opt., pres. mid.
12 ὦ...ἀλλ'...ἄτονται: as...as possible; as often when preceding a superlative (here adv.)
13 ὦ...ἐπιστατοῦσιν: missing dat. of agent
14 ὦ...ἐπιστατοῦσιν: of...; dat. of place where
15 ὦ...ἐπιστατοῦσιν: from...; gen. comparison.
Socrates Greets his Friends

63 ἄκοψας οὖν ὁ Σωκράτης ἰσόθυναί τε μοι ἐδοξε τῇ τοῦ Κέβητος πραγματεία, καὶ ἐπιβλέψας εἰς ἡμᾶς, αὐτῷ, ἔφη, ὁ Κέβης λόγους των ἀνερευνᾶ, καὶ οὐ πάνω εὐθέως ἐθέλει πείθεσθαι ὅτι ἂν τις εἶπη.

καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης, ἀλλὰ μὴν, ἔφη, ὁ Σωκράτης, νῦν γέ μοι δοκεῖ τι καὶ αὐτῷ λέγειν Κέβης: τί γὰρ ἂν βουλόμενοι ἄνδρες σοφὸς ὡς ἀληθῶς δεσπότας ἀμεῖνοι αὐτῶν φεύγοιεν καὶ ῥάδιως ἀπαλλάττουτοι αὐτῶν; καὶ μοι δοκεῖ Κέβης εἰς σὲ τείνει τὸν λόγον, ὅτι οὕτω ῥάδιως φέρεις καὶ ἡμᾶς ἀπολείπων καὶ ἁρχοντας ἁγαθοὺς, ὥς αὐτὸς ὁμολογεῖς, θεοῦς.

b δίκαια, ἔφη, λέγετε: οἷμαι γὰρ ἦμας λέγειν ὅτι χρή με

---

63a1 ἰσόθυναί: aor. pass. inf. ἰδομαι

δ: 3s impf. φημί

ἀνερευνᾶ: ἀνερευνᾶει, pres. α-contract

ὅτι: whatever…; ὅ τι, general relative clause with ἂν + aor. subj. (ἐϊπον)

ἀλλὰ μὴν: well certainly, well surely; else 'but surely,' here a strong assent; cf. 61d9

νῦν γέ: 1s fut. ἀπ-ἔρχομαι

μω…καὶ αὐτῷ: to me myself also; intensive pronoun, καὶ is adverbial

5 τι…λέγειν: i.e. to say something important, as often when the indefinite follows λέγω

---

Two Common Translations for τυγχάνω, τεῦξομαι, ἐτυχον

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>τυγχάνω</th>
<th>‘happen’ + participle</th>
<th>τυγχάνει οὖσα</th>
<th>he happens to be</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>τυγχάνω</td>
<td>‘attain’ + partitive genitive</td>
<td>ἐτυχον τοῦ ὄνοματος</td>
<td>I attained the name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
πρὸς ταῦτα ἀπολογήσασθαι ὡσπερ ἐν δικαστηρίῳ.
πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας.
φέρε δὴ, ἢ δ᾽ ὅσ, πειραθῶ πιθανῶτερον πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἀπολογήσασθαι ἢ πρὸς τοὺς δικαστὰς. ἐγὼ γὰρ, ἔφη, ὁ Σιμμίας τε καὶ Κέβης, εἰ μὲν μὴ ἄμην ἥξειν πρῶτον μὲν παρὰ θεοὺς ἄλλους σοφοὺς τε καὶ ἁγαθοὺς, ἔπειτα καὶ παρὰ ἄνθρωπον τετελευτηκότας ἀμείνους τῶν ἐνθάδε, ἦδικον ἂν οὐκ ἀγανακτῶν τῷ θανάτῳ νῦν δὲ εἰ ἴστε ὅτι παρὰ ἄνδρας τε ἐλπίζω ἀφίξεσθαι ἁγαθούς—καὶ τούτῳ μὲν οὐκ ἂν εἰ πάνυ δισχυρισάμην—ὅτι μέντοι παρὰ θεοὺς δεσπότας πάνυ ἁγαθοὺς ἥξειν, εἰ ἴστε ὅτι εἶπερ τι ἄλλο τῶν τοιούτων δισχυρισάμην ἂν καὶ τούτῳ. ὡστε διὰ ταῦτα οὐχ ὁμοίως

άγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12
ἀ-δικέω: to be unjust, do wrong, injure, 3
ἀμείνους, -ον (-ονος): better, 10
ἀπο-λογέομαι: to speak in defense, 3
διεσπότης, ὁ: master, lord, 6
διεσερίζομαι: affirm confidently; assert, 5
dικαστήριον, τό: court, 2
dικαστής, οὗ, ὁ: a juror, judge, 5

ἐλπίζω: to hope, expect, 2
ἐν-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
ἦ: well, 19
ἠ: to have come, be present, 14
πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11
πιθανός, -ῆ,-όν: persuasive, plausible, 3
σοφός, -ῆ,-όν: wise, skilled, 5

τετελευτηκότας: dead; pf. pple

2 πρὸς: against..., in reply to...

πάνυ μὲν οὖν: quite certainly indeed; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
3 ἔφη: impf. φημί
4 φέρε δή: come now; φέρε is an imperative used to draw attention and introduce an imperative; δή is emphatic
ἡ δ᾽ ὅσ: see note on pg. 9
πειράθω: let me attempt; 1st person imperative
πιθανῶτερον: comparative adverb
πρὸς: toward...; i.e. in front of...
5 ἢ: than
6 εἰ...ἀμην, ἦδίκουν ἂν: if I were not..., I would be wrong; present contrafactual (εἰ impf., ἂν + impf.), 1s impf. ὁδίκομα
πρῶτον μὲν...ἐπείτα καί: first...and then; adverbial acc.
παρὰ...ἀγαθοῦς: to...; place to which
7 παρὰ...ἀμείνους: to...; place to which

τετελευτηκότας: dead; pf. pple
8 ἀμείνους: ἀμείνοι(ν)ες, acc. pl.
9 τῶν ἐνθάδε: than those here; comparison

3 ὅτι μέντοι (ἐλπίζω): that however (I) expect that I will come...;

ἐπερ...τούτῳ: that if (I were to assert confidently) about any other of such things, I would be confident in this in fact; τούτῳ refers to ὅτι μέντοι...ἡξειν above
Socrates Greets his Friends

5 ἀγανακτῶ· ἀλλ' ἐδελπίς εἶμι εἶναι τι τοῖς τετελευτηκόσι καί, ὀσπερ γε καί πάλαι λέγεται, πολὺ ἀμεινον τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς ή τοῖς κακοῖς.

τί οὖν, ἐφή ὁ Σιμίας, ὁ Σώκρατες; αὐτὸς ἔχων τὴν διάνοιαν ταύτην ἐν νῷ ἔχεις ἀπιέναι, ἢ κἂν ἡμῖν μεταδοῖν;

d κοινὸν γὰρ ἐγὼ ἐμοίγε δοκεῖ καὶ ἡμῖν εἶναι ἀγαθὸν τοῦτο, καὶ ἀμα σοι ἡ ἀπολογία ἔσται, ἐὰν ἀπερ λέγεις ἡμᾶς πείσῃς.

ἀλλὰ πειράσομαι, ἐφή. πρῶτον δὲ Κρίτωνα τόνδε σκεφώμεθα τί ἐστιν ὁ βούλεσθαι μοι δοκεῖ πάλαι εἴπειν.

5 τί δὲ, ὁ Σώκρατες, ἐφή ὁ Κρίτων, ἀλλὰ γε ἢ πάλαι μοι λέγει ὁ μέλλων σοι δώσειν τὸ φάρμακον ὅτι χρῆ σοι

φράζειν ὡς ἐλάχιστα διαλέγεσθαι; φησὶ γὰρ θερμαίνεσθαι

ἀγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12 ἀμείνων,-ον (-ονος): better, 10 ἀπό-ἐρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14 ἀπολογία, ἡ: (speech in) defence, 2 δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13 διάνοια, ἡ: thought, intention, purpose, 6 διδομένοι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15 ἐλάχιστος, -ης, -ου: smallest, fewest, least, 1 εὐ-ελπίς, -ιδος, ἡ, ὁ: hopeful, cheerful, 2 ἕνεκεν τι: that there is something; i.e. there is an afterlife τοῖς τετελευτηκόσι: i.e. the dead; pf. pple, a dat. of interest ὀσπερ γε: at any rate; restrictive καί πάλαι: for quite a long time λέγεται: it has been said; πάλαι + pres. is pf. progressive in sense τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς...τοῖς κακοῖς: for the good...for the wicked; dat. of interest, i.e. some are rewarded, others punished ἂν: then

8 τι οὖν: well then; ‘what then,’ inferential, with impatient questions (S 2962) αὐτός: Do you yourself...; intensive ἔχων: i.e. holding on to...; the next line suggests a contract between coveting and sharing ἐν νῷ: in mind; dat. νοοῖς ἂν: or...

θερμαίνω: to make hot; mid. be warm, hot, 2 κοινὸς, -ης, -ου: common, ordinary; public, 3 μετα-διδομένοι: give a part of, give a share of, 1 νοοῖς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14 πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13 πειράσομαι: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11 σκέπτομαι: look at, examine, consider, 9 φάρμακον, τὸ: medicine, remedy, drug, 10 φράζω: to point out, tell, indicate, 6 καὶ ἄν...μεταδοῖν: in fact would you...; καὶ is adverbial, potential aor. opt. ἡμῖν: dat. of ind. object d1 γὰρ δὴ: for indeed; emphatic καὶ: also; adverbial, with ἡμῖν 2 σοι: dat. of possession ἔσται, ἐὰν...πείσῃς: fut. more vivid (ei + subj., fut.); fut. εἰμι and aor. subj. πειθω 3 πειράσομαι: fut. mid. πρῶτον: adverbial acc. 4 σκεφώμεθα: let us...; hortatory aor. subj. ὃ: (that) which...; add missing antecedent βούλεσθαι...πάλαι: that he has wanted for a long time...; compare c6 above δοκεῖ: he seems; Crito is subject 5 τι δὲ: What?; ‘what about this?’ expresses surprise and precedes a follow-up question ἄλλο γε ἂν: (anything) else than...? 7 ὡς ἐλάχιστα: as as possible φησὶ: he says that those; i.e poison-bearer
μᾶλλον διαλεγομένους, δεῖν δὲ οὐδὲν τοιοῦτον προσφέρειν τῷ
φαρμάκῳ εἰ δὲ μὴ, ένιστε αναγκάζεσθαι καὶ δις καὶ τρίς
e πίνειν τοὺς τι τοιοῦτον ποιοῦντας.

καὶ ο Σωκράτης, έα, έφη, χαίρειν αὐτόν· ἀλλὰ μόνον
tὸ ἕαυτον παρασκευαζέτω ὡς καὶ δις δώσων, εὰν δὲ δέη,
καὶ τρίς.

ἀλλὰ σχεδὸν μὲν τι ἰδῆ, έφη ο Κρίτων· ἀλλὰ μοι πάλαι
πράγματα παρέχει.

εὰ αὐτόν, έφη, ἀλλ' ύμιν δ' τοῖς δικασταῖς βούλομαι
ἵδη τὸν λόγον ἀποδοῦναι, ὡς μοι φαίνεται εἰκότως ἀνὴρ
tῷ ὠντι ἐν φιλοσοφίᾳ διατρίμασι τὸν βίον θαρρεῖν μέλλων
ἀποθανεῖσθαι καὶ εὐελπίς εἶναι ἐκεὶ μέγιστα οἴσθεθαι ἀγαθὰ

64a οἴσθεθαι: will carry off; 'win,' fut. φέρω,

63d 64a 23
The Philosopher and Death

έπειδαν τελευτήσῃ. πῶς ἂν οὖν δὴ τοῦθ᾽ οὕτως ἔχοι, ὡς Συμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, ἐγὼ πειράσομαι φράσαι.

κινδυνεύοναι γὰρ ὅσοι τυγχάνουσιν ὁρθῶς ἀπτόμενοι

φιλοσόφας λεληθήναι τοὺς ἄλλους ὅτι οὐδὲν ἄλλο αὐτοὶ ἑπιτηδεύουσιν ἢ ἀποθνήσκειν τε καὶ τεθνάναι. εἰ οὖν τούτο ἄληθὲς, ἄτοπον δὴπον ἂν εἰχ᾽ προθυμεῖσθαι μὲν ἐν παντὶ τῷ βίῳ μηδὲν ἄλλο ἡ τοῦτο, ἥκοντος δὲ δὴ αὐτοῦ ἀγανακτεῖν ὃ πάλαι προσυμοῦντο τε καὶ ἐπετήδευον.

καὶ ὁ Συμμίας γελάσας, νη τὸν Δία, ἔφη, ὡς Σώκρατες, οὐ πάνυ γε με νυνθὴ γελασείοντα ἐποίησος γελάσαι. οἷμαι γὰρ ἂν τοὺς πόλλους αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἀκούσαντας δοκεῖν εὖ πάνυ εἰρήθαι εἰς τοὺς φιλοσοφοῦντας—καὶ συμφάναι ἂν τοὺς μὲν

ἀγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12
ἅπτω: fasten, grasp (gen); kindle, set fire; 11
ἐ-τοποσ-ου: strange, odd, out of place, 9
γελασεῖο: to be ready to laugh, 1
γελάω: to laugh; 6
δή-ποι: perhaps, I suppose; of course, 8
ἐπιτήδειον: to pursue, practice, 4
ἐὖ: well, 19
Ζεύς, ὁ: Zeus, 11
ἡκω: to have come, be present, 14
κινδυνεύω: to risk, venture; it is likely, 7

2 τελευτήσῃ: 3rd sg. aor. subj. + ἂν in an indefinite temporal clause
πῶς οὖν δὴ; how then indeed?...?
ἄν...οὔτως ἔχοι: would be so; ‘holds thus,’ potential opt.
τοῦθ᾽: τοῦτο, subject
3 φράσαι: aor. inf. φράζω
4 κινδυνεύοναι...λεληθήναι: likely have escaped the notice of others; ‘run the risk to have escaped.’...; pf. act. inf. λαυθάνω
δοῦν: (all those) who...; missing antecedent is subject of sentence
τυγχάνουσιν: + complementary pple (see p. 20); ἅπτω governs a partitive gen.
αὐτοῦ: (they) themselves; intensive
6 ἂν: than
τεθνάναι: to be dead; pf. inf. θυήσκω
ἀληθές: predicate, supply a linking verb

8 τοῦτο: this; i.e. death
ἡκοντος δὲ δὴ αὐτοῦ: but then (when) it comes...; δὲ δὴ is an adversative which introduces a new point; gen. absolute, αὐτοῦ refers to death
9 δὲ-ἐπετήδειον: which...; the antecedent is αὐτοῦ
10 γελάσας: bursting into laughter; inceptive aor. pple, nom. sg.
τὸν Δία: acc. sg. of Ζεύς
ἔφη: 3rd sg. impf. φημι
b1 οὐ πάνυ γε...γελασείοντα: (although)...; pple is concessive in sense
γελάσαι: aor. inf.
οἴμαι: οἴμαι
2 ἂν δοκεῖν: would think (that it); potential
3 εἰρήθαι: pf. pass. inf. λέγω (stem ἔρ-) εἰς: with regard to...
συμφάναι ἂν: would...; aor. inf. σύνημι
παρ' ἰμίν αὐθρώπους καὶ πάνω—ὅτι τῷ ὄντι οἱ φιλοσο-
φῶντες θανατώσι, καὶ σφᾶς γε οὐ λελήθασιν ὅτι ἄξιοι εἰσώ
τοῦτο πάσχειν.
καὶ ἀληθῆ γ᾽ ἂν λέγοιεν, ὁ Συμμία, πλὴν γε τοῦ σφᾶς
μὴ λεληθέναι. λέληθεν γὰρ αὐτούς ἢ τε θανατῶσι καὶ ἢ ἄξιοι
εἰσώ τανάτον καὶ ὧν θανάτου φιλόσοφοι. εἴπωμεν γὰρ, ἐφη, πρὸς ἢμᾶς αὐτούς, χαίρειν εἰπόντες ἐκεί-
νοις ἤγοιομεθά τι τοῦθεν εἶναι;
πάνυ γε, ἐφη ὑπολαβὼν ο ὁ Συμμίας.
ἀρα μὴ ἄλλο τι ἢ τὴν τῆς ψυχῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ σῶματος
ἀπαλλαγῆν; καὶ εἶναι τοῦτο τὸ τεθνάναι, χωρίς μὲν ἀπὸ τῆς
ψυχῆς ἀπαλλαγέν αὐτὸ καθ' αὐτὸ τὸ σῶμα γεγονέναι, χωρίς

δέξιος, -α, -ων: worthy of, deserving of, 15
ἀπ-αλλαγῆ, ἢ: escape; release, departure, 7
ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
θανατάω: to desire to die, 1
λανθάνοι: to escape notice of; forget, 7
πλήν: except, but (+ gen.), 7

4 τοὺς παρὰ(ἡ) ἰμῖν αὐθρώπους: our people;
'people among us' i.e. Boeotian Greeks,
acc. subject
καὶ πάνω: quite very much; καὶ is
adverbial and intensifies πάνω
τῷ ὄντι: in reality, really; 'in being,' dat.
sg. pple εἰμί is often translated as an adv.
5 θανατάω: θανατάοι, 3rd pl. pres.
καὶ...γε: yes, and...them; affirmative and
perhaps emphasizing the intervening word
σφᾶς: acc. pl. σφῆς, the Boeotians
λελήθασιν: 3p pf. λανθάνοι; philosophers
are the understood subject
ἐίναν: they are; i.e. philosophers
6 πάσχειν: explanatory inf. with ἄξιοι
7 καὶ...γε: yes, and...; see line 5
ἀληθή: the truth; 'true things,' ἀληθή-α
ἀν λέγοιεν: would...; 3p potential opt.
πλήν γε: except, in fact;... emphatic
τού...λεληθέναι: that it...; gen. articular
inf. (pf. act. λανθάνω) as object of πλήν
8 λεληθέν: it has...; 3p pf. λανθάνω
ἡ: in what way...; relative, dat. of manner

θανατάω: θανατάοι, 3p pres.
ἄξιος: governs genitives
9 οἶου θανάτου (δεξιοί ειαυ): and of what
sort of death (they are worthy)
ὡς ἀληθῶς: truly
c₁ εἴπωμεν: let...; hortatory aor. subj. εἶπον
ἡμᾶς αὐτούς: one another; 'ourselves'
χαίρειν εἰπόντες: i.e. bidding goodbye
2 ἤγοιομεθα: i.e. believe
πάνυ γε: quite indeed; common affirmative
4 ἄρα μὴ ἄλλο τι ἢ: Surely (it is) not
anything other than...; ἄρα μὴ anticipates a
negative response (S 2651), the accusative
that follows is in response to the question
in c₂, ἤγοιομεθα τὸν θανάτον εἶναι
5 τὸ τεθνάνα: to be dead; pf. denotes a state
rather than an action, acc. subject
ἐίναν: that...; governed by ἤγοιομεθα
χωρίς μὲν...: (namely) that...; in apposition
to τοῦτο, the predicate of εἶναι
6 ἀπαλλαγέν: aor. pass. pple with τοῦτο
ἀὐτὸ καθ’ ἐκατό: the body itself in itself
gεγονέναι: pf. inf. γίγνομαι
The Philosopher and Death

dε τὴν ψυχὴν ἀπὸ τοῦ σώματος ἀπαλλαγεῖσαι αὐτὴν καθ’ αὐτὴν εἶναι; ἄρα μὴ ἄλλο τι ἢ ὁ θάνατος ἢ τοῦτο; οὐκ, ἀλλὰ τοῦτο, ἐφη.

10 σκέψαι δὴ, ὡγαθέ, ἐὰν ἄρα καὶ σοι συνδοκῇ ἀπερ ἐμοί·

d εκ γὰρ τούτων μᾶλλον οἴμαι ἡμᾶς εἴσεθαί περὶ ὧν σκοποῦμεν. φαίνεται σοι φιλοσόφου ἄνδρος εἶναι ἐσπονδακέναι περὶ τὰς ἥδωνας καλουμένας τὰς τοιάσδε, οἷον σιτίων [τε] καὶ ποτῶν;

5 ἥκιστα, ὡ Σώκρατες, ἐφη ὁ Συμμίας.

tί δὲ τὰς τῶν ἀφροδισίων;

οὔδαμῶς.

tί δὲ τὰς ἄλλας τὰς περὶ τὸ σῶμα θεραπείας; δοκεῖ σοι

---

Philosophical Vocabulary: αὐτὸ κατ(α) ἐαυτὸ itself by itself or itself in itself

Plato often combines an intensive (αὐτὸς) and reflexive (ἐαυτοῦ) to denote separation.
Plato often uses this key verb to describe the relationship between a object and a form. For example, the number three is odd because three participates in or shares in (μετέχει) the form oddness. The nature of the participation of objects with forms is a subject of scholarly debate.
σώματος κοινωνίας διαφερόντως τῶν ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων;
φαίνεται.
καὶ δοκεῖ γέ που, ὁ Σιμμία, τοῖς πολλοῖς ἀνθρώποις
μὴ μὴ ὑδυ τῶν τοιούτων μηδὲ μετέχει αὐτῶν ὅτι ἄξιον
ἐναι ζην, ἀλλ' ἐγγύς τι τείνειν τοῦ τεθνάναι ὁ μὴ ἂν ὑπό-
τίζων τῶν ἠδονῶν αὐτὶ διὰ τοῦ σώματος εἶσων.
πάνυ μὲν οὖν ἀληθῶς λέγεις.
τί δὲ δὴ περὶ αὐτὴν τὴν τῆς φρονῆσεως κτῆσων; πό-
τερον ἐμπόδιον τὸ σῶμα ἢ οὐ, ἐὰν τις αὐτὸ ἐν τῇ ζητήσει
κοινωνοῦν συμπαραλαμβάνῃ; οἶνον τὸ τοιόνδε λέγω. ἄρα ἔχει
ἀλληθειάν τινα ὄψις τε καὶ ἀκοῦ ἂν τριῶν ἀνθρώπως, ἢ τὰ γε
τοιαῦτα καὶ οἱ ποιηταί ἢμῖν ἀεὶ θρυλοῦσιν, ὅτι οὐτ᾽ ἀκούομεν

άκοη, ἢ: hearing, 1
ἀληθεία, ἢ: truth, 7
ἀξιος, -α, -ου: worthy of, deserving of, 15
διαφερόντως: especially; differently, 4
ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 5
ἐμπόδιος, -ού: hindering, impeding, 1
ζήτησι, ἢ: seeking, examining, 3
ἡδωνή, ἢ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
ἡδος, -εια, -α: sweet, pleasant, glad, 5
θρυλέω: chatter about, talk over and over, 2
κοινωνία, ἢ: community, association, 2
κοινοτής, ὁ: partner, associate, companion, 2
κτήσις, -εως, ἢ: possession, acquisition, 3
μετέχει: to partake of, have share in (gen) 12
ὄψις, -εως, ἢ: vision, appearance, form; face, 6
ποιητής, οὗ, ὁ: maker, creator, poet, 6
πότερον, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
συμπαραλαμβάνω: take along (as a helper) 2
τείνω: to extend, stretch, strain, 2
φρόνησιν, -εως, ἢ: understanding, wisdom, prudence, 15
φροντῴω: think, worry, give heed to (gen) 3

2 τῶν ἀνθρώπων: from...; gen. comparison
4 καὶ...γέ: and...indeed; the particles emphasize the intervening word
τοίς...ἀνθρώποις: dat. reference with δοκεῖ
5 οὗ...οὗτῳ: (for the one) to whom none of such things (are) pleasant and there is not a share of them; the missing antecedent refers to the philosopher and is a dat. of interest with ἄξιον εἶναι; μὴ is used instead of οὐ in a generalizing relative clause
ἄξιον εἶναι: to be worthwhile; after δοκεῖ
6 ζην: explanatory inf. ζάω with ἄξιον τοῦ τεθνάνα: being dead; articular pf. inf. θνησκόμω, gen. object of ἐγγύς
τι τείνειν (δοκεῖ): (seems) to strive somewhat; inner acc.
ἀκριβῆς οὐδὲν οὔτε ὅρωμεν; καίτοι εἰ αὖτα τῶν περὶ τὸ σῶμα αἰσθήσεων μὴ ἀκριβεῖς εἰσών μηδὲ σαφεῖς, σχολῆς αἰ γε ἄλλαι· πάσαι γάρ ποι τούτων φαυλότεραι εἰσών. ἦ σοι οὐ δοκούσιν;  
πάνω μὲν οὖν, ἐφη.
πότε οὖν, ἡ δ' ὅς, ἡ ψυχὴ τῆς ἀληθείας ἀπτεταί; ὡταν μὲν γὰρ μετὰ τοῦ σῶματος ἐπιχειρῆ τι σκοτείνων, δῆλον ὦτι τότε ἐξαπατᾶται ὑπ' αὕτου.
ἀληθῆ λέγεις.  
ἀρ' οὖν οὐκ ἐν τῷ λογίζεσθαι εἶπερ ποι ἀλλοθι κατά-
δηλον αὐτῇ γίγνεται τι τῶν ὄντων; ναι.  

---

αἰσθήσεως, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἀκριβῆς, -ής, ἡ: exact, accurate, precise, 5
ἀληθεία, ἡ: truth, 7
ἀλλοθι: in another place, elsewhere, 7
ἐπιχειρῆ: to deceive, beguile, 4
ἐπι-χειρέω: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 8
καίτοι: and yet, and indeed, and further, 8
κατὰ-δῆλος, -όν: evident, visible, clear, 1
λογίζομαι: to reason, calculate, count, 9
ναι: yes, yea, 15
πότε: when, at what time, 2
σαφῆς, -ής: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
σχολή, ἡ: leisure, rest; σχολῆ, scarcely, 3
φαύλος -ή -ων: slight, paltry, cheap, trifling 9

---

4 αὖτα: these; i.e. hearing and seeing
5 εἰσών: 3p pres. eiμι
6 αὐτῇ ἄλλα: the rest at least (are not accurate nor reliable); supply the predicate
7 εἰσών: see pg. 6
8 πάνω μὲν οὖν: quite certainly indeed; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
9 ἐφη: see pg. 6
10 ἐπιχειρῆ: one...; 3s pres. subj. + ὢν in a pres. general condition (ἐὰν + subj., pres. ind.)
11 ὑπὸ αὐτοῦ: because of...; gen. of cause
12 αὐτῇ: it; i.e. τῇ ψυχῇ
13 τι: something; nom. subject
14 τῶν ὄντων: of the things which are; pple
λογίζεται δέ γε ποι τότε κάλλιστα, ὅταν αὐτὴν τούτων μηδὲν παραλυπῇ, μήτε ἀκοὴ μήτε ὃψις μήτε ἄλγηδὼν μηδὲ τις ἡδονή, ἀλλὰ ὃτι μάλιστα αὐτῇ καθ' αὐτὴν γίγνηται εἴσαχαίρειν τὸ σῶμα, καὶ καθ' ὃσον δύναται μὴ κοινωνοῦσα αὐτῷ μηδὲν ἀπτομένη ὀρέγηται τοῦ ὄντος.

ἔστι ταῦτα.

οὐκόν καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἡ τοῦ φιλοσόφου ψυχή μάλιστα ἀτμαίζει τὸ σῶμα καὶ φεύγει ἀπ' αὐτοῦ, ζητεὶ δὲ αὐτή καθ' αὐτὴν γίγνεσθαι; φαίνεται.

τί δὲ δῆ τὰ τοιάδε, ὡ Σιμμία; φαμέν τι εἶναι δίκαιον αὐτὸ ἡ οὐδέν; 

5 λογίζεται: supply ἡ ψυχή as subject κάλλιστα: very well, most beautifully, 2 κοινωνεῖ: to associate with, partake in (dat) 4 λογίζομαι: to reason, calculate, count, 9 μή-τε: and not, neither...nor, 15 ὀρέγω: to stretch out, reach for (gen.) 3 ὁρίζω, -εως, -ν: vision, appearance, form; face, 6 παρα-λυπέω: trouble, grieve (by diversion) 1 φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 10 φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18 χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well 12

6 ἀκοὴ, ἡ: hearing, 1 ἀλγηθῶν, ὁ-νος, ἡ: pain, suffering, grief, 2 ἀπτώ: fasten, grasp (gen); kindle, set fire; 11 ἁ-τιμάξω: to dishonor, insult, slight, 4 δικαίω, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13 δύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15 εἰσάχαρα: here, hither, there, thither, then, 5 ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 9 ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17

7 ὃτι μάλιστα: as...as possible; + superlative αὐτὴ καθ' (ἐ)αυτὴν: itself by itself γίγνηται: it happens + pple; pres. subj. in the same temporal clause as παραλυπῇ ἐν σάχαιν: dismissing; ‘letting say ‘goodbye’”; fem. sg. pple ἐσάχω; see also 63ε3 and 63ε8 for the same expression

8 καθ’ ὃσον δύναται: inasmuch as... μή...ἀπτομένη: (if) not...; both pres. pples are conditional: hence μή and not οὐ αὐτῷ: in it; i.e. the σῶμα κάλλιστα: very well, most beautifully, 2 κοινωνεῖ: to associate with, partake in (dat) 4 λογίζομαι: to reason, calculate, count, 9 μή-τε: and not, neither...nor, 15 ὀρέγω: to stretch out, reach for (gen.) 3 ὁρίζω, -εως, -ν: vision, appearance, form; face, 6 παρα-λυπέω: trouble, grieve (by diversion) 1 φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 10 φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18 χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well 12

9 ὀρέγηται: pres. subjunctive, in the same clause as παραλυπῇ and γίγνηται τοῦ ὄντος: what exists; partitive gen., this pple εἰμί is presumably the same as τῶν ὄντων in 63ε3 10 ἔστι: are the case; i.e. are true 11 οὐκόν: accordingly; inferential ἐνταῦθα: here; i.e. in this instance 12 ἀυτῇ καθ' (ἐ)αυτὴν: itself by itself τί δὲ δῆ; What then about?; introducing a new question 4 τὰ τοιάδε: i.e. the following φαμέν: 1p pres. φημί τι...δίκαιον: that something just...; acc. subject τι is the predicate, ind. discourse 5 αὐτῷ: intensive; ‘by itself’ is a possible reading
φαμέν μέντοι νη Δία.
καὶ αὐτολγόν γέ τι καὶ ἄγαθόν;
πῶς δ' οὖ;
ηδη οὖν πάποτε τι τῶν τοιούτων τοῖς ὁφθαλμοῖς εἶδες;
οὐδαμῶς, ἥ δ' ὅς.

ἀλλ' ἀλλή των αἰσθήσει τῶν διὰ τοῦ σώματος ἐφήψω
αὐτῶν; λέγω δὲ περὶ πάντων, ὦν μεγέθους περὶ, ὑγείας,
ἰσχύος, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἐνὶ λόγῳ ἀπάντων τῆς οὐσίας ὁ
τυγχάνει ἐκαστὸν ὄν άρα διὰ τοῦ σώματος αὐτῶν τὸ ε
ἀληθέστατον θεωρεῖται, ἥ ὦδε ἔχει' ὦς ἂν μάλιστα ἠμῶν καὶ
ἀκριβέστατα παρασκευάσηται αὐτῷ ἐκαστὸν διανοηθήναι

6 φομέν: we say (it); supply object
μέντοι: certainly; often found before an
ointment such as νη Δία, Δία is acc. sg. Ζεύς
7 καὶ...γέ: and...indeed; emphasizing the
intervening word
8 πῶς δ' οὖ: how (could there) not?; elliptical
9 τῶν τοιούτων: partitive gen. with τι
τοῖς ὁφθαλμοῖς: dat. of means
εἶδες: 2s εἶδον (aor. of ἀποθέω)
10 ἥ δ' οὖ: see note on pg. 9
11 ἀλλή...αἰσθήσει: by...; dat. of means
τῶν διὰ τοῦ σώματος: than those...; gen.
of comparison following ἀλλή
ἐφήμα(ο)σ: 3s aor. mid. ἐφ-ἀπτομαί
governs a partitive genitive
12 αὐτῶν: them; i.e. καλὸν τι καὶ ἄγαθον
οἶον: for example; acc. of respect
μεγέθους περί: περὶ μεγέθους, the

following genitives are objects of περὶ
13 ἐνὶ λόγῳ: in a word...; dat. of manner
τῶν ἄλλων ἀπάντων: modifies οὐσίας
tῆς οὐσίας: (about) the essence; with περὶ
δ...: which; refers to the ἀπάντων

ἔτη τυγχάνει: + pple τείμα, see p. 20
αὐτῶν...ἀληθέστατον: the most truthful
(account) of them; subject, i.e. καλὸν τι καὶ
ἀγαθὸν; superlative
2 ὦδε ἔχει: is it so? ἔχω + adv., see pg. 7
ὁ δὲ...ὑμῶν...: whoever among us...;
indefinite relative (ὁν + subj.) here aor.
mid., and partitive gen.

μάλιστα, ἀκριβέστατα: superlative advs.
dιανοηθήναι: to consider; aor. depon. inf.
4 ἄν...τοι: would come; potential opt. ἔρχομαι
τοῦ γνώναι: knowing; articular aor. inf.
5 πάνυ μὲν οὖν.
   ἃρ’ οὖν ἐκεῖνος ἄν τοῦτο πονήσειν καθαρώτατα ὅστις
   ὅτι μάλιστα αὐτῇ τῇ διανοίᾳ ἵνα ἐφ’ ἐκαστὸν, μήτε τιν’
   ὅπως παρατηθήμενος ἐν τῷ διανοεῖθαι μήτε τινά ἄλλην
66 αἰσθησιν ἐφέλκων μηδεμίαν μετὰ τοῦ λογισμοῦ, ἀλλ’ αὐτῇ
   καθ’ αὐτήν εἰλικρινές τῇ διανοίᾳ χρώμενος αὐτὸ καθ’ αὐτὸ εἰλι-
   κρινές ἐκαστὸν ἐπιχειροὶ θηρεύειν τῶν ὅντων, ἀπαλλαγεῖς
   ὅτι μάλιστα ὀφθαλμῶν τε καὶ ὅτων καὶ ὡς ἐποῦ εἰπεῖν σύμ-
   παντος τοῦ σώματος, ὡς ταραττοντος καὶ οὐκ ἐφῶντο τὴν
   ψυχὴν κτήσασθαί ἀλήθειαν τε καὶ φρόνησιν ὅταν κοινωνῇ;
   ἃρ’ οὖν οὔτος ἐστιν, ὁ Συμμία, εἴπερ τις [καὶ] ἄλλος ὁ
   τευξόμενος τοῦ ὅντος;

aἰσθήσις, -eos, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἀλήθεια, ἡ: truth, 7
δια-νοέμα: to think, consider, intend, 6
διάνοια, ἡ: thought, intention, purpose, 6
ἐάσω: to permit, allow, let be, suffer, 9
eἰλικρινής, ἐσ: unmixed, pure, simple, 4
ἐπί-χειρέω: put one’s hand on, attempt, try, 8
ἐπος, -eος, τό: a word, 4
eφ-έλκο: to draw on, pull in, 1
θηρεύω: to hunt, chase, 1
κοινονέω: to associate with, partake in (dat) 4
κτάμαι: to procure, get, gain, acquire, 6

λογισμός, ὁ: reasoning, calculation; account 3
μή-τε: and not, neither...nor, 15
οὖς, ὃτος, τό: ear, 2
ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: the eye, 3
ὀψις, -eos, ἡ: vision, appearance, form; face, 6
παρα-τίθημα: to place beside, provide, offer, 1
σώματος, -σάς, -σαν, -σαν: all together, 2
ταράττω: to trouble, stir, agitate, 6
φρόνησις, -eos, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, prudence, 15
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11

5 πάνυ μὲν οὖν: quite certainly indeed; μὲν
   οὖν is a strong assent
6 ἄν...ποιήσειν: would...; 3s potential aor.
   opt.; i.e. consider each thing itself' καθαρώματα: superlative adv.
7 ὅτι μάλιστα: as...as possible; as often
   when ὅτι or ὃς is followed by a superlative
   αὐτῇ...διανοίᾳ: with reason itself; means
   ἵνα: should approach; pres. opt., equiv. to
   a future less vivid (ei + opt., ἄν + opt.)
   ἐφ’ ἐκαστον: to each thing, upon each thing
8 μήτε...μήτε: neither...nor; conditional force
   ἐν τῷ διανοεῖθαι: articular inf.
66a μηδεμίαν: not even one
2 αὐτῇ καθ’ (ἐ)αὐτῷ: itself by itself
   εἰλικρινέ: 3rd decl. adjective, dat. sg.
   εἰλικρινές: 3rd decl. adjective, neut. acc. sg.

3 ἐπιχειροὶ: should attempt; parallel to ἵνα
tῶν ὅντων: of the things which are;
partitive gen. with ἐκαστὸν
   ἀπαλλαγεῖς: nom. sg. aor. passive pple
4 ὀφθαλμῶν: from...; gen. of separation
   ὃς ἐποῦ εἰπεῖν: so to speak; ‘so to speak a
   word’
5 ὃς...: on the grounds that...; or ‘since…’
   ὃς + pple expresses alleged cause
   ἐώντος: gen. sg. pple ἐῶ
6 κοινων.: (the soul) shares in (these
   things); 3rd sg. subj. in the prothesis of a
   present general condition
7 ἐπ’ ὅτι...ἄλλος: if in fact anyone else,
   ὁ τευξόμενος: fut. mid. pple τυχάνω +
   partitive gen.; see p. 20
   τοῦ ὅντος: that which is; or ‘what is’
ὑπερφυώς, ἔφη ὁ Συμμάς, ὡς ἀλήθη λέγεις, ὡς Σώκρατες.

οὐκοῦν ἀνάγκη, ἔφη, ἐκ πάντων τούτων παρίστασθαι δόξαν τοιάντε τινὰ τοῖς γνησίως φιλοσόφοις, ὥστε καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους τουαίτα ἄττα λέγειν, ὦτι 'κυδυνεύει τοι ὀσπερ ἀτραπός τις ἐκφέρειν ήμᾶς μετὰ τοῦ λόγου ἐν τῇ σκέψει, ὦτι, ἐως ἄν τὸ σῶμα ἐξωμεν καὶ συμπεφυρμένη ἡ ἠμῶν ἡ ψυχὴ μετὰ τοιούτου κακοῦ, οὐ μή ποτε κτησώμεθα ἱκανῶς οὔ ἐπιθυμοῦμεν· φαμὲν δὲ τούτῳ εἶναι τὸ ἀληθὲς. μνημιας μὲν γὰρ ἠμῶν ἀσχολίας παρέχει τὸ σῶμα διὰ τὴν ἀναγκαίαν τροφήν· ἔτι δὲ, ἄν τινες νόσοι προσπέσωσιν, ἐμποδίζουσιν το ἠμῶν τὴν τοῦ ὄντος θήραν. ἑρώτων δὲ καὶ ἐπιθυμοῦν καὶ

ά-σχολία, ἡ: task business, occupation, 3 ά-τραπός, ἡ: path-way, road (of no turns), 1 γνησίος, -α, -ον: genuine, legitimate, true, 1 δόξα, ἡ: opinion, reputation, honor, glory, 7 ἐκ-φέρω: to carry out, bring forth, produce, 2 ἐν-ποδίζω: to hinder, impede, 1 ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for, (gen.) 10 ἐπι-θυμία, ἡ: desire, longing, yearning, 10 ἐρως, ἐρωτός, ὁ: passion, lust, love, 2 ἔως: until, as long as, 15 θῆρα, ἡ: hunt, chase, 1 κυδυνεύω: to risk, venture; it is likely, 7

9 ὑπερφυώς...ἀς: (it is) extraordinary how; ὑπερφυές ἐστιν ἃς, nominative predicate is often attracted by the adverb ἃς ἀληθή: ἀληθε-α, acc. neut. pl.

b1 ἀνάγκη (ἐστίν): supply verb ἐκ...: i.e. as a result of what has been said 2 τοῖς...φιλοσόφοις: for...; dat. of interest governed by ἀνάγκη ἐστίν ὥστε...λέγειν: so as to...; result clause ἄττα: some; alternate to indefinite τινά ὅτι: (namely) that... 3 κυδυνεύει...ότι: it looks as though...that; ‘it runs the risk...’ impersonal 4 ἐκφέρειν: to carry us out; inf. of purpose 5 ὅτι: that... ἄν...ἐχωμεν: ἄν + subj., indefinite temporal clause κτάμαι: to procure, get, gain, acquire, 6 μυρίος, -η, -ον: countless, infinite, 6 νόσος, ο: illness, sickness, 5 παρ-ἔχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16 παρ-ίστημι: to present, offer, set near, 3 προς-πίπτω: to fall upon, 1 σκέπτομαι: look at, examine, consider, 9 συμ-φύρω: knead together, 1 τοι: ya know, let me tell you, surely, 4 τροφή: fostering, rearing, food; 4 ὑπερφυώς: extraordinarily, remarkably, 3 φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18

συμπεφυρμένη: ἡ: periphrastic pf. pass. subjunctive (pf. pass. pple + 3s. pres. subj. εἰμί) in the same temporal clause 6 κακοῦ: base thing; i.e. the body, neuter οὐ μὴ...κτησόμεθα: we will not ever possess; οὐ μὴ + aor. subj. expressing a strong denial (translate as a future) 7 οὖ: that which; relative, missing antecedent is object of κτησομέθα φαμὲν: 1p pres. φημί 8 διὰ: on account of...; + acc. c1 ἑτί δὲ: i.e. in addition, besides ἄν: if...; ἄν + subj in a pres. general condition (ei ἄν + subj., pres. indicate) προσπέσωσιν: aor. subj. προς-πίπτω 2 τοῦ...ὅτος: of what is; objective gen. ἑρωτών: gen. pl. ἐρως
φόβων καὶ εἰδώλων παντοδαπῶν καὶ φλυαρίας ἐμπιμπλησων ἥμας πολλῆς, ὡστε τὸ λεγόμενον ὡς ἀληθῶς τῷ ὤντι ὑπ’ αὑτοῦ οὐδὲ φρονήσαι ἤμων ἐγγίγνεται οὐδέποτε οὐδέν. καὶ γὰρ πολέμους καὶ στάσεις καὶ μάχας οὐδὲν ἀλλο παρέχει ἢ τὸ σῶμα καὶ αἱ τούτων ἐπιθυμία. διὰ γὰρ τὴν τῶν χρήματων κτῆσιν πάντες οἱ πόλεμοι γίγνονται, τὰ δὲ χρήματα ἀναγκαζόμεθα κτᾶσαι διὰ τὸ σῶμα, δουλεύοντες τῇ τούτῳ θεραπείᾳ: καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἁγιολιαν ἁγομεν φιλοσοφίας πέρι διὰ πάντα ταῦτα. τὸ δ’ ἐσχατὸν πάντων ὁτι, ἐάν τις ἤμων καὶ σχολή γένηται ἀπ’ αὐτοῦ καὶ τραπώμεθα πρὸς τὸ σκοπέων τι, ἐν ταῖς ζητήσεων αὐτοῦ πανταχοῦ παραπίπτον τὸροβοῦ παρέχει καὶ ταραχὴν καὶ ἐκπλήττει, ὡστε μὴ

3. ἐμπιπλησων: 3rd sg. pres. + partitive gen.
4. πολλῆς: governs fem. gen. sg. φλυαρίας ὡστε...ἐγγίγνεται: so that...it is possible; τὸ λεγόμενον: as the saying goes; 'in respect to what is said,' acc. respect ὅ ἀληθῶς: truly τὸ δὲντ: (and) really; as often, the dat. of the pple εἰμὶ is adverbial in sense
5. ὅτι(ὅ): because of...; gen. of cause οὐδὲ...οὐδέποτε οὐδέν: not...ever anything; English prefers to avoid double negatives, οὐδὲν is object of inf. φρονήσαι καὶ γὰρ: for in fact; καὶ is adverbial
7. τούτου: of this; i.e. body; subjective gen. διὰ...: on account of...; + acc.

metic, ἢ: battle, fight, combat, 1
οὐδέποτε: not ever, never, 11
παντο-χοῦ: everywhere, in all places, 3
παντο-διαπόσ, ἢ, ὅν: of every kind or sort, 3
παρα-πίπτω: to fall beside or alongside, 1
πόλεμος, ὁ: battle, fight, war, 2
στάσις, ἢ, ὅσως: discord, sedition, division, 1
σχολή, ἡ: leisure, rest: σχολή, scarcely, 3
ταραχή, ἡ: trouble, disorder, confusion, 1
τρέπω: to turn, 4
φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
φλυαρία, ἡ: nonsense, silly talk, foolery, 1
φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 10
φρονέω: to think, to be wise, prudent, 2
χρήμα, -ατος, τό: thing, money, possessions 6

66c The Philosopher and Death
δύνασθαι ὑπ’ αὐτοῦ καθορᾶν τάληθες. ἀλλὰ τῷ ὄντι ἦμιν δὲδεκταὶ ὅτι, εἰ μέλλομέν ποτε καθαρῶς τι εἰσεσθαί, ἀπαλλακτέον αὐτοῦ καὶ αὐτῇ τῇ ψυχῇ θεατέον αὐτὰ τὰ ἑ πράγματα· καὶ τότε, ὡς ἔσοικεν, ἦμιν ἔσται οὗ ἐπιθυμοῦμέν τε καὶ φαμεν ἐρασταί εἰναι, φρονήσεως, ἐπειδὰν τελευτήσωμεν, ὡς ὁ λόγος σημαίνει, ζῶσιν δὲ οὗ. εἰ γὰρ μὴ οἶδον τε μετὰ τοῦ σώματος μηδὲν καθαρῶς γνώναι, διοίν πάση τὸν πράγματα ἀπεισόμεθα ἔπειδη καθορᾶν τὸν κράτος ὑπὸ θυμοῦν, ὕπατο ἔστιν κτήσασθαι τὸ εἰδέναι ἡ τελευτήσωσιν τότε γὰρ αὕτῇ καθ’ αὐτὴν ἡ ψυχῇ ἔσται χωρίς τοῦ σώματος, 67 πρότερον οὐκ ἂν ζῶμεν, οὕτως, ὡς ἔσοικεν, ἐγγυτάτω ἐσόμεθα τοῦ εἰδέναι, εάν ὅτι μάλιστα μηδὲν ὀμιλώμεν τῷ σώματι μηδὲ ΚΟΙΝΩΝΕΩ: to associate with, take part in, 4 κτάμα: to procure, get, gain, acquire, 6 μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19 ὁμλέω, ἣ: be in company with, consort with 1 ὁμλαμοῦ: nowhere, in no way, 5 πράγμα, -ατός τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18 σημαίνω: indicate, point out, show by a sign 2 φρόνησις ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, prudence 15 χωρίς: separately; apart from, without (gen) 6 ὡς...: as...; parenthetical 4 ἡσαίω δὲ οὐ: but not to (as) living; ἦσαίων, dat. pl. pres. pple ἦσαίωn το (ἔστι): it is not possible; a common idiom, here used impersonally: οἷος τε + εἰμί often means ‘to be able’ or ‘to be fit to’ 5 γνώναι: aor. inf. γνωσκον διοίν πάση τὸν πρότερον: one of two things (occur); τὸν πρότερον = τὸ ἐπερών, dual gen. διὸ 6 ἢ...ἔστιν...ἢ: either it is possible...or; ἔστι is written ἔστι when expressing possibility τελευτήσωσιν: (only for us when) dead; dat. pl. aor. pple modifies missing ημῶν 67a1 αὐτῇ κατά(α) αὕτην: itself by itself ἔσται, ἐσόμεθα: 3s and 1p fut. dep. εἰμί 2 εἰ δὲ: in whatever (time); temporal ὡς ἔσοικεν: as it is likely; parenthetical 3 τοῦ εἰδέναι: knowing; articular inf. οἴδα ὃτι μάλιστα: as...as possible; + superlative μηδὲν: not at all; inner acc. 4 ὃ τι μὴ...: except absolute necessity; S 2765
The Philosopher and Death

5 μηδε ἀναπεμπλώμεθα τής τούτου φύσεως, ἀλλὰ καθαρεύωμεν ἀπ' αὐτοῦ, ἐως ἃν ὁ θεὸς αὐτὸς ἀπολύσῃ ἡμᾶς· καὶ οὕτω μὲν καθαροὶ ἀπαλλαττόμενοι τῆς τοῦ σώματος ἀφροσύνης, ὡς τὸ εἰκὸς μετὰ τοιούτων τε ἐσόμεθα καὶ γνωσόμεθα δι' ἡμῶν
b αὐτῶν πάν τὸ εἰλκρινές, τούτο δ' ἐστὶν ἰσως τὸ ἄληθες· μὴ καθαρῶ γὰρ καθαροῦ ἐφάπτεσθαι μὴ οὐ καθαρὸν ἥ· τοιαύτα οἴμα, ὃ Σιμία, ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι πρὸς ἀλλήλους λέγεν τε καὶ δοξάζεω πάντας τοὺς ὅρθος φιλομαθεῖς. ἥ οὐ δοκεῖ σοι οὕτως;

παντὸς γε μᾶλλον, ὃ Σωκράτες.

οὐκοῦν, ἐφή ο Σωκράτης, εἰ ταύτα ἄληθή, ὃ ἐταύρε, πολλή ἐλπὶς ἀφικομένω οἵ ἐγὼ πορεύομαι, ἐκεῖ ικανῶς,
κάθαρσις, καθἐν, ἐδυνατ, μεδεσἀἄἁἔχοθεν ἐδιάνοιαν ἀπραγματεία ἄρα ἐν τῷ παρελθόντι βίω γέγονεν, ὡστε ἢ γε ἀποδημία ἢ νῦν μοι προστεταγμένη μετὰ ἄγαθης ἐλπίδος γίγνεται καὶ ἄλλω ἄνδρὶ ὡς ἥγειται οἱ παρεσκευάσθαι τὴν διάνοιαν ὀσπερ κεκαθαρμένην.

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἐφὶ ὁ Συμμίας.

κάθαρσις ἐς ἐναὶ ἄρα οὐ τοῦτο συμβαίνει, ὅπερ πάλαι ἐν τῷ λόγῳ λέγεται, τὸ χωρίζειν ὅτι μάλιστα ἀπὸ τοῦ σώματος τῆς ψυχῆς καὶ ἐθίσαι αὐτὴν καθ᾽ αὐτὴν πανταχόθεν ἐκ τοῦ σώματος συναγείρονθαι τε καὶ ἄδροιζοθαι, καὶ οἰκεῖν κατὰ τὸ δυνατὸν καὶ ἐν τῷ νῦν παρόντι καὶ ἐν τῷ ἐπειτα μόνῃ καθ᾽ αὐτὴν, ἐκλυομένην ὀσπερ ἐκ δεσμῶν ἐκ
τοῦ σώματος;
πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη.
οὐκόιν τούτῳ γε θάνατος ὑπομάζεται, λύσις καὶ χωρισμὸς
ψυχῆς ἀπὸ σώματος;
παντάπασι γε, ἂ δ’ ὁς.
λύειν δὲ γε αὐτήν, ὡς φαμεν, προθυμοῦνται ἀεὶ μάλιστα
καὶ μόνοι οἱ φιλοσοφοῦντες ὀρθῶς, καὶ τὸ μελέτημα αὐτῷ
tούτῳ ἐστὶν τῶν φιλοσόφων, λύσις καὶ χωρισμὸς ψυχῆς
ἀπὸ σώματος. ἂ δ’ οὖ; φαίνεται.
οὐκόιν, ὅπερ ἐν ἀρχῇ ἔλεγον, γελοῖον ἂν εἴη ἄνδρα
e παρασκευάζονθ’ ἐαυτόν ἐν τῷ βίῳ ὅτι ἐγγυτάτω ὄντα τοῦ

ἀρχή, ἂ: a beginning; rule, office, 8
γελοῖος, -α, -ον: laughable, ridiculous, 2
ἐγγυτάτω (ἐγγύτατα): very near to (gen) 3
λύσις, εως, ἂ: releasing, deliverance, 4
λύω: to loosen, dissolve, break up, 7
μελέτημα -ατος τό: practice, exercise, study 1
ὄνομάζω: to name, call by name, 6
παντ-πασ: all in all, absolutely 15
παρα-σκευάζω: to get ready, prepare, 8
προ-θυμέομαι: to be eager, zealous, ready, 12
φιλο-σοφέω: seek knowledge, philosophize, 6
χωρισμός, ὁ: separation, division, 2

2 πάνυ μὲν οὖν: quite certainly indeed; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
4 τούτῳ γε: this; γε is emphatic and may be
expressed by accentuating the word ‘this’
or translated as ‘indeed’ or ‘in fact’
6 γε: indeed; emphatic and affirmative
7 δὲ γε: γε emphasizes λύειν
αὐτήν: i.e. the soul; acc. direct object
ὡς φαμεν: as…; parenthetical
μᾶλιστα καὶ μόνοι: in particular and they alone...
9 τῶν φιλοσόφων: subjective gen. with τὸ
μελέτημα
12 ὅπερ: (in respect to the very thing) which;
or ‘(as for that) which,’ the missing
antecedent is an acc. of respect
ἀν εἴη: would it be…; 3s potential opt.
εἰμι, Socrates is asking a question here
8 ἄνδρα…ζην…ἀγανακτεῖν: that a man…;
the acc. subject + inf. construction is the
true subject of εἴη
e! παρασκευάζον(τα): acc. sg. pres. pple
ὅτι ἐγγυτάτω: as near as possible to; +
gen; ὅτι + superlative adv., the predicate of
the acc. sg. pres. pple εἰμι

38

The Philosopher and Death
τεθνάναι οὕτω ζῆν, καὶ πειθή ἥκοντοσ αὐτῷ τοῦτον ἄγανακτεῖν; γελοίων πῶς δ᾽ οὖ;  

τῷ ὄντι ἄρα, ἔφη, ὁ Συμμία, οἱ ὅρθως φιλοσοφοῦντες ἀποθνήσκειν μελετῶσι, καὶ τὸ τεθνάναι ἥκιστα αὐτοῖς ἀνθρώπων φοβερόν. ἐκ τῶν δὲ σκότει, εἰ γὰρ διαβέβληται μὲν πανταχῦ τῷ σῶματι, αὐτὴν δὲ καθ᾽ αὐτὴν ἐπιθυμοῦσι τὴν ψυχὴν ἔχειν, τοῦτον δὲ γεγομένου εἰ φοβοῦντο καὶ ἄγακακτοεῖν, οὐ πολλῇ ἃν ἄλογία εἰη, εἰ μή ἁκομονοι ἑκείσε οἰεν, οἱ ἁφικομένοι ἐλπίς ἐστὶν οὔ δια βίου ἢρων τυχεῖν ἢρων δὲ φρονήσεως—ὁ τε διαβεβλήτω, τοῦτον ἀπηλλάχθαι συνόντος αὐτοῖς; ἢ ἀνθρωπίνων μὲν παιδικῶν καὶ γυναικῶν καὶ νεών ἀποθανόντων πολλοί δὴ ἐκόντες

ἀγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at; 12 ἁ-λογία, ἡ without reason, unreasonable, 2 ἀπαλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15 ἁμενος, -ης, -ον: well-pleased, glad, 4 γελοιος, -α, -ον: laughable, ridiculous, 2 γυνη, γυναικος, ἡ: a woman, wife, 6 διαβάλλω: pass over, attack, slander (dat) 2 ἐκά-σε: thither, to that place, 10 ἐκὼ, ἐκοῦσα, ἐκόν: willing, intentionally, 3 ἐλπίς, ἐλος, ἡ: hope, expectation, 9 ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for, 10 ἐραω: to love, to be in love with (+ gen.) 4

2 τοῦ τεθνάναι: being dead; articular inf. the pf. θυησκω denotes a state not action ζην: inf. ζαω καπειτα: καὶ ἐπειτα ἥκοντοσ…τοῦτον: this coming to him; i.e. death, gen. abs., ppfl ἡκω
3 πῶς δ᾽ οὖ: how (could it) not
4 τῷ ὄντι: really, actually; adverbial
5 ἀποθυησκειν: dying; complementary inf., the pres. inf. suggests an ongoing process of dying; compare to line 2 above τὸ τεθνάναι (ἐστιν): subject, add verb ἥκιστα: superlative adv.
6 ἀνθρωπον: partitive gen. with ἥκιστα σκόπει: σκόπε-ε; sg. imperative διαβεβληται: 3rd pl. pf. mid. διαβάλλω
8 τοῦτον γεγομένου: gen. abs., i.e death 9 ἐλ…φοβοίντα καὶ ἄγανακτεῖν, ἃ…ἐν εἰη: if

ἡκιστος, -ης, -ον: least; not at all, 3 ἡκω: to have come, be present, 14 μελετάω: to care for, practice, study, 5 παιδικα, τα: beloved, (boy, obj. of lover) 2 παντα-χη: everywhere, in every way, 3 συν-ειμι: to be with, associate with (dat.), 4 τυχακανω: chance upon, meet, get; happen, 51 υος (υος), ο: son, 2 φιλο-σοφεω: seek knowledge, philosophize, 6 φοβερος: -α, -ον: fearful, terrifying, dreadful 1 φοβεω: to terrify, frighten; mid. fear, 15 φρονησις, -εως, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, 15

they should…it would…; fut. less vivid condition (i.e. opt., ἐν + opt.); opt. εἰμι εἰ μη…οἰεν: if they should not …; 3rd pl. opt. ἔρχομαι in same less vivid condition 68α1 ὅ: to where…; relative adv. ἀφικομένοις: (for those) when arriving; i.e. philosophers, dat. of possession ου: which; relative, partitive gen. + τυχειν δια βίου: throughout life 2 ἢρων: ἢρα-ον; 3ρ ἐπιράω ὃ τε διαβεβλητω: and…which they had slandered; ppfl. mid.; τοῦτο is antecedent 3 ἀπηλλάκθαι:… to be released from this associating with them; i.e. from the body; pf. pass + separation, governed by ἐλπις ἐστιν; compare the use of ἐλπις in 67b5ff. 4 ἀνθρωπον…ἀποθανωντων: gen. abs.
$\text{ἐθέλησαν εἰς Ἀιδοῦ μετελθεῖν, ὑπὸ ταύτης ἀγόμενοι τῆς ἐλπίδος, τῆς τοῦ ὁψεσθαί τε ἐκεῖ ὃν ἐπεθύμουν καὶ συνεσθαί: φρονήσεως δὲ ἄρα τις τῷ ὄντι ἔρων, καὶ λαβῶν σφόδρα τὴν αὐτῆν ταύτην ἐλπίδα, μηδαμοῦ ἄλλοθι ἐντεύξεσθαι αὐτῇ.}$

$\text{ἄξιως λόγου ἦ ἐν Ἀιδοῦ, ἀγανακτήσει τε ἀποθήκης καὶ οὐχ ἄσμενος ἠλών αὐτός; οἰεσθαί γε χρή, ἐὰν τῷ ὄντι γε ἦ, ὁ ἐταῖρε, φιλόσοφος: σφόδρα γὰρ αὐτῶ ταύτα δόξη, μηδαμοῦ ἄλλοθι καθαρώς ἐντεύξεσθαι ἄλλη ἦ ἐκεῖ.}$

$\text{εἰ δὲ τοῦτο ὀúτως ἔχει, ὀπερ ἄρτι ἔλεγον, οὐ πολλὴ ἃν ἀλογία εἶπ ἐγεῖ φοβοῖτο τὸν θάνατον ὁ τοιοῦτος; πολλὴ μέντοι νὴ Δία, δ' ὤς.}$

οὐκοῦν ἰκανὸν σοι τεκμήριον, ἐφη, τοῦτο ἀνδρός, ὅν

---

άγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12
ἄγω: to lead, to bring, to carry, to convey, 12
Ἄδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
ἄλλο-θε: in another place, elsewhere, 7
ἀ-λογία, ἦ: without reason, unreasonable, 2
ἄξιος, -α, -ω: worthy of, deserving of (gen)15
ἄρτι: just, exactly, 4
ἀσμενος, -η, -ω: well-pleased, glad, 4
ἀ-τέ-σε: to the very place, 1
ἀθέλο: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἐ-πι: there, in that place, 17
ἐ-πίς, -ιδος, ἦ: hope, expectation, 9
ἐ-τυγχάνω: to chance upon, encounter, 5

$\text{εἰς Ἀιδοῦ: into (the house) of Hades}$

μετελθεῖν: aor. μετέρχομαι

$\text{ὕπο: because of...; gen. of cause}$

τῆς τοῦ ὁψεσθαί...συνεσθαί: (namely) the hope of...; articulate ins., fut. dep. ὄρασεν and fut. dep. σύν-ειμ, in attributive position

$\text{ὁ: (those) whom...; i.e. those having died, the missing antecedent is obj. of both ins.}$

τῷ δόντι: really, actually; adverbial ἔρως: nom. sg. pres. pple ἔρασα + gen.

$\text{καὶ: same}$

μηδαμοῦ...ἐντεύξεσθαί: that (he) will encounter + dat.; ind. disc. with fut. inf. (ἐν-τυγχάνω) often follows ἐλθεῖσι

$\text{ἄξιως λόγου: worthy of mention}$

ἐ-τυμέω: to desire, long for (gen.) 10
ἔρασε: to love, to be in love with, 4
ἔταιρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11
Zeús, ὁ: Zeus, 11
μετ-ἔρχομαι: to come after, come next, 2
μηδαμοῦ: nowhere, 2
νῆ: by...(+ acc, invoking a god), 14
σύν-ειμ: to be with, associate with (dat.), 4
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
tεκμήριον, τό: sign, indication, proof, 5
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἦ: pursuer of wisdom, 18
φοβεῖο: to terrify, frighten; mid. fear, 15
φρόνησις, -εως, ἦ: intelligence, wisdom, 15

$\text{ᾖ: than}$

ἐν Ἀιδοῦ: in (the house) of Hades

$\text{ἐλευ: 3s fut. ἔρχομαι (εἴμι)}$

οἴεσθαι γε χρῆ: yes...; in affirmative reply

τῷ δόντι: ὑπὲρ γε: really indeed; intensive

$\text{ἂ: 3s pres. subj. εἴμι}$

δόξῃ: will seem good

μηδαμοῦ...ἐντεύξεσθαί: that (he) will encounter + dat.; ind. disc. with fut. inf. governed by δόξῃ, compare to line a8

$\text{οὐτώς ἔχει: is so; see p. 7}$

$\text{ἄν...ἔτι, ἐφ᾽ χορδῆται: would be, if...should... }$

future less vivid condition, opt. εἴμι

$\text{νὴ Δία: by Zeus; acc. of Zeús}$

$\text{τεκμήριον τοῦτο: is this sufficient proof...?}$
ἄν ἰδῆς ἀγανακτοῦντα μέλλοντα ἀποθανεῖσθαι, ὅτι οὐκ ἄρ' ἢν φιλόσοφος ἀλλὰ τις φιλοσώματος; ὁ αὐτὸς δὲ που ε ὁστός τυγχάνει ὁν καὶ φιλοχρήματος καὶ φιλότιμος, ἦτοι τὰ ἐτέρα τούτων ἢ ἀμφότερα.

πάνω, ἕφη, ἔχει οὕτως ὡς λέγεις.

ἀρ' οὖν, ἕφη, ὃς Συμμία, οὐ καὶ ἡ ὀνομαζομένη ἀνδρεία τοῖς οὕτως διακεμένοις μάλιστα προσήκει;

πάντως δήπος, ἕφη.

οὐκοῦν καὶ ἡ σωφροσύνη, ἢν καὶ οἱ πολλοὶ ὀνομαζομένοι σωφροσύνην, τὸ περὶ τάς ἐπιθυμίας μὴ ἐπτοήσθαι ἀλλ' ὀλγώρως ἔχειν καὶ κοιμώς, ἀρ' οὐ τούτως μόνος προσήκει,

tοῖς μάλιστα τοῦ σώματος ὀλγώρουσίν τε καὶ ἐν φιλοσοφίᾳ ἥδωσιν;

ἀγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12 ἀμφότερος, -ας, -ov: each of two, both, 5 ἀνδρεία, ἡ: courage, manliness, bravery. 5 δή-πος: of course; perhaps, I suppose, 8 διά-κειμαι: to be disposed, be affected, 3 ἐπιθυμία, ἡ: desire, longing, yearning, 10 ἦτοι: now surely, truly, 4 κόσμος, -ης, -ov: well-ordered, regular, 4 μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19 ὀλγωρέω: esteem little, take no account of (gen), 1

8 ἀνδρός...ὅτι...ἦν: that the man was...; 'of the man that...was,' proleptic use of ἀνδρός, which is the proper subject of ἦν, impf. οὐὶ ὅν ἡ ἄληθη: whomever...; ἓν + aor. subj. εἶδον in an indefinite relative clause,

9 μέλλοντα ἀποθανεῖσθαι: (because he was) going to...; pple governs a fut. inf. and is causal in sense: it explains ἀγανακτοῦντα ἄρα ἦν: the man was not, it turns out; ἄρα + impf. (here, εἰ) is used for a truth just realized, otherwise know as the ἄρα of enlightenment (GP 36-37)

1 ὁ αὐτός: the same man
2 τυγχανεῖ διόν: pple εἰ, see p. 20 ἦτοι...ἦν: either, ya know,...or...; ἦτοι is used instead of ἦ to indicate that the first of the two terms is more probable
tὰ ἐτέρα: one
3 ἔχει οὕτως: is so; see p. 7 ἄρ(α)...οὖ: is not...?; anticipating a 'yes'
5 ὀνομαζομένη: so-named, so-called
6 τοῖς...διακεμένοις: to/for those being so disposed; i.e. philosophers, pres. mid. pple
8 καὶ: also; adverbial
σωφροσύνη (ἔστιν): temperance (is)
καὶ οἱ πολλοὶ: even the masses; i.e. the general population
9 τὸ...μὴ ἐπτοήσθαι: not to be...; articular inf. is the predicate; pf. pass. inf. πτοέω
10 ἔχειν: + adv, see p. 7
11 τοῖς...ολγώρουσι...ζῶσιν: those...and; dat. pl. pple ὀλγώρεω and ζῶω
δ' ἀνάγκη, ἔφη.
εἴ γὰρ ἐθέλεις, ἢ δ' ὅσ, ἐννοῆσαι τὴν γε τῶν ἄλλων ἀνδρείαν τε καὶ σωφροσύνην, δόξει σοι ἐναι ἀτοπος.
πῶς δή, ὦ Σώκρατες;

οἶθα, ἢ δ' ὅσ, ὥστε τὸν θάνατον ἥγουνται πάντες οἱ ἄλλοι τῶν μεγάλων κακῶν;
καὶ μαλ', ἔφη.
οὐκόνον φόβῳ μειζόνων κακῶν ὑπομένουσιν αὐτῶν οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι τὸν θάνατον, ὅταν ὑπομένωσιν;

ἔστιν ταῦτα.
τῷ δεδιέναι ἡμα καὶ δείει ἀνδρεῖοι εἰσι πάντες πλην οἱ φιλόσοφοι καίτοι ἀλογὸν γε δείει τινὰ καὶ δείλα ἀνδρεῖον εἴναι.

---

ἄλογος, -οῦ: without reason or speech, 3
ἀνδρεία, ἡ: manliness, bravery, courage, 5
ἀνδρείας, -ας, -αοῦ: brave, courageous, manly, 4
ἀ-τοπος, -ου: strange, odd, extraordinary, 9
δείδω: fear, dread, shrink from, feel awe, 11
deilia, ἡ: cowardice, 1
déos, déeos τό: fear, dread, 4
ehelwo: to be willing, wish, desire, 17

ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
καῖτοι: and yet, and indeed, and further, 8
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
πλην: except, but (+ gen.), 7
σωφροσύνη, ἡ: temperence, prudence, 8
ὑπο-μένω: to abide, stay firm; endure, 8
φόβος, ὦ: fear, terror, panic, 10

αὐτῶν: among them; partitive gen.

9 ὑπομένων: 3p subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
10 ἔστι: are the case; i.e. are true
11 τῷ δεδιέναι: because of being afraid; dat. of cause, an articular inf., the pf. δείδω denotes a state rather than a single action (τῷ) δείει: because of...; dat. of cause δείος εἰσι: 3p pres. eimi
12 ἀλογὸν (ἔστι): it is...; impersonal
δείει...δείλα: because of...; dat. of cause
πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

τί δὲ οἱ κόσμοι αὐτῶν; οὐ ταῦτα τούτο πεπόνθασιν· ἀκολασίᾳ τυλὶ σώφρονες εἰσιν; καίτοι φαμέν γε ἀδύνατον εἶναι, ἀλλ' ὡμις αὐτοῖς συμβαίνει τοῦτω ὁμοιον τὸ πάθος τὸ περὶ ταύτην τὴν εὐθηνα σωφροσύνην· φοβοῦμενοι γὰρ ἐτέρων ἑδονῶν στερηθῆναι καὶ ἐπιθυμοῦντες ἐκείνων, ἀλλων ἀπέχονται ὑπ᾽ ἄλλων κρατοῦμενοι. καίτοι καλοῦσι γε ἀκολασίαν τὸ ὑπὸ τῶν ἑδονῶν ἄρχεσθαι, ἀλλ' ὡμις συμβαίνει αὐτοῖς κρατομένους υφ' ἑδονῶν κρατεῖν ἄλλων ἑδονῶν. τοῦτο δ' ὡμιῶν ἐστιν ὧν νυνὶ ἐλέγετο, τῷ τρόπον τινᾶ δ' ἀκολασίαν αὐτοὺς σεσωφρονίσθαι.

ἔοικε γάρ.

α-δύνατος, -ον: unable, incapable, impossible, 6
ἀ-κολασία, ἡ: licentiousness, intemperance, 3
ἀπήχω: to be distant, keep away from, 5
ἀρχό: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 12
ἐπιθυμέω: to desire, long for (gen.) 10
εὐ-ήθης, ες: foolish, simple-natured, silly, 3
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
καίτω: and yet, and indeed, and further, 8
κόσμος, -ης, -ον: well-ordered, regular, 4
κράτεω: to control, be strong, prevail, 3

1 πάνυ μὲν οὖν: quite certainly indeed; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
2 τι δὲ: what about...
   αὐτῶν: among them; partitive gen.
   ταῦτα: the same; τὸ αὐτὸν
   πεπόνθαι: 3p pf. πάσχω
3 ἀκολασία τυλ.: because of...; dat. of cause
eἰσιν: 3p pres. εἰμί
καίτω...γε: and yet...of course; γε emphasizes the intervening word; 3p φημι
dιάνυστον εἴην: that it is...; ind. disc. is here impersonal, διάνυστον is neut. sg.
4 αὐτοῖς: for them; dat. of interest
tοῦτω διόμοιον: similar (result) to this; inner acc. governs a dat., τοῦτω refers to the statement beginning with φοβοῦμενοι
   τὸ πάθος...σωφροσύνην: their experience regarding this simple-minded temperance; subject of συμβαίνει; περί...σωφροσύνην
νῦν-δή: just now, 15
ἀ-μως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
πάθος -εος τό: experience incident passion 11
στερεῶ: to deprive from, rob, defraud, 5
συμ-βαίνω: to happen, occur, result, 8
σωφρονίζω: to moderate, make temperate 1
σωφροσύνη, ἡ: temperence, prudence, 8
σώφρων, -οντος: temperate, moderate, 1
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17
φοβέω: to terrify, frighten; mid. fear, 15

in the attributive position; εὐθῆς is acc. sg.
5 ἐτέρων ἑδονῶν: from...; gen. separation
6 στερηθῆναι: aor. pass. inf. στερέω
   ἄλλων...ὑπ᾽ ἄλλων: from some things... because of other things; gen. of separation and gen. of cause
7 καίτω...γε: see line 3 above
καλοῦσι: they call (x) (y); governs a double accusative
69α1 τό...ἄρχεσθαι: articular inf., pass. inf.
   ύπό: by...; gen. agent
συμβαίνει: it happens for...; impersonal
2 κρατουμένοις: (since) being...; causal
3 δ: to (that) which...; following ὁμιον
   τῷ...σεσωφρονίσθαι: (namely) that they are being temperate; articular pf. inf. in apposition to the dative object of ὁμιον
   τρόπον τινᾶ: in some way; adv. acc.
5 ἔοικε γάρ: (yes) for it seems so
The Philosopher and Death

6 μακάριε Σιμία, μὴ γὰρ οὖχ αὕτη ἢ ἢ ὀρθὴ πρὸς ἀρετὴν ἄλλαγῇ, ἡδονὰς πρὸς ἡδονὰς καὶ λύπας πρὸς λύπας καὶ φῶς πρὸς φῶς καταλλάττεσθαι, καὶ μείζω πρὸς ἑλάττω ἄσσερ νομίσματα, ἀλλ’ ἢ ἐκεῖνο μόνον τὸ νόμισμα ὀρθὸν, ἀντὶ οὖ δεὶ πάντα ταύτα καταλλάττεσθαι, φρονήσις,

b καὶ τοῦτον μὲν πάντα καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον ὄνομεν τε καὶ πιπράσκομεν τῷ ὄντι ἢ καὶ ἀνδρεία καὶ σωφροσύνη καὶ δικαιοσύνη καὶ συλλήβδην ἀληθῆ ἄρετη, μετὰ φρονήσεως, καὶ προσγιγνομένων καὶ ἀπογιγνομένων καὶ ἡδονῶν καὶ φῶς καὶ τῶν ἄλλων πάντων τῶν τοιούτων χωρίζομεν δὲ φρονήσεως καὶ ἄλλαττόμενα ἀντὶ ἄλληλων μὴ σκιαγραφία τις ἢ τοιαύτη ἄρετή καὶ τῷ ὄντι ἀνδραποδόδης τε

6 μακάριος, -ά, -ου: blessed, happy, 1
νόμισμα, τό: coin; else custom, institution, 2
πιπράσκω: to sell, 1
προσ-γίγνομαι: to come to, or in addition, 4
σκια-γραφία, ἡ: scene-painting, 1
σωφροσύνη: temperence, prudence, 8
φόβος, ὁ: fear, terror, panic, 10
φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, 15
χωρίζω: to separate, sever, divide, 3
ὡνόμα: to buy, purchase, 1

exchange; relative pronoun gen. sg.

b1 τοῦτο...καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο: for this (price) and with this; gen. of value and accompaniment
πάντα...τε καί: all things both...and...; neut. pl. subject of 3s verb
τῷ...ὅτι: really, actually; adv.
ἣ: is...; 3rd sg. subj. eiμὶ in the same doubtful assertion/negative from line 6
προσγιγνομένων...τοιούτων: while...; gen. of absolute
χωρίζομεν δὲ: but (all things) being separated from...; + gen. of separation
ἀντί: for...; ‘in return for...’
μή...ῄ: perhaps...is; doubtful assertion (note μὴ οὖ + subj. is doubtful negation)
τῷ...ὅτι: really, actually; adv.
καὶ οὐδὲν ὑγίες οὖδʼ ἀληθές ἔχει, τὸ δὲ ἀληθὲς τῷ ὁντὶ ἐκάθαρσις τις τῶν τοιούτων πάντων καὶ ᾑσσφροσύνη καὶ ἐδυνασία καὶ ἀνδρεία, καὶ αὐτὴ ἡ φρόνησις μὴ καθαιρόμεν ἐσι. καὶ κυνῳδούσι καὶ οἱ τὰς τελετὰς ἡμῶν οὖν καταστήσαντες οὐ φαύλοι τινος εἶναι, ἀλλὰ τῷ ὁντὶ πάλαι αἰνίττεσθαι ὅτι ὃς ἂν ἀμύθος καὶ ἀτέλεστος εἰς 'Αἰδον ἀφίκηστα ἐν θυρείρω κείσεται, ὁ δὲ κεκαθαρμένος τε καὶ τετελεσμένος ἐκείσε ἀφικόμενος μετὰ θεῶν οἴκησε. εἰσώ γὰρ δή, ὡς φασι οἱ περὶ τὰς τελετὰς, 'ναρθηκοφόροι μὲν πολλοί, βάχοι δὲ τε παῦροι' οὖν δὲ εἰσὼν κατὰ τὴν ἄμην δόξαν οὐκ ἄλλοι ἂν οἱ πεφιλοσοφηκότες ὄρβῶς. ὃν δή καὶ ἐγὼ κατά γε τὸ δυνατόν οὐδὲν ἀπέλιπον ἐν τῷ βίῳ.
ἀλλὰ παντὶ τρόπῳ προσθυμήθην γενέσθαι· εἰ δ’ ὀρθῶς προσθυμήθην καὶ τι ήνύσαμεν, ἐκεῖσε ἐλθόντες τὸ σαφὲς εἰσόμεθα, ἂν θεὸς ἔθηλη, ὅλγον ὑστερον, ὡς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ. ταῦτ’ οὖν ἕγγ., ἐφ’, ὁ Συμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, ἀπολογοῦμαι, ὡς εἰκότως ὑμᾶς τε ἀπολείπον καὶ τοὺς ἐνθάδε δεσπότας οὖν χαλεπῶς φέρω οὐδ’ ἀγανακτῶ, ἡγούμενος κάκει οὐδὲν ἤττον ἢ ἐνθάδε δεσπότας τε ἄγαθοῖς ἐντεύξεσθαι καὶ ἑταῖροις· τοῖς δὲ πολλοῖς ἀπιστίαν παρέχει· εἰ τι οὖν ὑμῖν πῖθανωτέρος εἰμι ἐν τῇ ἀπολογίᾳ ή τοῖς Ἀθηναίων δικασταῖς, εὐ ἂν ἐχοί.

eἰπόντος δὴ τοῦ Σωκράτους ταῦτα, ὑπολαβὼν ὁ Κέβης ἐφ’ ὁ Σώκρατες, τὰ μὲν ἀλλὰ ἐμοιγε δοκεῖ καλῶς λέγεσθαι,
τὰ δὲ περὶ τῆς ψυχῆς πολλῆν ἀπιστίαν παρέχει τοῖς ἄνθρωποις μὴ, ἐπειδὰν ἀπαλλαγῇ τοῦ σῶματος, οὐδαμοῦ ἐτι ἦ, ἀλλ’ ἐκείνη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ διαφθείρηται καὶ ἀπολλύεται ἦ ἄν ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἀποθνῄσκῃ, εὖθὺς ἀπαλλαττομένη τοῦ σῶματος, καὶ ἐκβαίνονσα ὥστερ πνεῦμα ἦ καπνὸς διασκεδασθείσα ὀξύτατα διαπτομένη καὶ οὐδὲν ἦ τοῦ οὐδαμοῦ ἦ, ἐπεὶ, ἐξερ θα τοῦ αὐτῆς καθ’ αὐτῆς, ἰσχυρομενή καὶ ἀπηλλαγμένη τούτων τῶν κακῶν ὅπως σὺ νεώς διήλθες, πολλῇ ἦν εἰς ἔλπις καὶ καλῇ, ὅ Σῶκρατες, ὡς ἀληθῆ ἦστιν ἃ σῦ λέγεις ἀλλὰ τοῦτο δὴ ἴσως οὐκ ὀλίγης παραμυθίας ἔσται καὶ πίστεως, ὡς ἦστι τε ψυχὴ ἀποθανόντος τοῦ ἄνθρώπου καὶ τω δύναμιν ἔχει καὶ φρόνησιν.

70a1 τὰ δὲ περὶ ...: the matters concerning...; neuter pl. subject of 3s verb ἰπαρέχει: brings about τοῖς ἄνθρωποις: dat. of interest μὴ...: lest...the (soul) is...; fearing clause, μὴ + subj. (3s εἰμι), following ἀπιστίαν ἀπαλλαγῇ: 3s pres. subj., in an indefinite temporal clause οὐδαμοῦ ἦ: no longer anywhere ἐκείνῳ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ: on...; time when γιν: on whatever (day); indefinite relative clause (γιν + subj.), here, dat. of time when διακεκολομήθησα: nom. sg. aor. pass. pple ὀξυτάται: has gone; pf. in sense, as often, here with a complementary pple ἡμέρα, ἦ: day, 7 ἰσος: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19 καπνός, ὅ: smoke, 1 νῦν-δῆ: just now, 15 οἴχουμαι: to go, go off, depart, 14 ὀλίγος,-ης,-ον: few, little, small, 15 οὐδαμοῦ: nowhere, 5 παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16 παραμυθία, ἦ: encouragement, persuasion, 1 πίστις, -εως ὃ: trust, loyalty; pledge, proof 1 πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: breath, wind, blast, 5 συν-αθροίζω: gather together, assemble, 2 φρόνησις, -εως, ἦ: intelligence, wisdom, 15 εἶτο οὐδαμοῦ: no longer anywhere ἦ: is; subj. εἰμι, same fearing clause ἐπεὶ, ἐπερ θα ποι: (I say thing) since, if (the soul) should be somewhere...; opt. εἰμι, protasis in a fut. less vivid condition αὐτή καθ’ (ἐ)αυτήν: itself by itself 7 συνηθροισμένη, ἀπηλλαγμένη: pf. pass. τῶν...κακῶν: from...; gen. of separation 8 ὅν: which...; gen. obj. of aor. δι-ἐρχομαι τυο...κακόν: this very thing, precisely this 2 οὐκ ὀλίγης...πίστεως: no little persuasion and proof; i.e. a lot, gen. of separation ὡς ἦστι...ψυχή: namely that the soul exists ἀποθανόντος...: gen. absolute
Argument from Opposites

5 ἀλήθη, ἐφι, λέγεις, ὁ Σωκράτης, ὁ Κέβης: ἀλλὰ τὶ δὴ ποιῶμεν; ἢ περὶ αὐτῶν τούτων βούλει διαμυθολογῶμεν, εἰτε εἰκὸς οὕτως ἐξειν εἰτε μὴ;

ἐγὼ γοῦν, ἐφί ὁ Κέβης, ἦδεως ἂν ἀκούσαμι ἤντινα δόξαν ἐξειν περὶ αὐτῶν.

οὐκόν γ´ ἂν οἴμαι, ἢ δ´ ὃς ὁ Σωκράτης, εἴπειν τινα νῦν ἀκούσαντα, οὐδ´ εἰ καμωδοποίος εἶτη, ὡς ἀδολεσχώ καὶ οὐ περὶ προσηκόντων τοὺς λόγους ποιοῦμαι. εἰ οὖν δοκεῖ, χρὴ διασκοπεῖσθαι.

σκεφτόμεθα δὲ αὐτὸ τῇ δὲ πη, εἰτε ἄρα ἐν Ἁιδοῦ εἰσίν αἱ ψυχαὶ τελευτήσαντων τῶν ἀνθρώπων εἰτε καὶ οὐ. παλαιὸς μὲν οὖν ἐστι τις λόγος οὗ μεμνήμεθα, ὡς εἰσίν ἐνθένδε

48
ἀφικόμεναι ἐκεῖ, καὶ πάλιν γε δεύρο ἀφικνοῦνται καὶ γιγνονται ἐκ τῶν τεθνεῶτων· καὶ εἰ τούθ' οὔτως ἔχει, πάλιν γίγνεσθαι ἐκ τῶν ἀποθανόντων τούς ζῴντας, ἄλλο τι ἢ ἔλευ ἂν τις ψυχαὶ ἡμῶν ἐκεῖ; οὐ γὰρ ἂν ποὺ πάλιν ἐγίγνοντο μὴ ἄνσαι, καὶ τοῦτο ἵκανὸν τεκμήριον τοῦ ταύτ' εἶναι, εἰ τῷ ὑντὶ φανερὸν γίγνοιτο ὅτι οὐδαμόθεν ἄλλοθεν γίγνονται οἱ ζῴντες ἢ ἐκ τῶν τεθνεῶτων· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἔστι τοῦτο, ἄλλον ἂν του δεοί λόγου.

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἐφή ὁ Κέβης.

μὴ τοῖς κατ' ἀνθρώπων, ἢ δ' ὡς, σκοπεῖ µόνον τοῦτο, εἰ βούλει ῥάνον μαθεῖν, ἀλλὰ καὶ κατὰ ζώων πάντων καὶ φυτῶν, καὶ συλλήβδην ὄσαπερ ἔχει γένεσιν περὶ πάντων

ἀλλο-θεν: from another place or elsewhere, 6
γένεσις, -εώς, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
deύρο: here, to this point, hither, 7
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ζῷον, τό: a living being, animal, 6
μαθάνω: to learn, understand, 12
δοσσαπερ, -α, -ον: as many as, who, 1

7 καὶ πάλιν γε: and again; καί...γε emphasizes the intervening word
γίγνομαι: are born
8 τεθνεῶτων: pf. pple θνήσκω
tοῦτο: τοῦτο
οὔτως ἔχει: see p. 7
9 ἀποθανόντων: aor. pple, ἀπο-θνήσκω
ἄλλο τι ἢ: (is it) anything other than...; anticipating a yes response
ἐλευ ἄν: 3p pres. potential opt. εἰμί
d1 ἄν...ἐγίγνοντο: would be born; ἄν + impf. is present ( unrealized) potential
ποι: I suppose
μὴ οὔσαι: if not existing; fem. pl. pple εἰμί modifying understood subject ψυχαί; conditional in sense (hence μὴ, not οὖ)
2 τοῦτο (ἂν εἴναι): this would be...
tοῦ...ἐνια: of these things being the case;

οὐδαμό-θεν: from no place, from nowhere, 1
ῥάνον: more easily, 2
συλλήβδην: collectively, in sum, in short, 2
tεκμήριον, τό: sign, indication, proof, 5
φανερός, -ά, -όν: visible, manifest, evident, 1
φυτόν, τό: a plant, tree, 1

i.e. are true, articular inf.

τῷ ὑντὶ: really, actually

3 φανερόν γίγνοιτο: it should become clear that...; impersonal opt., protasis in a fut. less vivid condition

4 ἔστι: is the case

5 ἄν...δέοι: there would be need...; + gen.

6 πάνυ μὲν οὖν: quite certainly indeed; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent

7 μὴ...σκόπει: don’t...; σκόπε-ε, imperative

κατὰ ἀνθρώπων: in regard to humans

8 βουλεῖ: 2s pres. mid., βουλέω(σ)αί

ῥάνον: comparative adverb ἐν-νοεῖν

8 μαθεῖν: aor. inf. μανθάνομαι

κατὰ...: with regard to...

ἐχεί: 3s governing a neuter pl. subject
Argument from Opposites

e ἵδωμεν ἄρ' οὖτως γίγνεται πάντα, οὐκ ἀλλοθεν ἦ ἕκ τῶν ἑναντίων τὰ ἑναντία, ὅσοις τυχάνει δι τοιούτοις τι, οἴνον τὸ καλὸν τῷ ἄισχρῷ ἑναντίον που καὶ δίκαιον ἄδικω, καὶ ἄλλα δὴ μυρία οὕτως ἔχει. τούτο οὖν σκεψόμεθα, ἃρα ἄναγκαιον ὅσοις ἐστὶ τι ἑναντίον, μηδαμόθεν ἀλλοθεν αὐτὸ γίγνεσθαι ἦ ἕκ τοῦ αὐτῷ ἑναντίον. οἴνον ὅταν μεῖζον τι γίγνηται, ἀνάγκη που ἐξ ἑλάττονος ὄντος πρῶτον ἔπειτα μεῖζον γίγνεσθαι;

ναὶ.

οὐκοὶν κἂν ἑλάττων γίγνηται, ἐκ μεῖζονος ὄντος πρῶτον ὅσοις ἐστὶν οὕτως, ἕφη.

---

Philosophical Vocabulary: Plato often employs substantives (article + neuter adj.) to depict forms and abstract qualities. Scholars preserve the substantive in translation, e.g., ‘the beautiful,’ and often avoid translating a substantive as an abstract noun, e.g., ‘beauty.’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ἀ-δικος, -ov</td>
<td>unrighteous, unjust</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>αἰσχρός -ά -ων</td>
<td>ugly, shameful, disgraceful</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἀλλ-θεν</td>
<td>from another place or elsewhere</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δίκαιος, -α, -ον</td>
<td>just, right(eous), fair</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μηδαμ-θεν</td>
<td>from no place, from nowhere</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>οὐ: let us;...; ( GP 254)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>οὗτως ἢ: are so; see p. 7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>σκεψομεθα:</td>
<td>hortatory aor. subj.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἰδίου</td>
<td>introducing ind. question</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>οὗτος-λ:</td>
<td>deictic iota can be expressed by adding ‘here’: ‘in this here way’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐκ τῶν ἑναντίων τὰ ἑναντία:</td>
<td>opposites</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὅσοι...τοιούτου τι:</td>
<td>to what a certain sort</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>το: happens to be</td>
<td>dat. of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὅσοι: for example;</td>
<td>in respect to such, acc. of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὅσοι: a substantive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>τὸ καλὸν:</td>
<td>the beautiful; or ‘beauty,’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>τὸ αἰσχρῷ:</td>
<td>to the ugly; or ‘ugliness,’ dat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(τὸ) δίκαιον (τὸ) ἄδικο:</td>
<td>the just (opposite)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the unjust; substantives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>καὶ...δὴ: and indeed...; similar to καὶ...γε</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μπροτερο, -α, -ον: later, last; adv. later</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>οὔτως ἢ: are so; see p. 7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>σκεψομεθα:</td>
<td>hortatory aor. subj.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἰδίου</td>
<td>introducing ind. question</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>οὗτος-λ:</td>
<td>deictic iota can be expressed by adding ‘here’: ‘in this here way’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐκ τῶν ἑναντίων τὰ ἑναντία:</td>
<td>opposites</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὅσοι...τοιούτου τι:</td>
<td>to what a certain sort</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>το: happens to be</td>
<td>dat. of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὅσοι: for example;</td>
<td>in respect to such, acc. of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὅσοι: a substantive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>τὸ καλὸν:</td>
<td>the beautiful; or ‘beauty,’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>τὸ αἰσχρῷ:</td>
<td>to the ugly; or ‘ugliness,’ dat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(τὸ) δίκαιον (τὸ) ἄδικο:</td>
<td>the just (opposite)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the unjust; substantives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>καὶ...δὴ: and indeed...; similar to καὶ...γε</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

50
καὶ μὴν ἐξ ἰσχυροτέρου γε τὸ ἀθενέστερον καὶ ἐκ βρα- 
δυτέρου τὸ θάττον;

πάνυ γε.

τί δὲ; ἂν τι χείρον γίγνηται, οὐκ εξ ἀμείνονος, καὶ ἂν 
δικαιότερον, ἐξ ἀδικωτέρου;

πῶς γὰρ οὖ; 

ἰκανῶς οὖν, ἐφη, ἔχομεν τούτο, ὅτι πάντα οὕτω γίγνεται, 
ἐξ ἑναντίων τὰ ἑναντία πράγματα;

πάνυ γε.

τί δ’ αὖ; ἢστι τι καὶ τοιόνδε ἐν αὐτοῖς, οἷον μεταξὺ 
ἀμφοτέρων πάντων τῶν ἑναντίων δυο ὤντων δύο γενέσεις, 
ἀπὸ μὲν τοῦ ἑτέρου ἐπὶ τὸ ἑτέρον, ἀπὸ δ’ αὖ τοῦ ἑτέρου b

---

δίκαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
θάττων, θάττων: faster, quicker, swifter, 1
ἰσχυρός, -ά, -ὸν: strong, powerful; severe, 5
μεταξὺ: between, betwixt, 6
πράγμα, -ατος τὸ: deed, act, matter, affair 18
χείρων, -ου, -ουτος): worse, inferior, 5

δικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust, 6
ἀμείνων, -ον (-ονος): better, 10
ἀμφοτέρος, -ά, -ον: each of two, both, pair, 5
ἀ-σθενης, -ης: without strength, weak, feeble 3
βραδύς, -εύ, -η: slow, 2
γένεσις, -εως, η: coming-to-be, generation, 16

καὶ μὴν...γε: and indeed...in fact;

introduces a new argument of greater importance (GP 351-2); γε is emphatic

πάνυ γε: quite indeed; common affirmative

τί δὲ: What (then)?: as often, introducing another question

ὁν...γίγνηται: if...; ἐὰν + subj.
καὶ ἂν (γίγνηται): and if...; ἐὰν, supply verb

πῶς γὰρ οὖ: how (could it) not; lit. ‘(yes), for how could it not’

ἰκανῶς...ἔχομεν τούτω: we have this (fact) sufficiently; or ‘we know this sufficiently’

---

3 καὶ μὴν...γε: and indeed...in fact;

introduces a new argument of greater importance (GP 351-2); γε is emphatic

5 πάνυ γε: quite indeed; common affirmative

τί δὲ: What (then)?: as often, introducing another question

6 ἃν...γίγνηται: if...; ἐὰν + subj.
καὶ ἂν (γίγνηται): and if...; ἐὰν, supply verb

8 πῶς γὰρ οὖ: how (could it) not; lit. ‘(yes), for how could it not’

9 ἰκανῶς...ἔχομεν τούτω: we have this (fact) sufficiently; or ‘we know this sufficiently’

δικαίος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
θάττων, θάττων: faster, quicker, swifter, 1
ἰσχυρός, -ά, -ὸν: strong, powerful; severe, 5
μεταξὺ: between, betwixt, 6
πράγμα, -ατος τὸ: deed, act, matter, affair 18
χείρων, -ου, -ουτος): worse, inferior, 5

δικ: (namely) that...

12 τί δ’ αὖ: What in turn?: ‘what again,’ introducing another point

ἔστι τι καὶ τοιόνδε: is there something also of this sort

οἷον: for example; ‘with respect to such,’ acc. of respect;

μεταξὺ ἀμφοτέρων...ἐναντίων: between all these opposites, as pairs

13 δυο...δυτοι: (since) being two; dual gen., pple of εἶναι, causal in sense

b1 ἑτέρον...ἐπὶ...ἐτέρον: from one...to another
πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸ ἑτέρον, μείζονος μὲν πράγματος καὶ ἐλάττονος μεταξὺ αὔξησις καὶ φθίσις, καὶ καλοῦμεν οὔτω τὸ μὲν αὐξάνεσθαι, τὸ δὲ φθίνειν;

ναὶ, ἐφη.

οὐκοῦν καὶ διακρίνεσθαι καὶ συγκρίνεσθαι, καὶ ψύχεσθαι καὶ θερμαίνεσθαι, καὶ πάντα οὔτω, κάν εἰ μὴ χρώμεθα τοῖς ὀνόμασιν ἐνιαχοῦ, ἀλλ᾽ ἐργῷ γοῦν πανταχοῦ οὔτως ἔχειν ἀναγκαῖον, γίγνεσθαι τε αὐτὰ ἐξ ἀλλήλων γένεσιν τε εἶναι ἐκατέρου εἰς ἄλληλα;

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἢ δ᾽ ὅσ.

c τι οὖν; ἐφη, τῷ ζῆν ἐστι τι ἐναντίον, ὡσπερ τῷ ἑγρηγορεῖν τῷ καθεδεύειν;

αὔξάνοι: to increase, augment, 2
αὔξησις, -εως, ἢ: increasing, growth, 1
γένεσις, -εως, ἢ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
γοῦν: γε οὖν, at least, at any rate, any way, 4
δια-κρίνω: separate, distinguish; decide, 2
ἐγέρω: to awaken, arouse, 4
ἐκάτερος, -α, -ον: each of two, either, 5
ἐνιαχοῦ: in some places, 1
ἐργον, τό: work, labor, deed, act, 5
ἐπέρος, -α, -ον: one of two, other, different, 58
θερμαίνω: to make hot; mid. be warm, hot, 2
καθ-εὐδώ: to lie down to sleep, sleep, 5
μεταξύ: between, betwixt, 6
ναὶ: yes, yea, 15
ὀνομα, -ατος, τό: name, 7
παντα-χοῦ: everywhere, in all places, 3
πράγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
συγ-κρίνω: combine, synthesize, compound 2
φθίνω: decrease, waste away, decay, perish, 1
φθίσις, -εως, ἢ: decreasing, wasting away, 1
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11
ψώχω: to make cool or cold; mid. be cold 2

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἢ δ᾽ ὅσ.

θερμαίνω: to make hot; mid. be warm, hot, 2

οὔτως ἔχειν: see pg. 7

aula: that they…; i.e. opposites, acc. subj.

πάνυ μὲν οὖν: quite certainly indeed; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent

c τῷ ζῆν: to living; articular inf. dat. of special adj. ἐναντίον

πάνυ μὲν οὖν: quite certainly indeed; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent

τῷ ἑγρηγορεῖν: to being awake; articular pf. inf. ἑγείρω, the perfect indicates a state not activity

c τῷ καθεδεύειν (ἐναντίον ἐστι): supply verb and predicate from above

2 ἐπὶ: to…
3 μείζονος...ἐλάττονος μεταξὺ: the entire preceding genitive is the object of μεταξὺ καλοῦμεν...τὸ μὲν μὲν αὔξανεσθαι, τὸ δὲ φθίνειν: we call one growing and the other decreasing

6 οὐκοῦν καί...καί: according both…and
7 κάν εἰ: even if…; καί εἰ ἄν + subj. in a present general condition
8 ἐνιαχοῦ: i.e. in each instance
9 πανταχοῦ: i.e. in every instance
11 ἀλλὰ ἐργῷ γοῦν: but in reality at any rate; dat. of respect
9 ἀναγκαίον (ἐστί): (it is) necessary
πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη.
τί;
τὸ τεθνάναι, ἔφη.
οὐκοῦν ἐξ ἀλλήλων τε γίγνεται τάυτα, εἴπερ ἐναντία ἐστιν, καὶ αἱ γενέσεις εἰσὶν αὐτοῖς μεταξὺ δύο δύοιν ὄντων;
πῶς γὰρ οὖν;
τὴν μὲν τοῖνυν ἐτέραν συζυγίαν ὃν νυνὴ ἔλεγον ἐγὼ σοι, ἔφη, ἔρω, ὁ Σωκράτης, καὶ αὐτὴν καὶ τὰς γενέσειςς οὖν δὲ μοι τὴν ἐτέραν. λέγω δὲ τὸ μὲν καθεύδειν, τὸ δὲ ἐγρηγορέων, καὶ ἐκ τοῦ καθεύδειν τὸ ἐγρηγορέων γίγνεσθαι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ἐγρηγορέων τὸ καθεύδειν, καὶ τὰς γενέσειςς αὐτοῖς δὲ τὴν μὲν καταδαρθάνειν εἶναι, τὴν δὲ ἀνεγείρεσθαι. ἰκανῶς σοι, ἔφη, ἣ οὖν;

ἀν-εγείρομαι: to wake up, 2
γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
ἐγείρω: to awaken, arouse, 4
καθ-εὐδῶ: to lie down to sleep, sleep, 5
κατα-δαρθάνω: to fall asleep, 2
μεταξύ: between, betwixt, 6
νυν-δή: just now, 15
συ-ζυγία, ἡ: pair; a yoke of animals; union, 1

3 πάνυ μὲν οὖν: quite certainly indeed; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
5 τὸ τεθνάναι: articular pf. inf. θνῆσκω; again, the pf. denotes a state, ‘being dead,’ rather than an activity ‘having died’
7 ἐστιν: these (two) are; supply ταὐτα as subject
8 πῶς γὰρ οὖν: how (could it) not; lit. ‘(yes), for how could it not’

3 ὃν: (of those) which; τοῦτον ἃ, acc. pl. relative has assimilated the gen. of the missing antecedent
10 ἔρω: ἔρεω, 1s fut. λέγω
καὶ αὐτὴν καὶ...γενέσειςς: both itself and its generations; in apposition to συζυγίαν
σῦ (ἔρεις): 2s fut. ἔρεω
11 λέγω τὸ μὲν...τὸ δὲ: I call the one... and the other...; see 71b3
ἐγρηγορέων: being awake; pf. inf. ἐγείρω
12 τὴν μὲν...εἶναι...τὴν δ’: one (coming to be) is...the other (is)...; ind. discourse
ἰκανῶς (ἐχει): is it sufficient...?; ‘does it hold sufficiently’ supply ἐχει, see p. 7

53
πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

5 λέγε δή μοι καὶ σοῦ, ἔφη, οὕτω περὶ ζωῆς καὶ θανάτου. οὐκ ἐναντίον μὲν φής τῷ ζήν τὸ τεθνάναι εἶναι;

ἔγγε. γίγνεσθαι δὲ εξ ἀλλήλων; ναί.

10 εξ οὖν τοῦ ζῶντος τί τὸ γιγνόμενον; τὸ τεθνηκός, ἔφη.

τί δέ, ἢ δ’ ὃς, ἐκ τοῦ τεθνεῶτος; ἀναγκαῖον, ἔφη, ὁμολογεῖν ὅτι τὸ ζῶν.

ἐκ τῶν τεθνεῶτων ἄρα, ὁ Κέβης, τὰ ζῶντα τε καὶ οἱ ζῶντες γίγνονται;

φαίνεται, ἔφη.

ζωῆ, ἡ: living, way of life, 5

ναί: yes, yea, 15

4 πάνυ μὲν οὖν: quite certainly indeed; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
5 λέγε δή: now tell…; or ‘just tell…’ δή is often an intensive modifying imperatives
6 φής: 2s φημι,
6 τῷ ζήν: articular inf. ζάω, dat. of special adj. ἐναντίον τὸ τεθνάναι: that being dead; acc. subject, articular pf. inf.
10 τοῦ ζῶντος: the living; pple τί: what (is)…; supply linking ἐστὶ τὸ τεθνηκός: the one…; neuter sg. pf. pple θνῄσκω
12 τεθνεῶτος: gen. sg. τεθνηκός ἀναγκαῖον: (it is) necessary…; add verb, ὅτι (ἐστι): that (it is)…; supply verb
14 τὰ ζῶντα…ζῶντες: both living things and living people
εἰσών ἄρα, ἐφη, αἱ ψυχαὶ ἡμῶν ἐν Ἀιδοῦ.
ἐουκεν.
οὐκοῦν καὶ τοῖν γενεσεῶν τοῖν περὶ ταῦτα ἡ γ᾽ ἐτέρα σαφῆς οὔσα τυγχάνει; τὸ γὰρ ἄποθνήσκειν σαφῆς δήτου, ἡ οὖ; πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἐφη.
πῶς οὖν, ἡ δ᾽ ὡς, ποιήσωμεν; οὐκ ἄνταποδώσομεν τὴν ἐναντίαν γένεσιν, ἀλλὰ ταύτην χωλὴ ἔσται ἡ φύσις; ἡ ἀνάγκη ἄποδοῦναι τῷ ἄποθνήσκειν ἐναντίαν τινὰ γένεσιν;
πάντως ποιήσομεν, ἐφη.
tίνα ταύτην; τὸ ἀναβιώσκειν.
οὐκοῦν, ἢ δ’ ὅς, εἴπερ ἔστι τὸ ἀναβιώσκεσθαι, ἐκ τῶν
tεθνεῶτων ἄν εἴη γένεσις εἰς τοὺς ζώντας αὐτῇ, τὸ ἀνα-
βιώσκεσθαι;
πάνι γε.
ὁμολογεῖται ἄρα ἡμῖν καὶ ταύτῃ τοὺς ζώντας ἐκ τῶν
tεθνεῶτων γεγονόναι οὐδὲν ἡττον ἡ τους τεθνεῶτας ἐκ τῶν
ζώντων, τούτων δὲ ὅντος ἰκανὸν ποὺ ἐδόκει τεκμήριον εἶναι
ὅτι ἀναγκαῖον τὰς τῶν τεθνεῶτων ψυχὰς εἶναι ποὺ, ὦθεν δὴ
πάλιν γίνεσθαι.
δοκεῖ μοι, ἐφη, ὑ Σώκρατες, ἐκ τῶν ὀμολογημένων
ἀναγκαῖον οὐτῶς ἔχειν.
ἰδὲ τοίνυν οὔτως, ἐφη, ὑ Κέβης, ὅτι οὐδ’ ἄδικως ὀμο-

---

ἀ-δικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust, 6
ἀνα-βιώσκομαι: to bring back to life, 6
 γένεσις, -εως, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16

14 ἔστι: there exists; or 'there is'
72a1 τεθνεῶτων: pf. pple τθνῆσκω,
 δὲν εἴη: would…; 3s potential opt. εἰμί
 αὐτῇ: this; nom. subj., γένεσις is the
 predicate
tὸ ἀναβιώσκεσθαι: in apposition to αὐτῇ
3 πάνι γε: quite so, quite indeed; affirmative
4 ὀμολογεῖται ἡμῖν: it is agreed for us; dat.
of interest
καὶ ταύτῃ: in this way also; adverbial καὶ
and dat. of manner,
5 γεγονόναι: pf. inf. γίγνομαι
οὐδὲν ἡττον ἡ: no less than; or ‘in no way
less than…’ comparative adv. with an acc.

---

ἐ-δικος, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 16
δ-θεν: from where, from which, 4
τεκμήριον, τὸ: sign, indication, proof, 5

of degree by extent (i.e. less by nothing)
6 τούτων ὅντος: (since) this is the case; ‘this
being (the case)’ gen. abs., causal in sense
7 ἀναγκαῖον: (it is) necessary
ποῦ: somewhere
ὅθεν δὴ: from which very place; ‘precisely
from where’
8 γίγνεσθαι: supply ἀναγκαῖον
9 ὀμολογημένων: pf. pass. pple ὀμολογέω
10 οὔτως ἔχειν: see p. 7
11 ἵδι: sg. aor. imperative sg. εἴδον
οὐδὲ ἄδικως: i.e. rightly, justly; litotes
ὡς: ὀμολογήκαμεν: pf. ὀμολογέω
λογήκαμεν, ὡς ἐμὸι δοκεῖ. εἰ γὰρ μὴ ἀεὶ ἀνταποδιδοῖν τὰ ἑτέρα τοῖς ἑτέροις γιγνόμενα, ὡσπερεὶ κύκλῳ περιώντα, ἀλλ᾽ εὐθείᾳ τις εἶν ἡ γένεσις ἵνα τοῦ ἑτέρου μόνον εἰς τὸ καταντικρῶ καὶ μὴ ἀνακάμπτων πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸ ἑτέρον μηδὲ καμπῆν ποιῶ, οἴσθ᾽ ὃτι πάντα τελευτῶντα τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα ἄν σχοῖν καὶ τὸ αὐτὸ πάθος ἄν πάθοι καὶ παύσαιτο γιγνόμενα; πῶς λέγεις; ἐφ᾽.

οὐδὲν χαλεπόν, ἢ δ᾽ ὅσον ἐννοῆσαι ὅ λέγω ἀλλ᾽ οἷον εἶ τὸ καταδαρθάνειν μὲν εἶ, τὸ δ᾽ ἀνεγείρεσθαι μὴ ἀνταποδιδοῖν γιγνόμενον ἐκ τοῦ καθεύδοντος, οἴσθ᾽ ὃτι τελευτῶντα πάντ᾽ <ἀν> λῆρον τὸν Ἐνδυμίωνα ἁποδείξειν καὶ οὐδαμοῦ ἄν καὶ φαίνοιτο διὰ τὸ καὶ τάλλα πάντα ταυτὸν ἐκεῖνῳ πεπονθέναι,
καθεύδειν. κἂν εἴ συγκρίνοιτο μὲν πάντα, διακρίνοιτο δὲ μῆ, ταχῦ ἄν τὸ τοῦ Ἀναξαγόρου γεγονὸς εἴη, ὅμοιο πάντα χρήματα. ὡσαύτως δέ, ὃ φίλε Κέβης, καὶ εἶ ἀποθνήσκοι μὲν πάντα ὅσα τοῦ ζῆν μεταλάβοι, ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀποθάνοι, μένοι ἐν τούτῳ τῷ σχῆματι τὰ τεθνεῖται καὶ μὴ πάλιν ἀναβιώσκοιτο, ἃρ’ οὐ πολλὴ ἀνάγκη τελευτῶντα πάντα
d τεθνάναι καὶ μηδὲν ζῆν; εἰ γὰρ ἐκ μὲν τῶν ἄλλων τὰ ζώντα γίγνοιτο, τὰ δὲ ζώντα θνήσκοι, τίς μηχανὴ μὴ οὐχὶ πάντα καταναλωθήναι εἰς τὸ τεθνάναι;
οὔδε μία μοι δοκεῖ, ἐφ’ ὁ Κέβης, ὡ Σώκρατες, ἀλλὰ μοι
5 δοκεῖς παντάπασαν ἀληθῆ λέγειν.

ἐστὶν γὰρ, ἐφ’ ὡς Κέβης, ὡς ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, παντὸς μᾶλλον

ἀνα-βιώσκοιμα: to bring back to life, 6
Ἀναξαγόρας, οὐ, ὁ: Anaxagoras, 2
δια-κρίνω: separate, distinguish; decide, 2
καθ-εὔδω: to lie down to sleep, sleep, 5
κατα-αναλίσκχω: to use up, spend, 1
μένω: to stay, remain, 8
μετα-λαμβάνω: receive a share of, partake
(μηχανήν, ἥ: instrument, contrivance, means, 2)
3 καθεύδειν: (namely) to sleep; in apposition κἂν εἴ…μὲν…δὲ, ἄν…γεγονὸς εἴη: even if all things should be… and should be… would have; καὶ ἂν εἴ, future less vivid (ἐἰ opt., ἂν opt.); the duplication of ἂν is for emphasis
4 τὰχῦρ: soon; ‘quickly,’ adverbial acc.
τὸ τοῦ Ἀναξαγόρου: that (saying) of Anaxagoras
ἄν…γεγονὸς εἴη: periphrastic pf. opt.
(νευτ. pf. pple γίγνομαι + opt. εἴη)
5 καὶ εἴ ἀποθνήσκοι: even if…should…;
lengthy protasis of a future less vivid
6 παντά: neuter pl. subject of 3s verb
μεταλάβοι: usually an indicative, the verb has assimilated to the opt. of ἀποθνήσκοι τοῦ ζῆν: articular inf., partitive gen. ζῶς, ἀποδάνω: aor. opt. ἀποθνήσκω; one expects ἂν + subj. in an indefinite temporal clause: (1) the verb has either assimilated to the opt. the opt. of ἀποθνήσκοι or (2) Plato composed the indefinite temporal clause in
ὁμοί: at the same place, together, 3
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
συν-κρίνω: combine, synthesize, compound 2
σχῆμα, -ατος, τὸ: form, figure, appearance, 3
tαχῦς, εἴπα, ὑ: quick, swift, hastily, 9
φιλὸς-η-οῦ: dear, friendly; noun friend, kin 8
χρήμα, -ατος, τὸ: thing, money, possessions 6
ὁς-αύτῶς: in the same manner, just so, 4
secondary seq., where an opt. replaces what is otherwise ἄν + subj. in primary seq.
7 τὰ τεθνεῶτα: the dead; subject of two 3s verbs; neuter pl. pf. pple θνήσκοι
8 ἀνάγκη (ἄν εἴη): would there be…?; supply the missing apodosis to the condition
τελευτῶντα: in the end, finally; as adverb
d1 τεθνάναι: to be dead; pf. inf.
μηδὲν: not at all; inner acc.
eἰ μὲν γίγνοιτο…δὲ θνήσκοι: if…should… and … should…; a single protasis
2 τῷ μηχανή (ἄν εἴη): what means (would there be)?; supply missing apodosis
μη οὐχὶ: that all things not…; μὴ οὐ + inf. is used after negated verbs of prevention, here implied
3 καταναλωθήναι: aor. pass. inf.
eἰς τὸ τεθνάναι: for dying; ‘for being dead’
4 οὔδε μία: not even one (means…)…; fem. sg. agreeing with missing μηχανὴ
6 παντὸς μᾶλλον: more than anything
οὔτω, καὶ ἡμεῖς αὐτὰ ταῦτα οὐκ ἔξαπατῶμεν ὁμολογοῦμεν, ἀλλ’ ἔστι τῷ ὄντι καὶ τὸ ἀναβιώσκεσθαι καὶ ἐκ τῶν τεθνεῶτων τοὺς ζῶντας γίγνεσθαι καὶ τὰς τῶν τεθνεῶτων ψυχὰς εἶναι [καὶ ταῖς μὲν γε ἁγαθαῖς ἁμενον εἶναι, ταῖς δὲ κακαῖς ε ἄκακιον.]

καὶ μὴν, ἐφ’ ὁ Κέβης ὑπολαβὼν, καὶ κατ’ ἐκεῖνον γε τὸν λόγον, ὃ Σώκρατες, εἰ ἄληθής ἐστιν, δν σοὶ εἰώθας θαμά λέγειν, ὅτι ἡμῖν ἡ μάθησις οὐκ ἄλλο τι ἡ ἀνάμνησις τυγχάνει οὕσα, καὶ κατὰ τούτον ἀνάγκη που ἡμᾶς ἐν προτέρῳ τῷ χρόνῳ μεμαθηκέναι ἄ ναν ἀναμνησκόμεθα. τούτο δὲ ἀδύνατον, εἰ μὴ ἦν που ἡμῖν ἡ ψυχή πρὶν ἐν τῷ τῷ ἄνθρωπίῳ εἰδεῖ γενέσθαι, ὡστε καὶ ταύτη ἁθάνατον ἡ ψυχή τι ἐσκεύεται.
ἀλλὰ, δὲ Κέβης, ἐφη ὁ Σιμμίας ὑπολαβών, ποιαὶ τοῖτων
5 αἰ ἀποδείξεις; ὑπόμνησον μὲν ὡς γὰρ σφόδρα ἐν τῷ παρόντι
μέμνημαι.

ἐνὶ μὲν λόγῳ, ἐφη ὁ Κέβης, καλλιστῶ, ὅτι ἐρωτώμενοι
οἱ ἄνθρωποι, εάν τις καλῶς ἐρωτᾷ, αὐτοὶ λέγουσιν πάντα ἢ
ἐχεῖ-καίτοι εἰ μὴ ἐτύγχανεν αὐτοῖς ἐπιστήμη ἐνοῦσα καὶ
10 ὀρθῶς λόγος, οὐκ ἂν ὦντος τι  ἦσαν τοῦτο ποιήσας-ἐπείτα
ἐὰν τις ἐπὶ τὰ διαγράμματα ἄγη ἢ ἄλλο τι τῶν τοιούτων,
ἐνταῦθα σαφέστατα κατηγορεῖ ὅτι τοῦτο οὐτῶς ἐχει.
 ei δὲ μὴ ταύτῃ γε, ἐφη, πειθῇ, δὲ Σιμμία, ὁ Σωκράτης,
σκέψαται ἂν τῇδε πῇ σοι σκοπουμένῳ συνδόξῃ. ἀπιστεῖς γὰρ
δὴ πῶς ἡ καλομένη μάθησις ἀνάμνησις ἑστιν;

4 ποια: interrogative, add linking verb ‘are’
5 τοῖτων: for these; objective gen.
ὑπόμνησον: aor. imper. ὑπομνήσκομαι
ἐν τῷ παρόντι: at the present (time)
6 μέμνημαι: pf. mid. μνημοσύνη
ἐν: ... λόγῳ . . . καλλιστῶ: by one very
beautiful argument; dat. of means, dat εἰς
dia: (namely) that...
ἐρωτόμενοι: passive pple
7 καλός: well
ἐρώτη: asks; pres. α-contract subj. in a
pres. general condition (ἐι ἡν + subj., pres.)
ἀποτελέω: (they) themselves; intensive
ἡ ἐκ: however it holds; i.e. the truth; ‘in
what way,’ a dat. of manner, while ἐκ
means ‘holds’ or ‘is disposed’
8 εἷς-ἐτύγχανεν . . . οἴοι τῇ ἦσαν: if...happened
to . . . they would not be able; pres. contrary-
to-fact condition (ei + impf., ἀν + impf.)
ἀποτελέω: (in) them; dat. of compound verb
ἐνοῦσα
ἐνοῦσα: nom. sg. fem. pple ἐν-εμί,
complementary pple with ἐτύγχανεν
10 ὀρθῶς λόγος: correct account
οἴοι τῇ ἦσαν: would be able; ‘would be the
sort to . . .’ οἶος τῇ ἦσαν commonly denotes
‘to be able,’ here, with a 3p impf. verb
b1 ἐπὶ: . . . to . . . ; acc. place to which
ἀγη, κατηγορεῖ: leads (another person) . . .
will declare; fut. more vivid (ἐαν subj., fut)
2 σαφέστατα: superlative adv.
3 σαφές: you are persuaded; 2s pres. mid.
σκέψαη: aor. mid. imper., σκέπτομαι
(δ) ἂν . . . συνδόξῃ: whether it seems good . . .
8 τῇδε πῇ: in this way somehow
5 καλομένη: so-called; i.e. what is called

Argument from Recollection
ἀποκτώ μέν σοι ἔγγυε, ἦ δ’ ὑς ὁ Σιμμίας, οὗ, αὐτὸ δὲ τοῦτο, ἐφε, δέομαι παθεῖν περὶ οὗ ὁ λόγος, ἀναμνησθῆναι. καὶ σχεδὸν γε ἐξ ὧν Κέβης ἐπεξείρησε λέγειν ἣδε μέμνημαι καὶ πειθομαι: οὐδὲν μεντὰν ἦττον ἄκουομι νῦν πή σὺ ἐπε- εχείρησας λέγειν.

τῇδ’ ἔγγυε, ἦ δ’ ὑς ὁμολογοῦμεν γὰρ δήπου, εἶ τίς τι ε ἀναμνησθῆσεται, δεῖν αὐτὸν τοῦτο πρότερον ποτε ἐπίστασθαί.

πάνω γ’, ἐφε.

ἀρ’ οὖν καὶ τόδε ὁμολογοῦμεν, ὅταν ἐπιστήμη παραγιγνηται τρόπω τοιοῦτω, ἀνάμνησιν εἶναι; λέγω δὲ τίνα τρόπον τόνδε. εάν τίς τι ἔτερον ἢ ἰδὼν ἢ ἄκουοςς ἢ τινα ἄλλην αἴσθησιν λαβῶν μη μόνον ἐκείνο γνῷ, ἀλλὰ καὶ

αἰσθῆσις, ἐως, ἤ: sensation, perception, 19
ἀνα-μνησθῆ: remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16
ἀνα-μνησθῆ, ἐως, ἤ: recollection, recall, 11
ἀ-πατέω: to distrust, not believe (+ dat.), 8
γνωσκόμαι, -μαι: learn to know, to learn, realize 12
δέομαι: lack, need, want; ask for (+ gen.) 7
ἐπι-χείρεω: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 8
ἐπίσταται: know, know how, understand, 13

6 ἀπατέω...οὖ: Disbelieve you...I do not!
 αὐτὸ δὲ τοῦτο: but this very thing; ‘this thing itself’ intensive, acc. object
7 παθεῖν: aor. inf. πάθος
 ὁ λόγος: (there is) a conversation; i.e. what we were talking about, add verb
ἀναμνησθῆ: (namely) recollection; ‘to recall’ aor. pass. inf. in apposition to τοῦτο
8 καὶ...γε: and...in fact; emphasizing the intervening word
ἐκ δὲ τοῦτων; from (the things) which; ἐκ τούτων ἃ; acc. relative attracted into gen. pl. of the missing antecedent
μεμνησθῆ: πλ. μνήμη
οὐδέν...γίγνου: no less; comparative adv. 
οὐδέν is adv. acc. (acc. of degree of extent)
9 μεντάν...ἀκουομι: nevertheless I should...;

ἡδῆ: already, now, at this time, 16
ἡπτων, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 16
μαινήσκω: to remind, recall, recollect, 6
παραγιγνομα: to come near, be present, 11
πή: in what way, how, 5
σχεδόν: nearly, almost, just about, 8
τῆδε: here; in this way, thus, 8
τρόπος, ὁ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17

μεντοι ἃν, potential opt.
πή...: how...; indirect question
τίς: someone...; indefinite τις
2 ἀναμνησθῆ: recalls; fut. pass. dep. (aor. pass. stem + σ), use pres. with future sense
δεῖν: that it is necessary; inf., impersonal
δεῖ, ind. disc. governed by ὁμολογοῦμεν
αὐτὸν: that he...; i.e. τίς
πρότερον: comparative adv.
3 πάνω γε: quite so, quite indeed; affirmative
4 καὶ τόδε: this also; καὶ is adverbial
5 τρόπη: τοιούτου: in...; dat. manner
ἀνάμνησιν εἴναι: that...; ind. disc.
λέγω δὲ τίνα τρόπον τόνδε: I mean some way as this; i.e. the following
ἐάν...γιγν: 3s aor. subj, γιγνόμαι
μη μόνον... ἀλλὰ καὶ: not only...but also
Argument from Recollection

ἔτερον ἐννοήσῃ οὗ μὴ ἡ αὐτὴ ἐπιστήμη ἀλλ' ἀλλη, ἡρα οὐχὶ τούτῳ δικαίως λέγομεν ὅτι ἀνεμνήσθη, οὗ τὴν ἐννοιαν
d ἔλαβεν;
pῶς λέγεις;
οἶν τὰ τοιάδε: ἀλλη που ἐπιστήμη ἀνθρώπου καὶ λύρας.
pῶς γὰρ οὗ;
οὐκοῦν οἶσθα ὅτι οἱ ἔρασται, ὅταν ἴδοςν λύραν ἢ ἴμάτιον ἢ ἄλλο τι οἷς τὰ παιδικὰ αὐτῶν ἐπιθετε ἥραθοι, πάσχουσι τοῦτο: ἐγνωσάν τιν ἐν τῷ λύραν καὶ ἐν τῇ διανοίᾳ ἔλαβον τὸ εἶδος τοῦ παιδός οὗ ἢν ἢ λύρα; τοῦτο δὲ ἑστὶν ἀνάμνησις: ὅσπερ γαῖ Καὶ Σιμυίαν τις ἴδων πολλὰκις Κέβητος ἀνεμνήσθη, καὶ ἀλλα που μνημία τοιαυτ' ἀν εἰη.

ἀνα-μνημήσκω: remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16 ἀνα-μνημήσκω, -eos, ἡ: recollection, recall, 11 γνωσάν: learn to know, to learn, realize 12 διάνοια, ἡ: thought, intention, purpose, 6 δικαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13 εἴδος, -eis, τό: form, shape, figure, 17 εἴδθα: to be accustomed, 12 εὖ-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18 ἔννοια, ἡ: idea, intent, notion, conception, 1

8 ἔτερον: something other ἐννοήσῃ: 3s aor. subjunctive, ἐν-νοέω oὐ: of which; relative, objective gen. governed by ἐπιστήμη αὐτη...ἀλλη: same...different ἅρα οὖξ: do we not...?; anticipating a positive response
9 ἀναμνήσκω: 3s aor. pass. deponent ἀναμνήσκω oὐ: of which; relative, objective gen. governed by ἔννοιαν
d1 λέγεις: you mean
3 οἶν: for example; ‘in respect to such,’ acc. of respect ἄλλη...ἐπιστήμη...λύρας: knowledge of a man and of a lyre (are) different, I suppose

4 πῶς γὰρ οὗ: how (could they) not?; elliptical, ‘(yes), for how...not’
5 οἶσθα: 2s pf. οἶδα, pres. in sense ἴδον: 3p aor. subjunctive ὅραω (eiđον), indefinite temporal clause
6 οἷς: which...; dat. object of inf. χράομαι
7 ἐγνώσασα: 3p aor. γνωσάω
8 οὗ: whose; relative, gen. of possession ἤν: 3s impf. εἰμί
9 ἴδον: nom. sg. aor. pple eiđον Κέβητος: gen. obj. of verb of forgetting ἀνεμνήσθη: 3s aor. pass. deponent ἀναμνήσκω
10 ἄν εἴη: there might be...; potential opt. εἰμί
μυρία μέντοι νη Δία, ἐφη οἱ Σιμμίασ.
oύκοιν, ἡ δ' ὅς, τὸ τοιοῦτον ἀνάμνησις τίς ἐστι, μάλιστα e
μέντοι ὅταν τις τούτο πάθη ἐπέλεηστο; πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἐφη.
tί δὲ; ἡ δ' ὅς. ἐστιν ἐπειν γεγραμμένον ἢδοντα καὶ
λύραν γεγραμμένην ἀνθρώπων ἀναμνησθήναι, καὶ Σιμμίαν
ἰδόντα γεγραμμένον Κέβητος ἀναμνησθήναι;
πάνυ γε.
oύκοιν καὶ Σιμμίαν ἢδοντα γεγραμμένον αὐτοῦ Σιμμίου
ἀναμνησθήναι; ἐστι μέντοι, ἐφη.
Argument from Recollection

ادة οὖν οὐ κατὰ πάντα ταῦτα συμβαίνει τὴν ἀνάμνησιν εἶναι μὲν ἄφ’ ὁμοίων, εἶναι δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ ἀνομοίων; συμβαίνει.

5 ἀλλ’ ὅταν γε ἀπὸ τῶν ὁμοίων ἀναμμηνήσκεται τίς τι, ἄρ’ οὖν ἀναγκαῖον τὸ δεῖ προσπάσχειν, ἐννοεῖ ἐτεὶ τι ἐλλείπει τοῦτο κατὰ τὴν ὁμοιότητα εἶτε μὴ ἐκείνων οὐ ἄνεμνήσθη; ἀνάγκη, ἐφη.

σκόπει δὴ, ἢ δ’ ὡς, εἰ ταῦτα οὐς ἔχει. φαμέν ποῦ τι εἶναι ἵππον, ὦν ξύλων λέγω ξύλω οὐδὲ λίθων λίθω οὐδ’ ἄλλο τῶν τοιούτων οὐδέν, ἀλλὰ παρὰ ταῦτα πάντα ἔτερον τι, αὐτὸ τὸ ἱσον: φῶμεν τι εἶναι ἢ μηδὲν;

b φῶμεν μέντοι νὴ Δ’, ἐφη ὁ Συμμίας, θαυμαστῶς γε.
ἡ καὶ ἑπιστάμεθα αὐτὸ δ ἦστιν;
πάνυ γε, ἡ δ’ ὄς.
πόθεν λαβόντες αὐτοῦ τὴν ἑπιστήμην; ἃρ’ οὐκ εξ ἡν
νυνὴ ἐλέγομεν, ἡ ξύλα ἡ λίθος ἡ ἄλλα ἄττα ἰδόντες
ἰςα, ἐκ τούτων ἐκεῖνο ἐνενοήσαμεν, ἐτέρων ἐν τούτων; ἡ
οὐχ ἐτέρων σοι φαίνεται; σκόπει δὲ καὶ τῇ δε. ἃρ’ οὐ λίθοι
μὲν ἵσοι καὶ ξύλα ἐνίοτε ταῦτα ὄντα τῷ μὲν ἴσα φαίνεται,
τῷ δ’ οὐ;
πάνυ μὲν ὄνων.
τί δὲ; αὐτὰ τὰ ἴσα ἦστιν ὅτε ἁνισά σοι ἐφανή, ἡ ἡ ἠιστής
καὶ ἀνισότης;
οὐδεπώποτέ γε, ὁ Σώκρατες.

ἀν-ἰοσ,-ον: unequal, uneven, 1
ἀν-ἰοστής, ἡ: inequality, 1
ἐν-οτε: sometimes, 7
ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
ἐπισταμαί: know, know how, understand, 13
ἰσότης, ἡ: equality, 1
λίθος, ὁ: a stone, 8

2 καί: also; adverbial καί
αὐτό δ ἦστιν: what it is; ‘it, what it is’
proleptic use of αὐτό : make this acc. obj.
the subject of ἦστιν
3 πάνυ γε: quite so, quite indeed
λαβόντες: aor. pple λαμβάνω
4 ἃρ(α) οὐκ: (is) it not...?
5 ἄττα: any; alternative to neut. pl. τινα
ἰδόντες: aor. pple ἵδον (ἰδον)
6 ἐκεῖνο: that; i.e. equality
ἐτέρων ὄν: being...; neut. sg. pple εἰμι +
neuter predicate
tούτων: than...; gen. of comparison
7 σκόπει: σκόπε-ε, sg. imper.
καί: also
8 ταύτα: the same; τὰ αὐτὰ, neuter pl.
predicate of ὄντα
ὄντα: neuter pl. pple εἰμι modifying ξύλα
νυν-δὴ: just now, 15
ξύλον, τό: wood, firewood, 6
ὀτε: when, at some time, 7
οὐδε-πώποτε: not yet ever, never in the
world, 1
πό-θεν: from where, 2
τῇ δε: here; in this way, thus, 8

ἐνίοτε...ἴσα φαίνεται: sometimes appear
equal...; 3s with plural subjects
τῷ μὲν...τῷ δ(ε) οὐ: There are number of
possible interpretations: (1) ‘in one respect
but not in another respect’ (dat. of respect)
or (2) ‘appear’ to one person but not
appear) to another’ (dat. of reference) or
(3) ‘(equal) to one thing but not (equal) to
another’ (dat. of special adjectival).
10 πάνυ μὲν ὄνων: quite certainly indeed; μὲν
ὄνων is a strong assent
11 αὐτά: themselves; intensive
ἔστιν ὄτε: sometimes; ‘there is (a time)
when,’ a common idiom in which the
antecedent of ὄτε is missing
ἐφάνη: appeared; 3s aor. pass. deponent
φαίνομαι
ἡ ἠιστής (ἐφάνη): supply verb
οὐ ταῦτον ἄρα ἐστίν, ἃ δὲ ὁς, ταῦτα τε τὰ ἱσα καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ ἱσον.
οὐδαμῶς μοι φαίνεται, ὡς Σώκρατες.
ἀλλὰ μὴν ἐκ τούτων γ’, ἐφη, τῶν ἱσων, ἑτέρων ὄντων ἐκείνου τοῦ ἱσου, ὁμως αὐτοῦ τῆν ἑπιστήμην ἐννενόηκας τε καὶ ἑλλήφας;

ἀληθέστατα, ἐφη, λέγεις.
οὐκοῦν ἡ ὁμοίου ὄντος τούτοις ἡ ἀνομοίου;
πάνυ γε.

dιαφέρει δὲ γε, ἃ δ’ ὁς, οὐδεν’ ἐως ἂν ἀλλο ἢδων ἀπὸ

tαύτης τῆς ὁψεως ἀλλο ἐννοήσης, εἰτε ὁμοίου εἰτε ἀνομοίου,
ἀναγκαίου, ἐφη, αὐτὸ ἀνάμμησον γεγονέναι.

ἀν-ὁμοίος, -ον: unlike, dissimilar, 4
ἀνα-μνησις, -εως, ἡ: recollection, recall, 11
dια-φέρω: to carry over; differ, surpass, 8
eι-τε: either...or; whether...or, 13
ἐν-νοεω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18

ἐως: until, as long as, 15
ὁμοιος: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, however, yet, 13
ὁμοιος, -εως, ἡ: vision, appearance, form; face, 6

4 ταῦτον: the same; nom. pred., τὸ αὐτὸν ταῦτα...Ισον: these equals and the equal itself; both neuter subjects of ἐστίν
7 ἀλλὰ μὴν: but certainly, but surely, and yet; strong adversative often after a negative; cf. 61d9, 63a4
ἐτέρων ὄντων: being different; gen. pl. ppie τΙμΙ and gen. pred., modifying Ισον
8 ἐκείνου...Ισον: from...; ‘than,’ gen. of comparison, i.e. equality itself
ἐννοηκάς...ελλήφας: 2s pf. ἐν-νοεώ, λαμβάνω
10 ἀληθέστατα: most truly; superlative adv.
11 ἃ...ἡ: either...or
ὁμοίου ὄντος...ἀνομοίου (δύνω): (the equal) being...; two gen. abs., the

adjectives are predicates
τοῦτοις: dat. of special adjective, follows both ὁμοίου and ἀνομοίου
12 πάνυ γε: quite so, quite indeed
13 γε: indeed; emphasizing the entire clause
οὐδέν: not at all; inner acc., i.e. ‘makes no (difference)’
ἀν...ἐννοήσης: 2s aor. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
ἀλλα...ἀλλα: one...another
ὁδων: nom. sg. aor. pple ὅραω (εἰδον)
d2 ἀναγκαίου: (it is)...; add verb
γεγονέναι: is; pf. inf. γίνουμαι, αὐτὸ is acc. subject
πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

tί δέ; ἣ δὲ ὅς· ἣ πάσχομεν τι τοιοῦτον περὶ τά ἐν τοῖς ἐπίκλοις τε καὶ ὁς νυνῇ ἐλέγομεν τοῖς ἵσοις; ἀρα φαίνεται ἢμῖν οὕτως ἵσα εἶναι ὡσπερ αὐτὸ τὸ ὁ ἐστιν, ἦ ἐνδεῖ τι ἐκεῖνον τῷ τοιοῦτον εἶναι οἷον τὸ ἵσον, ἦ οὐδέν;

καὶ πολὺ γε, ἔφη, ἐνδεῖ.

οὐκοῦν ὁμολογοῦμεν, ὅταν τίς τι ἴδιων ἐννοήσῃ ὅτι βούλεται μὲν τούτῳ τὸ νῦν ἐγὼ ὅρω εἶναι οἷον ἄλλο τι τῶν ὄντων, ἐνδεῖ δὲ καὶ οὐ δύναται τοιοῦτον εἶναι ἵσον οἷον ἑκεῖνο, ἀλλ' ἐστιν φαυλότερον, ἀναγκαῖον ποῖ τὸν τούτο ἐννοοῦντα τυχεῖν προειδότα ἑκεῖνο φησὶν αὐτό προσεοικέναι μὲν, ἐνδεεστέρως δὲ ἐχεῖν;

ἀνάγκη.

---

δύναμι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἐν-δεεστέρος -α-σο: more deficient, lacking, 3
ἐν-δέω: to be in want or lacking of (gen.), 3
ἐν-νοέω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
ἡ: in truth, truly (begins open question), 5

3 πάνυ μὲν οὖν: quite certainly indeed
4 τί δέ: what (about it)?; often expressed in a transition, GP 176
πάσχομεν: we experience
περί: regarding...; + acc.
τὰ ἐν τοῖς ἐπίκλοις (Ἰσα): matters in...; preposition in the attributive position
5 οἷς...ἐλέγομεν: which...; ὁ, acc. pl. relative attracted into the dat. of the antecedent, the τοῖς ἵσοις which follows
6 αὐτὸ τὸ δ ἐστὶ (Ἰσο): that which is
7 ἀτὸ τὸ δ ἐστὶ (Ἰσο): that which is (equal), itself; i.e. just as equality itself
ἡ...ἡ: either...or
8 ἐνδεῖ τι ἐκεῖνο: do (they) lack something from that; i.e. from equality itself; inner acc. ('at all' 'in a way') and gen. separation
9 τὸ...εἶναι: in respect to being; articular inf. is dative of respect, ei
ποιοῦτον...οἷον: such a thing as; predicate, correlatives (demonstrative and relative)
οὐδέν: not at all; inner acc., parallel to τι

---

νυν-δή: just now, 15
ἐπίκλοις, τό: wood, firewood, 6
πρὸ-οἴδα: to know beforehand, 3
προσ-εοίκα: to be like, resemble; seem fit, 1
φαύλος -η-σο: slight, paltry, cheap, trifling

8 καὶ πολὺ γε: very much actually; καὶ...γε the intervening word, an inner acc. with ἐνδεῖ

---

2 φαυλότερον: predicate, comparative adj.
ἀναγκαῖον: it is...; add a verb
τυχεῖν προειδότα: pf. pple προ-οίδα, see p. 20

---

3 ὃ: to which; obj. of pf. inf. προσ-εοίκα
4 ἐχεῖν: + adv., see p. 7
Argument from Recollection

tί οὖν; τὸ τοιοῦτον πεπόνθαμεν καὶ ἠμείς ἦ σοι περὶ τε τὰ ἴσα καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ ἴσον;
παντάπασι γε.

ἀναγκαῖον ἢρα ἡμᾶς προειδέναι τὸ ἴσον πρὸ ἐκείνου τοῦ
χρόνου ὅτε τὸ πρῶτον ἴδοντες τὰ ἴσα ἑννοῆσαμεν ὅτι
ὀρέγεται μὲν πάντα ταύτα εἶναι οἶον τὸ ἴσον, ἥκι δὲ ἑνδεεστέρως.

ἔστι ταύτα.

5 ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τὸν ὀμολογούμεν, μὴ ἀλλοθεν αὐτὸ ἑν
νοηκέναι μηδὲ δυνατὸν εἶναι ἑννοῆσαι ἀλλ᾽ ἢ ἐκ τοῦ ἰδεῖν
ἡ ἠψασθαι ἢ ἐκ των ἀλλὰς τῶν ἀισθήσεων ταύτων δὲ
πάντα ταύτα λέγω.

6 τὸ τοιοῦτον: this sort of thing
πεπόνθαμεν: 1p pf. πάσχω
καὶ: also; adverbial
περί: regarding...

9 ἀναγκαίον: (it is) necessary
προειδέναι: pf. πρόοιδα but pres. in sense

75α1 τὸ πρῶτον: first; i.e. for the first time,
adverbial acc.

ἱδόντες τὰ ἴσα: nom. pl. aor. pple ὀράω
(ἐἰδοῦν)

2 ὀρέγεται...εἶναι: aim to be; ‘strives to be,’
compare βούλεται...εἶναι in 74d9

πάντα ταύτα: nom. subj.
οἶον: such as

ἔχει: + adv., see p. 7

ὀρέγω: to stretch out, reach for, extend, 4

ὄτε: when, at some time, 7

παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15

πρὸ: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 13

πρό-οίδα: to know beforehand, 3

4 ἔστι: are the case; i.e. are true

5 ἀλλὰ μὴν: but certainly, but surely, and
yet; GP 345

καὶ: also

μὴ...ἐννοηκέναι μηδὲ δυνατὸν εἶναι: that
(we) have not had in mind...nor is it
possible...; ind. disc., pf. inf., δυνατὸν
eἶναι is impersonal

6 ἑννοῆσαι: aor. inf. ἑννοεῖ

ἀλλὰ ἢ: (anything) other than

τοῦ ἰδεῖν: seeing; articular aor. inf. εἰδοῦν

7 (τοῦ) ἠψασθαι: touching; articular aor. inf. ἠψασθαί

ταύτων...Λέγω: I assert all these the same;
i.e. perceptions, αἰσθήσεις
ταῦτον γὰρ ἐστιν, ὁ Σώκρατες, πρὸς γε ὁ βούλεται δηλώσαι ὁ λόγος.

ἀλλὰ μὲν δὴ ἐκ γε τῶν αἰσθήσεων δεῖ ἐννοῆσαι ὅτι πάντα τὰ ἐν ταῖς αἰσθήσεως ἐκείνου τε ὀρέγεται τοῦ ὁ ἐστιν ἴσον, καὶ αὐτοῦ ἐνδεέστερά ἐστιν· ἕπως λέγομεν;

οὔτως.

πρὸ τοῦ ἀρα ἀρξασθαι ἡμᾶς ὁρῶν καὶ ἀκούειν καὶ τὰλλα αἰσθάνεσθαι τυχεῖν ἐδει ποὺ εἰληφότας ἐπιστήμην αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἴσου ὅτι ἐστιν, εἰ ἐμέλλομεν τὰ ἐκ τῶν αἰσθήσεων ἵσα ἐκείσε ἀνοίσεων, ὅτι προθυμεῖται μὲν πάντα τοιαῦτ᾽ εἶναι ὧν ἐκεῖνο, ἐστιν δὲ αὐτοῦ φαυλότερα.

ἀνάγκη ἐκ τῶν προειρημένων, ὁ Σώκρατες.

αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἀνα-φέρω: to report, bring up, recover, 2
ἀρχο: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 12
δηλω: to make clear, show, reveal, 3
ἐκ-εἰσε: thither, to that place, 10
ἐν-δεικτέρος, -α, -ον: more insufficient, 3

ἐν-νοεῖ: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
μελλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
ὁρέγω: stretch for, reach or strive for, (gen) 4
προ-θυμεῖ: to be eager, desire, ready, 12
προ-λέγω: to say or mention beforehand, 4
φαύλος-ν-ον: slight, paltry, cheap, trifling 9

9 ταῦτον: the same; τὸ αὐτὸν
πρὸς γε:... at least in regard to...; + acc. Simmias qualifies his affirmative reply
βούλεται... λόγος: the conversation aims
to...; compare 74d9 and 75a2
11 ἀλλὰ μὲν δὴ... γε: well certainly, well, of course; introduces a new point, similar to ἀλλὰ μίν (GP 394)
ἐκ γε... αἰσθήσεων: through the perceptions in fact; i.e. these and nothing else, γε is both restrictive and emphatic (GP 120)

1) πάντα τὰ... αἰσθήσεων: i.e. all sensible objects that are equal

ἐκείνου... τοῦ ὁ ἴστιν ἴσου: that thing which is equal; i.e. equality itself, a partitive gen., object of ὀρέγεται; the relative ὁ ἴστιν ἴσου is in the attributive position, see also 74d6, αὐτὸ τὸ ὁ ἴστιν (ἴσου);

2) αὐτοῦ: from it; i.e. from equality itself; a gen. of separation

ἔστιν: they are...; the subj. is neuter pl. πάντα above

4 πρὸ τοῦ... ἀρξασθαι: before we began
to...; ‘before our beginning to...’ Articular ins. are often translated as gerunds but are more cumbersome with acc. subject, ἡμᾶς
ταλλα: other (perceptions); τὰ ἀλλὰ
5 τυχεῖν ἐδεί: it was necessary that (we) attain; aor. inf. τυγχάνω, the object is ἐπιστήμην

ποῦ: somewhere

εἰληφότας: acc. pl. pf. pple λαμβάνω modifying acc. subject ἡμᾶς

αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἴσου ὅτι ἔστιν: of what the equal itself is; lit. ‘of the equal itself, what it is’; proleptic use of τοῦ ἴσου which is more suitably the subject of ἐστιν

7 ἐκείσε: to that one; i.e. to equality itself

ἀν-οισεν: to compare; μελλω governs a fut. inf., here ἀνα-φέρω

ὁτι: and see that...; parallel to ἀνοίσειν προθυμεῖται... εἶναι: desires to be...

τοιαῦτα... ἴσον: such a thing as

9 προειρημένων: pf. pass. pple προλέγω
οὐκόν γενόμενοι εὐθὺς ἑωρῶμεν τε καὶ ἰκοόμεν καὶ τὰς ἄλλας αἰσθήσεις εἴχομεν;
πάνω γε.

ἔδει δέ γε, φαμέν, πρὸ τοῦτων τῆν τοῦ ἵσου ἐπιστήμην εἰληφέναι;
ναί.

πρὶν γενέσθαι ἄρα, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἀνάγκη ἡμῶν αὐτὴν εἰλη-

φέναι.

ἔοικεν.

οὐκόν εἰ μὲν λαβόντες αὐτὴν πρὸ τοῦ γενέσθαι ἔχοντες ἐγενόμεθα, ἡπιστάμεθα καὶ πρὶν γενέσθαι καὶ εὐθὺς γενό-

μενοι οὐ μόνον τὸ ῥεῖν καὶ τὸ μείζον καὶ τὸ ἔλαττον ἀλλὰ καὶ σύμπαντα τὰ τοιαῦτα; οὐ γὰρ περὶ τοῦ ῥεῖν νῦν ὁ λόγος

10 γενόμενοι: (after) being born; aor.

γίγνομαι
ἐωρῶμεν, εἴχομεν: 1p impf. ὥρα, ὥρα, ἔχω
12 πάνω γε: quite so, quite indeed
c1 δέ γε: and indeed; emphasizing the entire clause

φαμέν: 1p pres. φημί
2 εἰληφέναι: that we...; pf. act. inf.

λαμβάνω, supply the acc. subject ἡμᾶς
4 πρὶν γενέσθαι: before being born

ὁς ἔοικεν: as it seems, as seems likely

ἀνάγκη: (it is) necessary; supply verb
If, as 'what is'," Fo

Philosophical Vocabular

 dó: for…; dat. of interest
tóuton pántwn: partitive gen.
tóu genótita: being born; articular inf.
5 eilhíme: pf. inf. λαμβάνω + gen.
6 ἔστι: are the case; i.e. are true
7 ἐπιλελήσμεθα: pf. mid. ἐπιλανθάνομαι
8 eido: pf. pple oíða; modified by áei
γλυκεσθαι (ἀναγκαῖον ἐστί): it is
necessary to be born
eidénai: pf. inf. oíða, pres. in sense
10 ἀπολωλεκάναι: pf. inf. ἀπ-όλλυμι
légya: call (x)(y); governs a double acc.
(acc. direct object + acc. predicate)
11 ἀποβολήν: in apposition to τούτο

ΦΑΙΔΩΝ
75d
71

ἡμῶν μᾶλλον τι ἢ καὶ περὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ καλοῦ καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἁγαθοῦ καὶ δικαίου καὶ ὀσίου καὶ, ὅπερ λέγω, περὶ ἀπάντων

ὁς ἐπισφραγίζομεθα τὸ ἀὐτὸ ὅ ἐστι’ καὶ ἐν ταῖς ἐρωτήσεωι ἐρωτώντει καὶ ἐν ταῖς ἀποκρίσεωι ἀποκρινόμενοι.

ὡςτε ἀναγκαῖον ἡμῶν τούτων πάντων τὰς ἐπιστήμας πρὸ τοῦ γενέσθαι εἰληφέναι.

ἀπαντεικνύομαι: to forget, 3

ἐπι-σφαγίζω: put a seal on, stamp a seal on, 1
ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 10
ἐρωτήσεις, -eis n: questioning, interrogating 1
λήθη, ἢ: forgetfulness, 1
ὀσιος, -α, -ον: hallowed, sacred, ordained, 4
πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 13

11 οὐ…μᾶλλον τι ἢ: not…at all more than…;
τι is adv. acc. (acc. of degree by extent)
αὐτοῦ: itself
tοῦ καλοῦ…τοῦ ἁγαθοῦ...(τοῦ) δικαίου
...(τοῦ) ὀσίου: the beautiful itself…the good itself…; substantives, supply the articles
d1 ὅπερ: just as….; ‘the very thing which’

2 ὅτι: on which; dat. of compound verb
tὸ ἀὑτὸ ὃ ἐστι’: the (seal) ’what it is’
ἐν ταῖς ἐρωτήσεωι…ἀποκρινόμενοι: in

questions (when) questioning and in

answers (when) answering

4 ὡςτε ἀναγκαῖον ἐστια: so as to be

necessary to…; ὡςτε governs an inf.

Philosophical Vocabulary:

tὸ ἀὑτὸ δ ἐστί’ “the thing itself, which is”

Fowler translates this difficult phrase as “the absolute,” Jowett as “essence,” Rowe as “the seal ‘what is’,” and Grube as “the word ‘itself’.” The editor’s punctuation suggests that the article τὸ creates a substantive out of the entire phrase αὐτὸ δ ἐστί (thus, τὸ αὐτὸ is not ‘the same’). If, as Grube suggests, αὐτὸ mirrors the uses of the intensive αὐτοῦ in c11 above and is used proleptically, as in 75b5-6 (αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἰσοῦ ὃτι ἐστιν, ‘what the equal itself is’), then we may translate αὐτὸ δ ἐστί as ‘what itself is.’ For more interpretations, see Rowe’s Phaedo, p. 175.
e πάντως δήπου, ἐφη, ὡς Σωκράτες.

ei δέ γε οἴμαι λαβόντες πρὶν γενέσθαι γιγνόμενοι ἀπωλέσαμεν, ὑστερον δὲ ταῖς αἰσθήσεις χρώμενοι περὶ αὐτὰ ἐκεῖνας ἀναλαμβάνομεν τὰς ἐπιστήμας ἃς ποτε καὶ πρὶν εἴχομεν, ἃρ’ οὖχ δ’ καλοῦμεν μανθάνειν οἰκεῖαν ἢν ἐπιστήμην ἀναλαμβάνειν ἐη; τούτο δέ που ἀναμμηνήσκεσθαι λέγοντες ὀρθῶς ἢν λέγομεν;

πάνυ γε.

76 δυνατὸν γὰρ δὴ τούτο γε ἐφάνη, αἰσθόμενον τι ἢ ἴδόντα ἢ ἀκούσαντα ἢ των ἄλλην αἰσθήσων λαβόντα ἔτερον τι ἀπὸ τούτον ἐννοήσαι ὁ ἐπελέληστο, ὁ τούτο ἐπλησίασθαν ἀνόμοιον ἢν ἢ ὁ ὁμοιόν ὡστε, ὑπὲρ λέγω, δυνών θάτερα, ήτοι ἐπιστάμενοι γι αὐτὰ γεγόναμεν καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα διὰ βίου πάντες,

ἄνθισται: know, know how, understand, 13
ἣν: now surely, truly, either 4
μαθήματος: to learn, understand, 12
οἰκείος, -α, -ον: one’s own; subst. relatives, 4
πάντως: entire, absolutely, 3
πλησίασω: to be near, bring near, 2
ὑστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; adv. later 17
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11

noun is acc. subject of aor. inf. ἐννοήσαι
ιδόντα: acc. sg. aor. pple ὅδος (ἐδώ)

2 ἔτερον τι: object. of aor. inf. ἐννοήσαι
3 τούτου: this; referring to τι
ὅ: which; the antecedent is τούτου
ἐπελέληστο: plpf. pass. ἐπιλαμβάνομαι
ὅ...δυμοιον: with which this was associated,
being unlike it or like it; i.e. to which this perceived thing was associated

4 ὑπέρ: just as; ‘the very thing which’
δυνή: of two; dual gen.
θάτερα: one; crasis for τα ἔτερα
ἥτιοι...γε... hỏng: either...in fact...or; ἥτιοι
opens a disjunction where the first choice is
more probable while γε is emphatic and
restrictive: i.e. ‘this and no other’ (GP 119)
5 γεγόναμεν: we are born; pf. γίγνομαι

αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
αἰσθήσις, -εσις: sensation, perception, 19
ἀπό-όμιος, -ον: unlike, dissimilar to (dat.) 4
ἀνα-λαμβάνω: to find, take back, recover, 3
ἀνα-μιμήσκω: remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16
δή-που: perhaps, I suppose; of course, 8
δυνατός, -ή, -όν: capable, strong, possible, 8
ἐν-νοεῖν: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
ἐπι-λαμβάνομαι: to forget, 3
ὅς ὦστερον, οὕς φαμεν μανθάνειν, οὐδὲν ἀλλ' ὅ ἄναμμη-σκονται οὔτοι, καὶ ὁ μάθησις ἄνάμμησις ἂν εἴη.
καὶ μᾶλα δὴ οὔτως ἔχει, ὡς Σώκρατες.
πότερον οὖν αἰρῆ, ὡς Σιμμία; ἐπισταμένους ἦμᾶς γεγονέναι, ὅ ἄναμμησκεσθαι ὦστερον ἂν πρότερον ἐπιστήμην ἐιληφότες ἦμεν;
οὐκ ἔχω, ὡς Σώκρατες, ἐν τῷ παρόντι ἐλέσθαι.
τί δὲ; τόδε ἔχεις ἐλέσθαι, καὶ πῇ σοι δοκεῖ περὶ αὐτοῦ; ἄνηρ ἐπιστάμενος περὶ ὧν ἐπισταται ἔχοι ἂν δοῦναι λόγον ὃ ὦ;
πολλῇ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη, ὡς Σώκρατες.
ὅ καὶ δοκοῦσί σοι πάντες ἔχειν διδόναι λόγον περὶ τοῦ-των ἂν νυνδὴ ἐλέγομεν;

ὦστερον: to seize, take; mid. choose, 4
ἀναμμηνήσκω: remind, recall (acc. gen.) 16
ἀνάμμησις, -εος, ὃ: recollection, recall, 11
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
ἐπισταμαι: know, know how, understand, 13
μάθησις, -εος, ὁ: learning, instruction, 6
μᾶλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
μανθάνω: to learn, understand, 12
νῦν-δὴ: just now, 15
πῇ: in what way, how, 5
πότερος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
πολλῇ: many.

6 οὔς: (these) whom...; relative, acc. subj. of inf., the antecedent is the following οὔτοι
οὐδὲν ἀλλ(α) ὧ...οὔτοι: these are doing nothing other than recollecting
7 ἂν εἴη: would...; potential opt. εἰμί
8 καὶ μᾶλα δη: and very much indeed
οὔτως ἔχει: is so; see p. 7
9 πότερον: which one?
αἰρῆ: αἰρό(σ)αί, 2s pres. mid. αἰρέω
γεγονέναι: that...are born; ind. disc., pf. inf. γίνομαι
b1 εἰληφότες ἦμεν: periphrastic 1s plpf.
(pf. pple + impf. εἰμί), λαμβάνω
3 ἔχω: I am able; as often with an inf.
παρόντι: i.e. present time; pple πάρεμι

76a ΦΑΙΔΩΝ 76a

4 τί δὲ: what (then)?; used to express surprise or introduce a new question, i.e. what about the following?
5 ἄνηρ: a man; indefinite
περὶ ὧν: concerning (the things) which;
περὶ τοῦτων ὡς; acc. pl. relative attracted into gen. of missing antecedent
ἔχοι ὡς: would be able; ἔχω + inf.
δοῦναι λόγον: to give an account; aor. inf. δίδωμι

8 ὅ καὶ...πάντες: does everyone actually seem...?; ὅ introduces a question, καὶ is adverbial
ἔχειν διδοναι λόγον: see line 5
βουλοίμην μεντάν, ἔφη ὁ Σιμμίας· ἀλλὰ πολὺ μᾶλλον
φοβοῦμαι μὴ αὖριον τηνικάδε οὐκέτι ἣ ἀνθρώπων οὐδεὶς
ἀξίως οἷός τε τοῦτο ποιῆσαι.

οὐκ ἄρα δοκοῦσι σοι ἐπίστασθαι γε, ἔφη, ὡς Σιμμία,
πάντες αὐτά;

οὐδαμῶς.

ἀναμμήσκονται ἄρα ἢ ποτε ἐμαθον;

ἀνάγκη.

πότε λαβοῦσαι αἱ ψυχαὶ ἡμῶν τὴν ἐπιστήμην αὐτῶν; οὐ
gὰρ δὴ ἀφ’ οὐ γε ἀνθρωποι γεγόναμεν.

οὐ δῆτα.

πρότερον ἄρα.

ναι.

ναι: yes, yea, 15
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 11
οὐκ-ἐτι: no more, no longer, no further, 4
πότε: when, at what time, 2
τηνικάδε: at this time, then, 1
φοβέω: to terrify, frighten; mid. fear, 15

ποιῆσαι: aor. inf. ποιέω
c4 ἃ: (the things) which; supply the missing antecedent, obj. of main verb
ἐμαθον: aor. ἀμαθάνω
λαβοῦσαι: fem. pl. nom. aor. pple λαμβάνω

οὐ γὰρ δῆ: for certainly not...; GP 243
ἀπ(ό) ὅ: after the time which; ‘from which (time)’

γεγόναμεν: 1p pf. γένομαι, ‘be born’
ὁ σαν ἄρα, ὁ Συμμία, αἱ ψυχαὶ καὶ πρότερον, πρὶν εἶναι ἐν ἀνθρώπου εἶδει, χωρὶς σωμάτων, καὶ φρόνησιν εἶχον.

εἰ μὴ ἄρα ἁμα γιγνόμενοι λαμβάνομεν, ὁ Σώκρατες,

ταῦτας τὰς ἐπιστήμας· οὕτως γὰρ λείπεται ἢτοι ὁ χρόνος.

εἶλα, ὃ ἐταίρη· ἀπόλλυμεν δὲ αὕτὰς ἐν ποιῷ ἄλλῳ χρόνῳ;

—οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἔχοντες γε αὕτὰς γιγνόμεθα, ὡς ἢρτι ἀμολογή-

σαμεν—ἡ ἐν τούτῳ ἀπόλλυμεν ἐν φτερ καὶ λαμβάνομεν; ἡ

ἔχεις ἄλλον τνὰ εἰπεῖν χρόνον;

οὐδαμῶς, ὁ Σώκρατες, ἀλλὰ ἔλαθον ἐμαυτὸν οὐδὲν εἰπ-

ὦν.

ἀρ’ οὖν οὕτως ἔχει, ἐφη, ἠμῖν, ὁ Συμμία; εἰ μὲν ἔστιν

εἴδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17

ἐταίρος, ο: a comrade, companion, mate, 11

λανθάνω: to escape notice of; forget, 7

λείπω: to leave, forsake, abandon, 1

οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 11

11 ἦσαν: existed; 3p impf. εἰμί

καὶ πρότερον: previously in fact

πρὶν...: before…; + inf. εἰμί

12 εἶδε: εἰδε-τ, dat. sg. εἴδος, -εος, τό

14 εἰ μὴ: unless…

ἀμα γιγνόμενοι: at the same time as being

15 λείπεται: is left; i.e. remains to be

εἶλα: well then

1 ἀπόλλυμεν: we lose

2 οὖ γὰρ δὴ: for certainly…not

ὠς: as

ποίος, -α, -ον: what sort of? what kind of?, 9

φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, 15

χωρίς: separately; apart from, without (gen.)

6

3 ἢ...ἢ: either...or

ἐν τούτῳ (χρόνῳ)...ἐν φτερ (χρόνῳ): in

this time in which...

καὶ: also

4 ἔχεις: are you able; ἔχω + inf.

5 ἔλαθον: 1s aor. λανθάνω; often with a

complementary pple this verb must be

translated impersonally: ‘it escaped my

notice that I spoke…’

οὐδὲν: nonsense; i.e. nothing important

7 οὕτως ἔχει: is so; see p. 7

ἔστιν: exists
Argument from Recollection

| αἰσθήσεις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19 | θρυλέω: chatter about, talk over and over, 2
| ἄλλος: otherwise, in another way, 14 | καταφεύγει: takes refuge; i.e. concludes
| ἄνα-φέρω: to report, bring up, recover, 2 | εἰς καλὸν: at the right moment; καί...γε emphasizes the intervening words, εἰς καλὸν is idiomatic
| ἄν-ευρίσκομεν: to find out, discover, 2 | καταφεύγει: takes refuge; i.e. concludes
| ἀπ-εἰκάζομαι: compare, copy from a model, 2 | εἰς τὸ: in equally our soul existing and...; τὸ εἶναι is an articular inf. following εἰς
| ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our, 5 |

8 ἂ: just as...; ‘(things) which...’
parenthetical
καλὸν...τι: something beautiful and something....

9 ἐπὶ ταῦτην...ἀναφέρομεν: we compare all these sensations to this; see 75b6

11 ἀνευρίσκομεν: finding (this); add ταὐτὴν, the participles ὑπάρχουσαν, οὕσαν modify this missing fem. sg. acc. object
πρότερον: comparative adv.

13 ἐκεῖνη: to that one; i.e. to ταὐτὴν above
ἀναγκαῖον: (it is) necessary; supply verb

14 οὗτος...ἐστιν: just as these things actually exist; καί is adverbial

3 οὗτος καὶ...καί πρὶν: so also...even before

4 γεγονόναι: pf. γίγνομαι

5 ἔστι: exist; neuter pl. subject

OLVE: in vain

ἄν...εἰρημένος εἶ: would have been said; potential opt., periphrastic pf. (pf. pass. ππλε λογέω (ἐρ) + εἰμί)

Ἰσο ἀνάγκη: (is it) equally necessary...

6 τε...καί: that both...and; two acc. subjects

8 η λαύτη ἀνάγκη: the same necessity

77 τὸ ὁμοίως εἶναι τὴν τε ψυχὴν ἦμῶν πρὶν γενέσθαι ἦμᾶς καὶ

76d Argument from Recollection

ἄθρυλομέν, ἂ, καλὸν τέ τι καὶ ἁγαθὸν καὶ πάσα ἡ τοιαύτη οὐσία, καὶ ἐπὶ ταὐτὴν τὰ ἐκ τῶν αἰσθήσεων πάντα ἀν-εφέρομεν, ὑπάρχουσαν πρότερον ἀνευρίσκομεν ὑμετέραν οὕσαν, καὶ ταῦτα ἐκεῖνη ἀπεικάζομεν, ἀναγκαῖον, οὕτως ὡστερ καὶ ταῦτα ἠστίν, οὕτως καὶ τὴν ἁμετέραν ψυχὴν εἶναι καὶ πρὶν γεγονόναι ἦμᾶς. εἰ δὲ μὴ ἔστι ταῦτα, ἄλλως ἄν ὁ λόγος οὕτος εἰρημένος εἶ; ἃρ′ οὕτως ἔχει, καὶ ἵσθα ἀνάγκη ταῦτά τε εἶναι καὶ τὰς ἁμετέρας ψυχὰς πρὶν καὶ ἦμᾶς γεγονόναι, καὶ εἰ μὴ ταῦτα, οὐδὲ τάδε;

ὑπερφυῶς, ἂ Ἔωκρατε, ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης, δοκεῖ μοι ἡ αὐτὴ ἀνάγκη εἶναι, καὶ εἰς καλὸν γε καταφεύγει ὁ λόγος εἰς τὸ ὁμοίως εἶναι τὴν τε ψυχὴν ἦμῶν πρὶν γενέσθαι ἦμᾶς καὶ
ἐπιστέω: to distrust, not believe (+ dat.), 8
ἀπο-δείκνυμι: demonstrate, prove, 11
ἐν-αργῆς,-ες: visible, distinct, manifest, 4
ἐν-δεός: defectively, insufficiently, 3
ἐν-ιστημι: to set or place in, stand in, 1
καίτοι: and yet, and indeed, and further, 8
καρτερός, -ά, -άν: staunch, patient, steadfast, 2
νυν-δή: just now, 15
οὐσία, ἡ: being, essence, substance, 6

2 τὴν οὐσίαν: and the essence; acc. subject parallel to τὴν ψυχὴν
οὐ...οὐδὲν οὗτος...ὡς τούτο: not...anything so...as this; correlatives
3 ὡς οἷον τε (ἔστιν) μάλιστα: as much as possible; ‘as greatly as it is possible,’ οἷος τε εἰμι, ‘I am the sort’ is a common idiom for ‘I am able,’ here the construction is impersonal: ‘it is possible’
4 ἡμί-γαθεῖ: (as) it seems to me at least; parenthetical
ἀποδείκται: pf. pass. ἀποδείκνυμι
καὶ: also

8 ὡς: as...; parenthetical, οἷομαι
9 ἔστιν: (Cebes) is...; + superlative adj.
πρὸς: with regard to...; + articular inf.
10 οὐκ ἐνδεδοι: i.e. sufficiently, litotes
πεπειθθαί: pf. act. mid. πείθω
ὀτι: namely that...; in apposition to τοῦτο

1 ἤν: existed; 3s impf. εἰμί
καϊ: in fact, actually
ἀποθανομεν: aor. subj. ἀποθνῄσκω in an indefinite temporal clause
2 ἔσται: 3s fut. εἰμι
αὐτῶ μοι: even to me; intensive
ἀποδειχθαί: pf. pass. inf.
3 ένεστηκεν: stands in the way; pf. ένιστημι
τὸ τῶν πολλῶν: that (fear) of the masses; the
πολλῶν, ὃπως μὴ ἃμα ἀποθνῄσκοντος τοῦ ἀνθρώπου δια-
σκεδάννυται ἡ ψυχή καὶ αὐτὴ τοῦ ἐστὶ τοῦτο τέλος ἥ. τί
γὰρ κωλύει γίγνεσθαι μὲν αὐτὴν καὶ συνίστασθαι ἄλλοθέν
ποθεὶ καὶ εἶναι πρὶν καὶ εἰς ἀνθρώπειον σῶμα ἀφικέσθαι,
ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἀφίκηται καὶ ἀπαλλάττηται τοῦτον, τότε καὶ αὐτὴν
tελευτὰν καὶ διαφθείρεσθαι;
καὶ εὖ λέγεις, ἔφη, ὡ Συμμία, ὁ Κέβης. φαίνεται γὰρ
ὁσπερ ἢμιν ἀποδείξεσθαι σὺ δεῖ, ὅτι πρὶν γενέσθαι ἡμὰς
ἡ ἡμῶν ἡ ψυχή, δεῖ δὲ προσαποδείξαι ὅτι καὶ ἐπειδὰν
ἀποθάνωμεν οὐδὲν ἥττον ἔσται ἡ πρὶν γενέσθαι, εἰ μέλλει
τέλος ἡ ἀποδείξεις ἔξεων.
ἀποδείκται μὲν, ἔφη, ὡ Συμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, ὁ

4 ὃπως μὴ...διασκεδάννυται...ἡ: (the fear) that...; ‘(the fear) lest...’ fearing clause, ὃπως μὴ may be used instead of μὴ to
suggest something that will happen (S 2230); διασκεδάννυται appears indicative but is a variation for διασκεδαννύηται, pres. subj. (S 749c); ἡ is 3s subj. εἰμί
ἀμα: at the same time as...: + gen. abs.
5 τοῦ εἰναί: of existing
6 αὐτὴν: that it...; i.e. the soul, acc. subject
συνίστασθαι: be put together
καὶ: actually, in fact
8 ἀφίκηται, ἀπαλλάττηται: 3s subj. in
an indefinite temporal clause
τοῦτου: from this; i.e. body, separation
καὶ αὐτὴν: that it also...; adverbial καὶ
9 τελευτᾷν: inf., α-contract verb
c1 φαίνεται... ὡσπερ: it seems as if
2 ἡμῖν: acc. subject of pf. pass. inf.
οὗ δεῖ: of (that) which it is necessary (to be
proven); relative, partitive gen.
ὅτι: (namely) that...
3 ἥν: existed; 3s impf. εἰμί
4 οὐδέν: not at all; adv. acc. (acc. of extent
by degree) with comparative adv ἢττον
ἔσται: 3s fut. deponent εἰμί
5 ἔξεων: fut. inf. ἔχω
6 ἀποδείκται: it has been proven; pf. pass.
impersonal
Σωκράτης, καὶ νῦν, εἰ 'θέλετε συνθέναι τούτον τε τὸν λόγον εἰς ταῦταν καὶ ὅν πρὸ τοῦτον ὁμολογήσαμεν, τὸ γίγνεσθαι πάν τὸ ἡμῶν ἐκ τοῦ τεθνεῶτος. εἰ γὰρ ἔστω μὲν ἡ ψυχὴ καὶ πρότερον, ἀνάγκη δὲ αὐτῆς εἰς τὸ ζῆν Ἰούσῃ τε καὶ γιγνομένη μηδαμόθεν ἄλλοθεν ἡ ἐκ θανάτου καὶ τοῦ τεθναναί γίγνεσθαι, πῶς οὖν ἀνάγκη αὐτῆς καὶ ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνῃ εἶναι, ἐπειδὴ γε δεῖ αὐτὴν γίγνεσθαι; ἀπο- δεδεικται μὲν οὖν ὅπερ λέγετε καὶ νῦν. ὃμως δὲ μοι δοκεῖ· τίς οὖν ἂν καὶ τοῦτον διαπραγματεύσασθαι τὸν λόγον ἐτὶ καθίσεσθαι, καὶ δειδέαι τὸ τῶν παίδων, μὴ ὡς ἄληθῶς ὡς ἄνεμος αὐτῆς ἐκβαίνουσαν ἐκ τοῦ σώματος δια- φυσά καὶ διασκεδάννυσαν, ἄλλως τε καὶ ὅταν τύχῃ τις μὴ ἐν νηνεμία ἀλλ᾽ ἐν μεγάλῳ τινὶ πνεύματι ἀποθνήσκων.

7 καὶ νῦν: even now; with previous verb (ἐ)θέλετε: 2p ἔθλω συνθῆκε: aor. inf. συντίθημι
8 εἰς ταῦταν: into the same; i.e. combine the two arguments to the same argument καὶ δὲ: and (the other argument) which…; relative, supply λόγου as antecedent τὸ γίγνεσθαι…τεθνεῶτος: (namely) that every thing (is) a thing born from the dead; articular infs., gen. sg. pf. θυσίκω
9 καὶ: also; + comparative adv. d1 ἀνάγκη: (it is) necessary αὐτῇ: for it; dat. of interest Ιούσῃ: dat. sg. pres. pple ἤρχομαι
2 τοῦ τεθναναί: from being dead; articular pf. inf. θυσίκω; γίγνεσθαι is governed by ἀνάγκη
3 ἀνάγκη· εἶναι: (it is) necessary + inf. εἰμί
4 ἀποθάνη· 3s aor. subj. ἀποθνήσκω in ἔθλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17 ἐκ-βαίνω: to step out, disembark, 5 ἡδέω: sweetly, pleasantly, gladly, 6 μηδαμόθεν: from no place, from nowhere, 2 νηνεμία ἦ: stillness in the air, calm (weather) 1 ὃμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13 παιδί, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 6 πνεύμα, -ατός, τό: breath, wind, blast, 5 συν-τίθημι: to put together, combine, 7 an indefinite temporal clause ἐπειδή: since…; causal ἀποδεικται: has been proven; pf. pass. 5 μὲν οὖν: then; inferential οὖν, the μὲν is answered by ὃμως δὲ in the same line καὶ νῦν: also now; with main verb 6 ἄν…διαπραγματεύσασθαι…καὶ: that you both would examine…; and; governed by 2s δοκεῖς; ἄν + inf. is equivalent to a potential opt. in direct speech 7 δειδέαι: pf. inf. δείδω, τὸ τῶν παιδῶν: that (fear) of children 8 μὴ…διαφορὰ καὶ διασκεδάννυσα: that…; ‘lest…’ fearing clause, pres. subjunctive of an α-contract verb; διασκεδάννυσα looks indicative (see 77b4) but is a variation of διασκεδασάννυσα (S 749c)
1 εἰ ἄλλος…καὶ: especially; both otherwise and τύχῃ: 3s aor. subj. + pple, see p. 20
καὶ ὁ Κέβης ἐπιγελάσας, ὡς δεδιότων, ἑφη, ὁ Σωκράτες, πειρῶ ἀναπείθεω· μᾶλλον δὲ μὴ ὃς ἦμων δεδιότων, ἀλλ’ ἵσως ἔν τις καὶ ἐν ἦμων παῖς ὡς τὰ τοιαῦτα φοβεῖται. τούτων οὖν πειρῶ μεταπείθεω μὴ δεδιέναι τὸν θάνατον ὃσπερ τὰ μορμολύκεια.

ἀλλὰ χρῆ, ἑφη ὁ Σωκράτης, ἐπάδειν αὐτῷ ἐκάστης ἡμέρας ἐως ἂν ἐξετάσητε.

πόθεν οὖν, ἑφη, ὁ Σωκράτες, τῶν τοιούτων ἀγαθῶν ἐπώδον λῃσόμεθα, ἐπειδὴ σὺ, ἑφη, ἡμᾶς ἀπολείπεις.

πολλή μὲν ἡ Ἑλλάς, ἑφη, ὁ Κέβης, ἐν ἂν ἔνοικο πο ἀγαθοὶ ἄνδρες, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ τὰ τῶν βαρβάρων γένη, οἷς πάντας χρῆ διερευνᾶσθαι ζητοῦντας τοιοῦτον ἐπώδον, μήτε ἐως: until, as long as, 15

ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 9

ἡμέρα: day, 7

ἰδιος: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19

μετα-πείθω: to persuade to change, 1

μή-τε: and not, neither...nor, 15

μορμολύκειος, τὸ: hobgoblin, bogeyman, 1

παις, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ: child, boy, girl; slave, 6

πειράω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11

πό-θεν: from where, 2

φοβέω: to terrify, frighten; mid. fear, 15

ην-ειμι: to be in or within, 8

ἐξ-επ-φι: to charm away, 1

ἐπ-φιδω: to chant at, sing to, (dat.) 2

ἐπι-φιδω, ὁ: singer, enchanter, 2

ἐπι-γελάω: laugh (approvingly), smile on, 2

ἐνα-πείθω: persuade, convince, 1

ἀπο-λείμω: leave behind, abandon, forsake, 7

βάρβαρος, ὁ: foreigner, a non-Greek, 1

γένος, -eos, τό: lineage, family, stock; race, 7

δείδω: fear, dread, shrink from, feel awe, 11

διερεύνω: examine thoroughly, track down

Ἑλλάς, -άδος, ἡ: Greece, 1

ἐν-ειμι: to be in or within, 8

ἐξ-επ-φι: to charm away, 1

πολλή: (is) great

πολείπεις: to seek, look for, investigate, 9

τοιοτων: this one; i.e. the child

τοιον: pl. pres.

τοια: pf. inf. δείδω

τε-και-ενια: that (we) are afraid, ‘on the ground that (we) are afraid,’ ὡς + pple (here, gen. abs. with the pf. pple δείδω and a missing noun) expresses alleged cause.

Cebes is not asserting this clause as factual but asking Socrates to argue on such grounds

4 πειράω: keep on trying...!; πειράες(ό)σ, pres. mid. sg. imperative suggests ongoing action rather than simple action (e.g. ‘try!’)

μᾶλλον δὲ: but rather

μὴ ὡς... δεδιότων: (try to persuade us) not assuming we are afraid; ‘not on the grounds...’ see line 3 above

5 έν τις καὶ ἐν...: there is some child even inside...; ἓν is an variation for ἐν-εστι

6 τοιοτων: this one; i.e. the child

πειράω: see l. 4

δεδιέναι: pf. inf. δείδω

8 ἐκάστης ἡμέρας: (during) each day; gen. of time within

72a2 λῃσόμεθα: will we find; fut. λαμβάνω

3 πολλή: (is) great; supply linking ἐστίν

ἐνειο: there are; 3rd pl. pres. ἐν-ειμι

4 πολλά: (are) great; supply linking ἐστίν
χρημάτων φειδομένους μήτε πόνων, ὡς οὐκ ἔστιν εἰς ὁτι ἄν εὐκαιρότερον ἀναλάσκοιτε χρήματα. ζητεῖν δὲ χρή καὶ αὐτούς μετ᾽ ἀλλήλων· ἵσως γὰρ ἄν οὐδὲ ῥάδιως εὑροῖτε μᾶλλον ύμῶν δυναμένους τούτο ποιεῖν.

ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ, ἐφη, ὑπάρξει, ὁ Κέβης· δὲν δὲ ἀπελάσθωμεν ἐπανέλθωμεν, εἰ σοι ἡδομένῳ ἔστιν.

ἀλλὰ μην ἡδομένῳ γε· πῶς γὰρ οὐ μέλλει; καλῶς, ἐφη, λέγεις.

οὐκοίν τοιόνδε τί, ὥς ὑς ὁ Σωκράτης, δεῖ ἠμᾶς ἀνερέσθαι ἐαυτοὺς, τῷ ποίῳ τωι ἄρα προσήκει τούτο τὸ πάθος πάσχειν, τὸ διασκεδάννυσθαι, καὶ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποίου τωις δεδιέναι μὴ πάθη αὐτῷ, καὶ τῷ ποίῳ τωι οὐ· καὶ μετὰ τούτῳ αὖ

---

6 φειδομένους: governs gen. of separation ὡς οὐκ ἔστιν εἰς ὁτι: as there is nothing upon which; ὁ τί, neuter acc. sg. of ὅστις
7 ἀν...ἀναλάσκοιτε: you could...; potential opt.
8 (ὑμᾶς) αὐτοῦς: yourselves; acc.
9 ἀν εὐροίτε: you would...; potential aor. opt.
10 ὡς ἄν...μὲν δὴ: well...certainly in fact (S 2900)
11 ὑπάρξει: will happen; 'will be', fut.
12 δὲ: but...; adverbative
13 ἀπελάσθωμεν: aor. ἀπολάτρυος
14 ἐπανέλθωμεν: let us...; hortatory subj., 1p aor. subj. ἐπαν-ἐρχομαι
15 εἰ σοι ἡδομένῳ ἔστιν: if it is for you, "being pleased; i.e. it is pleasing to you
16 ὁ...τό: from where, from which, 4 πάθος -εος τό: experience incident passion 11 ποίος, -α, -ον: what sort of? what kind of?, 9 πόνος, ὁ: work, toil, 1 προσ-ήκει: it belongs to, it is fitting, befits 15 ράδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 9 ύπ-ἀρχα: be there, be ready, be available, 4 ύπερ: above, on behalf of (gen.); over, beyond (acc.), 6 φειδομαι: to spare, use sparingly (gen) 2 χρήμα, -ατος τό: money, possessions, thing, 6

2 ἀλλὰ μὴν...γε: Well yes, certainly pleased γε is emphatic and can be left untranslated οὐ μέλλει: i.e. it is pleasing to
3 καλῶς: well
5 ἐαυτοὺς: ourselves; ‘oneselves,’ reflexive τῷ ποίῳ τωι...τοῦτο: to what sort at all to suffer this experience then belongs; τό is an article on ποίω, not uncommon in Plato
6 τὸ διασκεδάννυσθαι: (namely) to...; an appositive ὑπὲρ τοῦ...δεδιέναι: on behalf of what sort at all (we) fear lest it suffer τῷ ποίῳ...ου: to what sort at all (to suffer this experience does) not (belong)
ἐπισκέψασθαι πότερον ἡ ὑψηλή ἐστιν, καὶ ἐκ τοῦτων
θαρρεῖν ἡ δεδεινα ὑπὲρ τῆς ἡμετέρας ὑψηλῆς;

άληθη, ἔφη, λέγεις.

c ἀν’ οὖν τῷ μὲν συντεθέντι τε καὶ συνθέτῳ ὄντι φύσει
 προσήκει τούτῳ πάσχειν, διαφερθήναι ταύτῃ ἠπερ συνετήθη:
 εἰ δὲ τι τυγχάνει ὃν ἄσωνθεν, τούτῳ μόνῳ προσήκει μὴ
 πάσχειν ταῦτα, εἰπὲρ τῷ ἄλλῳ;

δοκεῖ μοι, ἔφη, οὕτως ἔχειν, ὁ Κέβης.

οὐκὸν ἀπερ ᾗ οἷᾳ κατὰ ταύτα καὶ ὠςαῦτως ἔχει, ταῦτα
 μάλιστα εἰκὸς ἐναι τὰ ἀσώθεντα, τὰ δὲ ἄλλοτε ἄλλως καὶ
 μηδέποτε κατὰ ταύτα, ταῦτα δὲ σύνθετα;

ἔμοιγε δοκεὶ οὕτως.

---

άλλοτε: at another time, at other times, 4
ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
ἀ-σύνθετος, -ον: uncompounded, 2
διέδω: fear, dread, shrink from, feel awe, 11
δι-αἵρέω: to divide, separate, 3
εἰκός, ὁτος, τὸ: likely, probable, reasonable 18
ἐπι-σκέπτομαι: to examine, inspect, 2
ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον: our, 5
θαρρέω: be confident, take courage; be bold 9

μηδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 8
προσ-ήκει: it belongs to, it is fitting, befits 15
συν-θέτω, -ον: put together, composite, 4
συν-τιθήμι: to put together, combine, 7
ὑπέρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); over, beyond (acc.), 6
φύσις, -εως, ἡ: nature, character; form, 11
ὡς-αὐτός: in the same manner, just so, 4

οὕτως ἔχειν: see p. 7

ἀπερ...ταύτα: whatever...these things...;
ταύτα is the antecedent of relative ἀπερ
κατὰ ταύτα: in the same way; ‘in regard to
the same things’ κατὰ τὰ αὐτὰ may be
synonymous with ὠςαῦτως and used for
emphasis

εἰκός: (it is) likely that; supply verb,
this constructive governs acc. subj. + inf.
τὰ δὲ ἄλλοτε ἄλλως: but things
sometimes one way other times another
way; for ἄλλοτε ἄλλως see S 1274

κατὰ ταύτα: in the same way; see above
ταύτα δὲ (εἰκός εὐναι): and (it is likely)
that...; parallel to lines 6-7
ἰομεν δή, ἐφη, ἐπὶ ταὐτὰ ἐφ᾽ ἀπερ ἐν τῷ ἐμπροσθεν λόγῳ. αὐτῇ ἡ σοσία ἦς λόγον δίδομεν τοῦ εἶναι καὶ ἐρω-
τώντες καὶ ἀποκρινόμενοι, πότερον ἡσαύτως ἀδεὶ ἔχει κατὰ ταὐτὰ ἢ ἀλλοτ᾽ ἄλλως; αὐτῷ τὸ ἱσον, αὐτῷ τὸ καλὸν, αὐτῷ ἐκαστὸν ὁ ἔστιν, τὸ ὅν, μὴ ποτὲ μεταβολὴν καὶ ἡμτυνοῦν ἐνδέχεται; ἦ ἀδεὶ αὐτῶν ἐκαστὸν ὁ ἔστι, μονοεἶδὲς ὁν αὐτῷ καθ᾽ αὐτό, ἡσαύτως κατὰ ταὐτὰ ἔχει καὶ οὐδέποτε οὐδαμῇ ὴ
ἀλλοίωσιν οὐδεμιᾶν ἐνδέχεται;

ὡσαύτως, ἐφη, ἀνάγκη, ὁ Κέβης, κατὰ ταὐτὰ ἔχειν, ὁ Σώκρατες.

τί δὲ τῶν πολλῶν καλῶν, οἷον ἀνθρώπων ἦ ἵππων ἦ
ἰματίων ἢ ἄλλων ἀντιπαθῶν τοιούτων, ἦ ἱσον [ἡ καλῶν] ἦ
ἀδής, -ῆς: unseen, invisible, 12
αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἅπαγω: fasten, grasp (gen); kindle, set fire; 11
διάνοια, ἡ: thought, intention, purpose, 6
εἰδος, -εως, τὸ: form, kind, shape, figure, 17
ἐπι-λαμβάνω: to lay hold of, take over, seize, attack, 1
ἐπος, -εως, τὸ: a word, 4
λογισμός, ὁ: a counting, calculation; account, reasoning, 3
μι-ώνυμος, -ου: having the same name as, 1
οὐκ ἔστιν ὀτέρ...ἀλλά...ἡ: there is not (anything) other by which...than...; ἔστιν ὀτέρ (S 2513)
ἀν ἐπιλάβοι(σι): you can...; 2s aor. mid. opt., see a1 above
τὸ λογισμός: by...; means
ἔστιν: there exist; neuter pl. subject
ἀδής: αἰδέα, neuter pl. of adj. ἀδής
ἀληθή: ἀληθέα, neuter pl.
θῶμεν...βούλει: do you wish to set forth; 2s pres. mid.; βούλομαι often accompanies a deliberative subjunctive (aor. τίθημι (θε-)) conflating two questions: ‘what do you want?’ and ‘are we to set forth?’; see 70b6
θῶμεν: let us...; hortatory subj.

79a1 ὀυκόν τοὺς...ἐκείνους ὀμωνῦμων; ἂρα κατὰ ταύτα ἔχει, ἢ πᾶν τοῦναντίον ἐκείνους οὔτε αὐτὰ αὐτοῖς οὔτε ἄλληλοις οὐδέποτε ὡς ἑποῖσ εἰπεῖν οὐδαμῶς κατὰ ταύτα; 5 ὀυτῶς αὖ, ἐφη ὁ Κέβης, ταύτα: οὐδέποτε ὁπαύτως ἔχει.

79 ὀυκοῖν τούτων μὲν κἂν ἄψαι κἂν ἰδεῖ σκλαῖ ἄλλαις αἰσθήσεωι αἰσθῆι, τῶν δὲ κατὰ ταύτα ἐχόντων οὐκ ἔστω ὀτέρ ποτ’ ἢν ἄλλῳ ἐπιλάβου ἢ τῷ τῆς διανοίας λογισμῷ, ἀλλ’ ἔστω αἰδή τὰ τοιαύτα καὶ ὦχ ὀρατά; 5 παντάπασιν, ἐφη, ἀληθῇ λέγεις. θῶμεν οὖν βούλει, ἐφη, δύο εἶδη τῶν ὄντων, τὸ μὲν ὀρατόν, τὸ δὲ αἰδές; θῶμεν, ἐφη.
καὶ τὸ μὲν ἀιδές ἀεὶ κατὰ ταύτα ἔχον, τὸ δὲ ὀρατὸν μηδέποτε κατὰ ταύτα;
καὶ τοῦτο, ἐφη, θάμεν.

φέρε δή, ἢ δ’ ὡς, ἄλλο τι ἡμῶν αὐτῶν τὸ μὲν σῶμα ἐστι, τὸ δὲ ψυχή;
οὐδὲν ἄλλο, ἐφη.

ποτέρῳ ὁνὶ ὀμοιότερον τῷ εἴδει φαμὲν ἂν εἶναι καὶ
συγγενέστερον τὸ σῶμα;

παντί, ἐφη, τοῦτο γε δῆλον, ὅτι τῷ ὀρατῷ.

τὶ δὲ ἡ ψυχή; ὀρατὸν ἢ ἀιδές;

οὐχ ὑπ’ ἀνθρώπων γε, ὁ Σώκρατες, ἐφη.

ἀλλὰ μὴν ἠμείς γε τὰ ὀρατὰ καὶ τὰ μὴ τῇ τῶν ἀνθρώπων
φύσει ἐλέγομεν ἢ ἄλλη τινὶ οἰεῖ;
79b Affinity Argument

τῇ τῶν ἀνθρώπων.
τί οὖν περὶ ψυχῆς λέγομεν; ὁρατὸν ἢ ἀόρατον εἶναι;
οὐχ ὁρατὸν.
ἂδει ἄρα;
ναί.
ὅμοιότερον ἄρα ψυχή σώματος ἐστιν τῷ ἂδει, τὸ δὲ τῷ ὀρατῷ.

πᾶσα ἀνάγκη, ὡς Σώκρατες.
οὐκόν καὶ τὸδε πάλαι ἐλέγομεν, ὡς ἡ ψυχή, ὡσ τὸν ἀόρατον προσχρήται εἰς τὸ σκοπεῖν τι ἡ διὰ τοῦ ὀρατοῦ ἢ διὰ τοῦ ἀκούειν ἢ δι᾽ ἄλλης τινὸς αἰσθήσεως—τούτο γάρ ἐστιν τὸ διὰ τοῦ σώματος, τὸ δὲ ἀισθήσεως σκοπεῖν τι—

ἀδής, -ές: unseen, invisible, 12
αἰσθήσις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19
ἀ-όρατος, -ον: unseen, invisible, 12
ναί: yes, yea, 15

ὁρατός, -ῆς, -όν: to be seen, visible, 17
πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13
προσ-χράμαι: to employ or use in addition (dat.), 2

τῇ (φύσει): to the (nature)...;

ὁμοίότερον: nom. predicate
σώματος: than...; gen. of comparison
τῷ ἂδει: dat. of special adj. ὁμοίότερον
τὸ (σώμα ὁμοίότερον ψυχῆς): that (body is more similar)...(than the soul...)

τῷ ὀρατῷ: dat. of adj. ὁμοίότερον

ἀνάγκη (ἐστίν): it is...; supply verb

πάλαι ἐλέγομεν: we have been saying;
πάλαι suggests pf. progressive

διὰ τοῦ...προσχρήται: whenever...; indefinite temporal clause; the soul is subject

εἰς τὸ...: for...; + articular inf. expressing purpose

ἡ...ἡ...: either... or...

τοῦ ὀρατοῦ: articular inf., object of διὰ

τοῦτο...τὸ διὰ τοῦ σώματος (σκοπεῖν): for examining through the body is this,
(namely); τὸ δι(ά) αἰσθήσεως σκοπεῖν τι is in apposition to τοῦτο
τότε μὲν ἐκεῖται ὑπὸ τοῦ σώματος εἰς τὰ οὐδέποτε κατὰ ταῦτα ἤχοντα, καὶ αὐτὴ πλανᾶται καὶ ταραττεται καὶ ἐιλιγγιά ὡσπερ μεθύουσα, ἀτε τοιούτων ἐφαπτομένην;
πάνυ γε.

ὅταν δὲ γε αὐτὴ καθ’ αὐτῆν σκοτῆ, ἐκείσε οἴχεται εἰς τὸ καθαρόν τε καὶ ἄεὶ ὃν καὶ ἀθάνατον καὶ ὁμαστὸς ἤχον, καὶ ὡς συγγενῆς οὐσα αὐτοῦ ἄεὶ μετ’ ἐκείνου τε γύνεται, ὅτανπερ αὐτῇ καθ’ αὐτὴν γένηται καὶ ἐξῆ αὐτῇ, καὶ πέπαυται τε τοῦ πλάνου καὶ περὶ ἐκείνα ἄεὶ κατὰ ταῦτα ὁμαστὸς ἤχει, ἀτε τοιούτων ἐφαπτομένῃ καὶ τούτῳ αὐτῆς τὸ πάθημα φρόνησις κέκληται;

παντάπασιν, ἐφη, καλῶς καὶ ἄληθῆ λέγεις, ὥ Σώκρατες.

---

ạτε: inasmuch as, since, seeing that (+ pple) 6
eἰλιγγιά: become dizzy, lose one’s head, 1
eἴκε: thither, to that place, 10
eἶκω: to draw, drag; weigh, 3
eἴς-επί: it is allowed, is possible, 3
eἵ-ἀππώ: lay hold of, grasp onto (gen.), 5
eἵθυπα: to be drunk with wine, 1
οἴχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14
ὅτανπερ: whenever, 2
οὐδέποτε: not ever, never, 11

6 ἐκεῖται: pres. passive, ἦ ψυχή is subject
eἰς τὰ... ἤχοντα: to things being...; see p. 7
κατὰ ταῦτα: in the same way; ‘according to the same things,’ κατὰ τὰ αὐτά
7 αὐτή (ἡ ψυχή): (the soul) itself
8 ὡσπερ: as if
ạτε: inasmuch as...; ‘since...’ ἀτε + pple expresses cause from the narrator’s point of view
tοιούτων: partitive gen. with pple
ἐφαπτομένη: pres. passive pple
9 πάνυ γε: quite indeed; common affirmative
d1 ὅταν...σκοτῇ: 3s pres. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
αὐτῆ καθ’ (ἐ)αὐτήν: the soul itself by itself
2 δὲν... ἤχον: neuter sg. pres. pple εἰμί and ἤχω

πάθημα, -ατος, τό: suffering, misfortune, 4
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
παύω: to stop, make cease, 6
πλανάω: make wander; mid. wander, 4
πλάνος, -η, -ον: wandering, deceiving, 2
συγ-γενῆς, -ἐς: related; subst. relative, 6
tαράττω: to trouble, stir, agitate, 6
φρόνησις, -ις, ἦ: intelligence, wisdom, prudence, 15
ὡς-αὑτως: in the same manner, just so, 4

3 ὡς...οὐσα: on the grounds of...; ‘since’ ὡς + pple expresses alleged cause
συγγενῆς...αὐτοῦ: akin to it; adj. may govern a gen. object
4 ἐξῆ: it is allowed; 3rd sg. pres. subj. ἐξεστί αὐτῇ: for...; dat. of interest
πέπαυται: has rest from; pf. pass. παύω governs a gen. of separation
5 περὶ... regarding...
κατὰ ταῦτα: in the same way; τὰ αὐτά
Ạτε: inasmuch as...; see line 8 above
6 αὐτῆς: of it; i.e. of the soul
φρόνησις: nominative pred.
7 κέκληται: 3s pf. pass. καλέω
8 καλῶς: well

αληθή: ἀληθε-α, neuter pl.
ποτέρω ὑν αὐτὶ σοι δοκεῖ τῷ ἐἴδει καὶ ἐκ τῶν πρόσθεν καὶ ἐκ τῶν νῦν λεγομένων ψυχῆς ὁμοίοτερον εἶναι καὶ συγγενέστερον; πάς ἂν μοι δοκεῖ, ἃ δ᾿ ὅς, συγχωρήσαι, ὃ Σύκρατες, ἐκ ταύτης τῆς μεθόδου, καὶ ὁ δυσμαθέστατος, ὅτι ὅλω καὶ παντὶ ὁμοίοτερόν ἐστιν ψυχῆ τῷ ἄει ὡσαύτως ἔχοντι μᾶλλον

ἡ τῷ μὴ.

τί δὲ τὸ σῶμα;

τῷ ἐτέρῳ.

ὁρὰ δὴ καὶ τῇδε ὅτι ἐπειδὰν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ ὅσι ψυχῆ καὶ

80 σῶμα, τῷ μὲν δουλεύειν καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἢ ψυχῆς προστάττει,
τῇ δὲ ἄρχειν καὶ δεσπόζειν· καὶ κατὰ ταῦτα αὖ ποτέρον σοι
dokei ὥμοιον τῷ θείῳ εἶναι καὶ ποτέρον τῷ θυντῷ; ἢ οὐ
dokei σοι τὸ μὲν θείον ὀνὸν ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἑγεμονεύειν πεφυ-
kέναι, τὸ δὲ θυντὸν ἄρχεσθαι τε καὶ δουλεύειν;
είμοιγε.
ποτέρῳ ὁν ἡ ψυχὴ ἔσικεν;
δῆλα δῆ, ὡ Σώκρατες, ὃτι ἡ μὲν ψυχὴ τῷ θείῳ, τὸ δὲ
σώμα τῷ θυντῷ.

σκόπει δῆ, ἐφη, ὡ Κέβης, εἰ έκ πάντων τῶν εἰρημένων
tάδε ἡμῖν συμβαίνει, τῷ μὲν θείῳ καὶ ἀθανάτῳ καὶ νοητῷ
καὶ μονοειδεὶ καὶ ἀδιαλύτῳ καὶ αἰ ὁμοίως κατὰ ταῦτα
ἐξουτε ἐαυτῷ ὁμοιότατον εἶναι ψυχή, τῷ δὲ ἀνθρωπίνῳ καὶ

ά, διαλύτως, -ον: undissoluble, undissolved, 2
ἀνθρώπινος, -η, -ον: belonging to human, human, 7
ἀρχω: to begin; to rule, be leader of, 12
depoζω: to be master, lord, 3
dηλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
dουλευο: to be a slave, serve, be subject to, 3
dιοικα: to be like, seem likely (dat.), 24
ἐγεμονεύω: to lead, rule, command, 3

2 τῇ δὲ: the other; i.e. the soul, parallel to τῷ
mēν, dat. obj. of πρόσταττει
cαὶ κατὰ ταῦτα αὖ: and in regard to these
ποτέρον...ποτέρον: which one...which one...?
4 οἴον ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἑγεμονεύειν: the sort
to...; acc. predicate of πεφυκέναι and
two explanatory (epexegetic) infinitives
πεφυκέναι: that...is (by nature); pf. inf.
φύω: τὸ θείον is subject
5 τὸ θυντὸν: that...; acc. subj. supply
πεφυκέναι οἴον

θεῖος, -α, -ον: divine, sent by the gods, 15
θυντός, -η, -ον: mortal, liable to death, 7
μονο-ειδής, -ές: one in kind, simple, 3
νοητός, -η, -ον: perceptible to the mind, 3
ποτέρος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
συμ-βαινω: to happen, occur, result, 8
φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by
nature, 14
ως-αυτώς: in the same manner, just so, 4

8 δῆλα δῆ: (it is) quite clear
10 σκόπει δῆ: σκόπε-ε sg. imperative, δῆ,
‘now’ or ‘just,’ is emphatic
eιρημένων: pf. pass. pple λέγω (stem ἐρ-)
b₁ τάδε...συμβαίνει: these things result
ἡμῖν: dat. of interest
cατὰ τὰ(α) αὐτά: in the same way
3 ἐξουτε: being; ‘being disposed,’ ‘holding’
ἐαυτῷ: to itself; reflexive
ὁμοιότατον: superlative, acc. predicate
ψυχή (ἐσικεν): supply verb from above

89
Affinity Argument

θητός καὶ πολυείδει καὶ ἀνοητῷ καὶ διαλυτῷ καὶ μηδέποτε
κατὰ ταὐτὰ ἔχοντι ἑαυτῷ ὁμοιότατον αὐτῷ εἰναι σῶμα. ἐξομεν
τι παρὰ ταῦτα ἄλλο λέγειν, αὐ φίλε Κέβης, ὥσ τοις ὑπὲρ
οὐκ ἐξομεν.

τὶ οὖν; τούτων οὕτως ἔχοντων ἀρ' οὐχὶ σώματι μὲν
tαχὺ διαλύεσθαι προσήκει, ψυχῇ δὲ αὐτῷ παράπαν ἄδια-
lύτῳ εἰναι ἣ ἐγγὺς τι τοῦτον;

c πώς γὰρ οὖ;

ἐννοεῖσ ὁν, ἡφη, ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνη ὁ ἄνθρωπος, το μὲν
ὄρατον αὐτοῦ, τὸ σῶμα, καὶ ἐν ὁρατῷ κείμενον, ὁ δὴ νεκρὸν
καλοῦμεν, ὃ προσήκει διαλύεσθαι καὶ διαπίπτειν καὶ δια-
pνεύσθαι, οὐκ εὕθυς τούτων οὐδὲν πέπονθεν, ἀλλ' ἐπιεικῶς

ά-διαλυτός, -ον: undissoluble, undissolved, 2
ά-υόητος, -ον: foolish, unintelligent, 5
dia-λυτός, -ον: capable of dissolving, 1
dia-λύω: to loosen apart, dissolve, 2
dia-πενω: to fall through, 1
dia-πνεω: to blow through, 1
ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 5
ἐν-νοεω: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
ἐπιεικός: suitably, reasonably, 2
eὕθυς: right away, straight, directly, at once, 9

σῶμα (ᾭκειν): supply verb from above 4
ἐξομαι: are we able; + inf.
παρὰ: contrary to...
ὅ οὖν οὕτως ἔχει: how it is not so; in
apposition to ἀλλο τι παρὰ ταύτα
τούτων...ἔχοντων: since these things...
τούτων...ἔχοντων: since these things...

gen. is causal or conditional in sense
προσήκει: is it not fitting...; + dat. interest
ψυχῇ (προσήκει): and is it not fitting for
the soul; add verb
τὸ παράπαν: entirely; adverbial acc.

ἔγγυς τι τούτου: something close to it; i.e.

θητός, -ῆς, -ῶν: mortal, liable to death, 7
κεῖμαι: to lie, lie down 4
μηδέποτε: not ever, never, 8
νεκρός, ὁ: corpse, dead body, 3
ὄρατος, -ῆς, -ῶν: to be seen, visible, 17
παρά-παν: altogether, absolutely, 3
πολυ-ειδῆς, -ές: of many kinds or forms, 1
προσ-ήκει: it belongs to, it is fitting, befits 15
tὰχυς, εἰα, ψ: quick, swift, hastily, 9
φίλος -ή-ον: dear, friendly; noun friend, kin 8
c1 πώς γὰρ οὖ: how (could it) not; lit. ‘(yes),
for how could it not’

ἀποθάνη: 3s aor. subj. in an indefinite

temporal clause

αὐτοῦ: i.e. of ὁ ἄνθρωπος
黠 δὴ: which very thing...

οὐκ...οὐδὲν: not...any; οὐδὲν is direct obj.

τούτων: of these things; i.e. διαλυεσθαι...

πέπονθεν: 3s pf. πάσχω; the subject is

tὸ σῶμα

close to being indissoluble

90
συχνὸν ἐπιμένει χρόνον, ἕαν μὲν τις καὶ χαριέντως ἔχων τὸ σῶμα τελευτήσῃ καὶ ἐν τοιαύτῃ ὥρᾳ, καὶ πάνυ μάλα· συμπεσόν γὰρ τὸ σῶμα καὶ ταριχεῦθεν, ὥσπερ οἱ ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ ταριχευθέντες, ὦλγου ὄλον μένει ἀμήχανον ὅσον χρόνον, ἐνα δὲ μέρη τοῦ σώματος, καὶ ἂν σαπῆ, ὡστά τε καὶ νεφρά καὶ τὰ τοιαύτα πάντα, ὄμως ὡς ἔποι ἐπείν ἁθάνατα ἔστω· ἦ οὗ;

ναὶ.

ἡ δὲ ψυχὴ ἄρα, τὸ ἀδές, τὸ εἰς τοιοῦτον τόπον ἑτερον οἰχόμενον γενναίον καὶ καθαρὸν καὶ ἀδή, εἰς Ἄιδον ὡς ἀληθῶς, παρὰ τὸν ἀγαθὸν καὶ φρόνιμον θεόν, οἷς ἄν θεὸς θέλῃ, αὐτίκα καὶ τῇ ἐμῇ ψυχῇ ἰτέον, αὕτη δὲ δὴ ἦμων ἡ τοιαύτη καὶ οὕτω πεφυκύναι ἀπαλλαττομένη τοῦ σώματος

---

Ἀλγυμπτος, ὁ: Egypt, 1

Αἰδης, -οῦ ὁ: Hades, 15

ἀδής, -ές: unseen, invisible, 12

ἀ-μήχανος, -ον: impossible, inconceivable, 5

ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15

αὐτίκα: straightforward, at once; presently, 2
gενναίος, -α-ον: noble, well-bred, 4

ἐθέλο: to be willing, wish, desire, 17

ἐμός, -η-, -ον: my, mine, 7

ἐνοι, -αι, -α: some, 7

ἐπ-μένω: to stay, wait, tarry, 1

ἐπος, -εος, το: a part, share, portion, 4

ἵπτω, -ον: one must go, to be gone, 2

μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10

μέρος, -εος, το: a part, share, portion, 4

6 συχνὸν...χρόνον: for;... acc. of duration

ἐαν...τελευτήσῃ: if... dies; 3s aor. subj.
in a present general (εἰ + subj., pres. ind.)

τις: i.e. ὁ ἄνθρωπος in line c1

καί...καί: first καί, ‘quite,’ is adverbial with χαριέντως (S 2882), the second is ‘and’

ἐχων: being; + adv. see p 7

tὸ σῶμα: in body; acc. of respect

7 συμπεσόν: shrinking; aor. pple, συμπίπτω

8 ταριχεῦθεν: embalmed; neuter sg. aor. pass. pple

9 ὄλγου: almost; ‘from a little’ gen. of separation, here modifying ὄλον

ναϊ: yes, yea, 15

 νεῦρον, τό: sinew, tendon, nerve, 6

 οἰχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14

 ὀλγον, -η-, -ον: few, little, small, 15

 ὀλος, -η-, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 9

 ὄμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13

 ὡστεον, τό: bone, 9

 σάπτω (σήπτω): make rotten; corrupt, waste, 2

 συμ-πίπτω: to shrunk, fall in, 1

 συχνός, -η-, -ον: long, much, great, 4

 ταριχεῦσα: preserve by pickling or smoking, 2

 φρόνιμος, -ον: sensible, wise, prudent, 8

 φύω: to bring forth, beget; am by nature, 14

 χαριέντως: gracefully, elegantly, 2

 ωρα, ἡ: season, time, 3

 ὄλον: neuter nom. predicate of μένει

 ἀμήχανον...χρόνον: for an inconceivable, long time; acc. duration, (S 2353)

 καὶ ἐν...: even if...; καὶ ἐν + 3s subj.

 ὡς ἔποι ἐπείν: so to speak

 5 τὸ...οἰχόμενον: going to some other place

 6 ὡς ἄληθῶς: truly

 7 οTac, ἐκτὸς: to where, if...? relative adverb

 8 ἰτέον (ἔστι): my soul must go; ‘it is to be gone by my soul’; impersonal verbal adj. + εἰ is expresses necessity with a dat. of agent

 αὕτη δὲ δὴ: does this (soul); apposition

 οὕτω πεφυκύναι: being in this way; pf. pple
10 εὐθὺς διαπεφύσηται και ἀπόλωλεν, ὡς φασίν οἱ πολλοὶ ἀνθρωποί; πολλοὶ γε δεῖ, ὃ φίλε Κέβης τε καὶ Σωμία, ἀλλὰ πολλῷ μᾶλλον ὥδ’ ἔχει· ἐὰν μὲν καθαρὰ ἀπαλλάττηται, μηδὲν τοῦ σώματος συνεφέλκουσα, ἄτε οὐδὲν κοινωνοῦσα αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ βίῳ ἐκόουσα εἶναι, ἀλλὰ φεύγουσα αὐτῷ καὶ συνηθροισμένη αὐτῇ εἰς ἐαυτήν, ἄτε μελετῶσα ἄει τούτο-τὸ δὲ οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἐστὶν ἢ ὀρθῶς φιλοσοφοῦσα καὶ τῷ ὑμνῳ τεθνάναι μελετῶσα ῥάδιως· ἦσαν τοὺ τοῦτ’ ἀν εἰ ἡ μελέτη θανάτου;

παντάπασι γε.

οὐκοίνι οὖτω μὲν ἔχουσα εἰς τὸ ὦμοιον αὐτῇ τὸ ἀνδές ἀπέρχεται, τὸ θείον τε καὶ θάνατων καὶ φρόνιμον, οἰ

9 τοῦ σώματος: from...; gen. separation
10 διαπεφύσηται: pf. pass.
ἀπόλωλεν: perished; pf. ἀπόλλυμι
ὁς: as...; parenthetical
e1 πολλῷ γε δεῖ: far from it indeed; ‘it lacks from much,’ impersonal, gen. of separation
2 πολλῷ: far; ‘by much,’ dat. of degree of difference modifying comparative μᾶλλον
δῦδε (δ᾽ ἔχει): ἔχει + adv., see p. 7
ἔαν...ἀπαλλάττηται: if it is released pure
3 μηδέν: none; acc. object; μηδὲν is preferred to οὐδὲν in a conditional clause
τοῦ σώματος: partitive gen. with μηδὲν
ἄτε: inasmuch as...; ‘since,’ ἄτε + pple suggests a cause from the speaker point of view
3 οὐδέν: not at all; inner acc. with the pple
4 ἐκόουσα εἶναι: so as to be willing; or just μελέτη, ἦ: care, attention, study, practice, 4
παντα-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
ῥάδιοις: easy, ready, 9
συν-αθροίζω: gather together, assemble, 2
συν-εφέλκῳ: &: drag along, draw along, 1
φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 10
φιλο-σοφέω: seek knowledge, philosophize, 6
φρόνιμοις, -ον: sensible, wise, prudent, 8
ὅδε: in this way, so, thus, 4

‘willingly,’ a common infinitive absolute
φεύγουσα: avoiding
5 ἄτε: inasmuch as...; ‘since,’ ἄτε + pple suggests a cause from the speaker point of view; μελετῶσα is a fem. nom. sg. pple of anα-contract verb
τούτῳ: i.e. the entire clause (φεύγουσα... ἐαυτήν), not the body
6 τὸ δὲ οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἐστὶν ἢ: and this is nothing other than; i.e. τὸ συναθροίζοσθαι τῷ ὑμνῷ: really, actually; adverb
81a1 τεθνάναι: being dead; pf. inf. θνήσκω suggests a state rather than activity; this inf. is object of pple μελετῶσα
ἀν εἶπ: would be; potential opt. εἶπ
4 ἔχουσα: being; see sp. 7
αὐτῇ: dat. of special adj. ὦμοιον
5 εἶ: to where; relative adverb
ἀφικομένη ὑπάρχει αὐτῇ εὐδαιμονία εἶναι, πλάνης καὶ ἄνοιας καὶ φόβων καὶ ἀγρίων ἐρώτων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων κακῶν τῶν ἀνθρωπείων ἀπηλλαγμένη, ὥσπερ δὲ λέγεται κατὰ τῶν με-μημένων, ὡς ἀληθῶς τὸν λοιπὸν χρόνον μετὰ θεῶν διάγονα; οὕτω φῶμεν, ὁ Κέβης, ἡ ἄλλως;

οὕτω νη Δία, ἐφ' ὁ Κέβης.

ἐὰν δὲ γε οἷμαι μεμισμένη καὶ ἀκάθαρτος τοῦ σώματος ἀπαλλάττητη, ἀτε τῷ σώματι ἄει συνοῦσα καὶ τοῦτο θερα-πεύουσα καὶ ἐρώσα καὶ γοητευμένη ὑπ᾽ αυτοῦ ὑπὸ τε τῶν ἐπιθυμιῶν καὶ ἱδονῶν, ὡστε μηδὲν ἄλλο δοκείν εἶναι ἀληθὲς ἀλλ᾽ ἦ τὸ σωματειδεῖς, οδ τις ἄν ἄζωται καὶ ἵδοι καὶ πίου καὶ φάγοι καὶ πρὸς τὰ ἀφροδίσια χρήσαιτο, τὸ δὲ τοῖς

---

6 ἀφικομένη: when arriving; modifies αὐτῇ ὑπάρχει: it is possible; impersonal εὐδαιμονία: dat. predicate of εἶναι πλάνης:... from...; gen. of separation
8 λέγεται: it is said κατὰ...μεμισμένων: regarding the initiated; pf. pass. pple
9 ὡς ἀληθῶς: truly τὸν...χρόνον: for...; acc. of duration
10 φῶμεν: are we to speak?; deliberative subj. φημί
11 Δία: acc. sg. Ζεὺς
b1 δὲ γε: yes, and...I suppose; οἷμαι μεμισμένη: pf. pass. pple μαινόμεθα τοῦ σώματος: from...; gen. separation;
όμμαι, σκοτώδες καὶ αἰδές, νοητόν δὲ καὶ φιλοσοφία αἱρετόν, τοῦτο δὲ εἰθισμένη μισεῖν τε καὶ τρέμειν καὶ φεύγειν, οὔτως δὴ ἔχουσαν οἷοι ψυχήν αὐτὴν καθ' αὐτὴν εἰλικρινὴ ἀπαλλάξεσθαι;

οὐδ' ὀπωσδιόν, ἔφη.

ἀλλὰ καὶ διειλημμένην γε οἶμαι ὑπὸ τοῦ σωματοειδοῦς, δ' αὐτῇ ὡς ὡμιλία τε καὶ συνονία τοῦ σώματος διὰ τὸ ἀεὶ συνεῖναι καὶ διὰ τὴν πολλῆν μελέτην ἐνεποίησε σύμφυτον;

πάνυ γε.

ἐμβριθές δὲ γε, ὃ φίλε, τοῦτο οἰέσθαι χρῆ εἶναι καὶ βαρύ καὶ γεώδες καὶ ὀρατὸν; δὴ καὶ ἔχουσα ἥ τοιαύτη ψυχὴ βαρύνεται τε καὶ ἐλκεται πάλιν εἰς τὸν ὀρατὸν τόπον.

---

άθις, -ές: unseen, invisible, 12
αιρετός, -ή, -ών: selected, choiceworthy, 1
ἀπ-αλλάττω: escape, release; set free, 15
βαρύνω: to weigh down, oppress, 2
βαρύς, -εία, -ύα: heavy; grievous, grim, dire, 1
γεώδης, -ές: earth-like, earthly, 2
dia-λαμβάνω: receive separately, divide, seize by the middle (wrestling metaphor), 2
ἐθίζω: to accustom, use, 2
eιλικρίνης, -ές: unmixed, pure, simple, 4
ἐλκο: to draw, draw; weigh, 3
ἐμπρήθως, -ές: weighty, 1
ἐμ-ποίεω: to create in, produce in, cause, 2
μελέτη, ἤ: care, attention, study, practice, 4
μισῶ: to hate, 4

νοητός, -ή, -ών: perceptible (to the mind), 3
ὁμιλία, ἤ: association, company, society, 1
ὁμιά, -ατος, τό: the eye, 5
ὁπωσιόν: in any way whatever, 5
ὁρατός, -ή, -ών: to be seen, visible, 17
σκοτώδης, -ές: dark, 1
σύμφυτος, -ον: innate, inborn, congenital, 1
σών-ειμι: to be with, associate with (dat.), 4
συν-ουσία, ἤ: association, company, 4
σωματο-εἰδής, -ές: corporeal, bodily, 5
τρέμω: to tremble at, quake, 1
φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 10
φίλο-σοφία, ἤ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
φίλος -ν-ον: dear, friendly; noun friend, kin 8

6 ὁ δὲ: but that (which is)... 7 ὁμασι: to see the eyes; dat. of interest
φιλοσοφία: to philosophy; dat. of interest
8 εἰθισμένην: pf. middle pple, ἐθίζω
τρέμειν: to tremble at; i.e. fear
φεύγειν: to avoid

4 ἀλλὰ καί: but actually
(τὴν ψυχήν ἀπαλλάξεσθαι) διειλημμένην
γε οἶμαι: I think (that the soul will be released tied around the middle at least)
ὑπὸ: by...; gen. of cause or agent

5 αὐτῇ: its; dat. of possession
dia...συνεῖναι: on account of...; + articular inf.
6 ἐνεποίησε: made (x) (y); governs a double acc. (acc. direct obj. and acc. predicate)
8 τοῦτο: i.e. the body
9 ὁ δὴ: which very thing; the ὁ ἄνθρωπος
ΦΑΙΔΩΝ

φόβῳ τοῦ ἀιδώς τε καὶ "Ἀидου, ὀσπερ λέγεται, περὶ τὰ μνήματά τε καὶ τοὺς τάφους κυλινδομένη, περὶ ἀ δή καὶ ὑφή ἀττα ψυχών σκωειδή φαντάσματα, οἷα παρέχονται αἰ τουαῖται ψυχαί εἴδωλα, αἱ μὴ καθαρῶς ἀπολυθεῖσαι ἀλλὰ τοῦ ὀρατοῦ μετέχουσαι, διὸ καὶ ὄρωνται.

εἰκός γε, ὁ Σωκράτες.

εἰκός μέντοι, ὁ Κέβης: καὶ οὐ τί γε τὰς τῶν ἁγαθῶν αὐτάς εἶναι, ἀλλὰ τάς τῶν φαίλων, αἱ περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἀναγκάζονται παλανάθαι δίκην τίνουσαι τῆς προτέρας τροφῆς κακῆς ὁποίας. καὶ μέχρι γε τοῦτο πλανῶνται, ἦσω ἀν τῇ τοῦ συνεπακολουθοῦντος, τοῦ σωματοειδοῦς, ἐπιθυμία πάλιν ε ἐνδεδώσων εἰς σῶμα· ἐνδοῦνται δὲ, ὀσπερ εἰκός, εἰς τοιαῦτα ἥϑη ὀποῖ' ἀτ' ἀν καὶ μεμελετηκυι τύχωσιν ἐν τῷ βίῳ.

11 φόβῳ: by...; dat. of cause
tοῦ ἀιδώς..."Αιδου: objective gen. ἀιδέ-ος
ὀσπερ λέγεται: just as it is said
περὶ: around...
d1 περὶ ἀ δή: around which very things...
καὶ: actually
2 ὡρθήν: 3s aor. pass. ὡρθώ: plural subject
ἀττα: certain; neut. pl., alternative to των
οῖα...εἴδωλα: such likenesses; relative adj
3 αἰ...: attributive position following ψυχαί
ἀπολυθεῖσαι: fem. aor. pass. πρότερος 
καὶ: actually, in fact; adverbial
5 εἰκός γε: yes, (it is) likely; γε is affirmative

6 μέντοι: certainly; affirmative
cαὶ...γε: and in fact; emphasizing the intervening words
οὐ τί...τάς...αὐτάς εἶναι: (it is likely) that they are not at all souls of the good
7 τάς: those of...; i.e. those souls of...
δίκην τίνουσαι: paying a penalty; pple
8 τῆς...τροφῆς: for...; gen. of charge
9 μέχρι τούτου...ἐξώς: up to this...until...
e τοῦ συνεπακολουθοῦντος: by desire of the thing accompanying, the corporeal, ...
2 ἐνδεδώσων: they are bound; aor. pass.
3 τύχωσιν: happen to have practiced...
τὰ ποία δὴ ταῦτα λέγεις, ὦ Σώκρατες;

οἶον τοὺς μὲν γαστραργίας τε καὶ ὦβρεις καὶ φιλοσοφίας μεμελετηκότας καὶ μὴ διηλαβημένους εἰς τὰ τῶν ὄνων γένη 82 καὶ τῶν τουαίων ἤριών εἰκὸς ἐνδύεσθαι. ἦ οὐκ οἶει;

πάνω μὲν οὖν εἰκὸς λέγεις.

tοὺς δὲ γε ἀδικίας τε καὶ τυραννίδας καὶ ἄρπαγάς προτετημικότας εἰς τὰ τῶν λύκων τε καὶ ἱεράκων καὶ ἱκτίνων γένη. ἦ ποῖ ἂν ἄλλοσε φαμεν τὰς τουαίως ἴναι;

ἀμέλει, ἐφη ὁ Κέβης, εἰς τὰ τουαίτα.

οὐκοῦν, ἦ δ᾿ ὦς, δήλα δή καὶ τάλλα ἦ ἂν ἐκαστα ἴοι κατὰ τὰς αὐτῶν ὀμοιότητας τῆς μελέτης;

δῆλον δὴ, ἐφη· πῶς δ᾿ οὖ;
οὐκοῦν εὐδαμονέστατοι, ἐφ᾽, καὶ τούτων εἰσὶ καὶ εἰς βέλτιστον τόπον ἰόντες οἱ τὴν δημοτικὴν καὶ πολιτικὴν ἄρετὴν ἐπιτετηδευκότες, ἢν δὴ καλοῦσι σωφροσύνην τε καὶ δικαιοσύνην, εὖ ἔδους τε καὶ μελέτης γεγονυῖαν ἄνευ φιλοσοφίας τε καὶ νοῦ;

τῇ δὴ οὕτῳ εὐδαμονέστατοι;

ὅτι τούτοις εἰκός ἐστιν εἰς τοιούτον πάλιν ἄφικνεῖσθαι πολιτικὸν καὶ ἥμερον γένος, ἢ που μελετῶν ἢ σφηκῶν ἢ μυρμήκων, καὶ εἰς ταῦταν γε πάλιν τὸ ἀνθρώπινον γένος, καὶ γίγνεσθαι εὖ αὐτῶν ἄνδρας μετρίους.

εἰκός.

εἰς δὲ γε θεῶν γένος μὴ φιλοσοφήσαντι καὶ παντελῶς καθαρῷ ἀπιστῶν οὐ θέμις ἄφικνεῖσθαι ἄλλ᾽ ἢ τῷ φιλομαθε. 

αὖν: without, 9
ἄθρωπονος, -ης, -oν: belonging to human, human, 7
ἀπ'ἐξομαί: to go away, depart, 14
ἀρετή, ἡ: excellence, goodness, virtue, 9
βέλτιστος, -ης, -oν: best, 14
γένος, -εος, τό: lineage, family, stock; race, 7
δημοτικός, -ης, -oν: public, of the people, 1
δικαιοσύνη, ἡ: justice, righteousness, 4
ἐθος, -εος, τό: custom, habit, (cf. to ἦθος) 1
eikός, ὁτος, τό: likely, probable, reasonable 18
ἐπίτηδευμα: to pursue, practice, 4
ἐὐ-δαίμων, -oν: happy, fortunate, blessed, 5
ἡμερος, -oν: tame, civilized, gentle, 1
10 εὐδαμονέστατοι: superlative
eια: 3p pres. eιμι
11 ἰόντες: pres. pple ἐρχομαι
οι...ἐπιτηδευκότες: those...; pf. pple ἐπιτηδευμα
b1 ἄ: the very thing which; ἄ: is intensive
2 ἔθους: ἔθε-ος, gen. sg. ἔθος
γεγονούσαι: fem. acc. sg. pf. pple γίγνομαι
4 πη δη: in what way precisely
οὕτοι: (are) these; add a linking verb
5 ὅτι: because...; in response to πη
τούτοις...ἄφικεσθαι: that these...; ind. disc governed by εἰκός ἐστιν
6 πολιτικόν...γένος: social and gentle species
7 θέμις, ἡ: right, custom, what is established, 1
μελέτη, ἡ: care, attention, study, practice, 4
μελεττα, ἡ: bee, 2
μέτριος, -α, -oν: moderate, in due measure, 7
μύρμηξ, μύρμηκος, ὁ: ant, 2
νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
παντελῶς: altogether, utterly, absolutely, 3
πῇ: in what way, how, 5
πολιτικός -ον: of the city, political, social 2
σφήξ, σφηκός, ὁ: wasp, 1
σωφροσύνη, ἡ: temperence, prudence, 8
φιλο-μαθής, -ες: pursuer of learning, 5
φιλο-σοφέω: seek knowledge, philosophize, 6
φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
ἤ...ὥ: either...or
καὶ...γε: and...in fact; emphasizing the intervening words
τοῦτον: the same...; τὸ αὐτὸν + τὸ γένος
8 ἄνδρας μετρίους: respectable people; acc. subject of ὁ γίγνεσθαι
10 δὲ γε: yes, and...; to make another point
μή φιλοσοφήσαντι...ἀπίστων: (for one) if not...; dat. of interest, aor. and pres. pple conditional in sense (hence μή instead of οὗ) φιλοσοφέω, ἀπέρχομαι
οὐ θέμις: (it is) not lawful; impersonal, + dat. + inf
82a ἘΠΙΤΗΔΕΥΜΑ
άλλα τούτων ἔνεκα, ὁ ἑταῖρε Συμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, οἱ ὅρθως ψυχής ἀπέχονται τῶν κατὰ τὸ σῶμα ἐπιθυμίων ἀπασών καὶ καρτεροῦσα καὶ οὐ παραδιδόσων αὐταῖς ἑαυτούς, οὐ τι οἰκοθορία τε καὶ πενίαν φοβοῦμενω, ὡσπερ οἱ πολλοί καὶ φιλοχρήματοι. οὐδὲ αὐτοῖς ἑαυτῶν καὶ ἀδοξίας δεδιότες, ὡσπερ οἱ φίλαρχοι καὶ φιλότιμοι, ἐπειτα ἀπέχονται αὐτῶν.

οὐ γὰρ ἀν πρέποι, ἐφη, ὁ Σώκρατες, ὁ Κέβης.


do) οὐ μέντοι μᾶ Δίᾳ, ἡ δ' ὡς. θυγατέριο τούτοις μὲν ἀπασών, ὁ Κέβης, ἐκεῖνοι οἷς τι μέλει τῆς ἑαυτῶν ψυχῆς ἀλλὰ μὴ σῶματα πλάττοντες ζῶσι, χαίρειν εἰπόντες, οὐ κατὰ ταῦτα παρεύονται αὐτοῖς ὡς οὐκ εἰδόσων ὅπη ἔρχονται,
αὐτὸι δὲ ἦγοῦμενοι οὐ δεῖν ἐναντία τῇ φιλοσοφίᾳ πράττεν
καὶ τῇ ἐκείνης λύσει τε καὶ καθαρμῷ ταύτῃ δὴ τρέπονται ἐκείνῃ ἐπώμενοι, ἣ ἐκείνη ὑφηγεῖται.

πῶς, ὧς Σωκράτες;

ἐγὼ ἔρω, ἐφη. γιγνώσκοι γὰρ, ἣ δ’ ὡς, οἱ φιλομαθεῖς ὃτι παραλαβοῦσα αὐτῶν τὴν ψυχὴν ἢ φιλοσοφία ἀτεχνῶς ἐ
diaδεδεμένην ἐν τῷ σώματι καὶ προσκεκολλημένην, ἀναγκα-
ζομένην δὲ ὡσπερ διὰ εἰργοῦ διὰ τούτον σκοπεῖσθαι τὰ ὅντα ἀλλὰ μὴ αὐτὴν δ’ αὐτῆς, καὶ ἐν πάσῃ ἀμαθίᾳ κυλί-
dουμένην, καὶ τὸ εἰργὸ τῇ διαδιήρῃ κατιδοῦσα ὅτι δ’ ἐπιθυμιάς ἔστιν, ὡς ἐν μάλιστα αὐτὸς ὁ δεδεμένος συλλήπτωρ

5 αὐτοὶ δὲ: but they themselves...; i.e the pursuers of learning
οὐ δεῖν: that it is necessary; impers. δεὶ ἐναντία τῇ φιλοσοφίᾳ...καθαρμῷ: deeds opposite to philosophy and both that one’s
delivery and purification; many dat. of special adjective, ἐκεῖνης is a subjective gen. (i.e. ‘that one delivers and purifies’) and refers to φιλοσοφία
6 ταύτῃ δὴ: in precisely this way; dat. of manner
τρέπονται: they turn; the middle voice, as here, is often reflexive
7 ἐκεῖνη, ἐκεῖνος: φιλοσοφία ἦ: where; ‘in what place’

κυλινδέω: to roll, roll along, 2
λύσις, -εος, ἢ: releasing, delivery, 4
παρα-λαμβάω: to take over, 2
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
προσ-κολλάω: to glue to, stick to, 1
συλλήπτωρ, -ορος, ὁ: partner, accomplice, 1
tρέπω: to turn, 4
ἐφηγέομαι: to lead the way, go first, 1
φιλο-μαθής, -ής: pursuer of learning, 5
φιλο-σοφία, ἢ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
83  ἐγιγνώσκω, —οπερ οὖν λέγω, γιγνώσκουσιν οἱ φιλομαθεῖς ὅτι οὗτοι παραλαβοῦσα ἡ φιλοσοφία ἔχουσαν αὐτῶν τῆν ψυχὴν ἣρέμα παραμυθεῖται καὶ λύειν ἐπιχειρεῖ, ἐνδεικνυμένη ὅτι ἀπάτης μὲν μεστὴ ἢ διὰ τῶν ὀμμάτων σκέψις, ἀπάτης δὲ ἢ διὰ τῶν οὕτων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων αἰσθήσεων, πείθουσα δὲ ἐκ τούτων μὲν ἀναχωρεῖν, ὅσον μὴ ἀνάγκη αὐτοῖς χρησθαι, αὐτὴν δὲ εἰς αὐτὴν συλλέγεσθαι καὶ ἀθροίζεσθαι παρακελευομένη, πιστεύειν δὲ μηδὲν ἄλλω ἀλλ’ ἦ αὐτήν αὐτῇ, ὅτι ἄν νοήσῃ αὐτῇ καθ’ αὐτήν αὐτό καθ’ αὐτό τῶν οὕτων· ὅτι δ’ ἄν δ’ ἄλλων σκοπῇ ἐν ἄλλως ὅν ἄλλο, μηδὲν ἥγεισθαι ἁληθές· εἰναὶ δὲ τὸ μὲν τοιοῦτον αἰσθητὸν τε καὶ ὁρατὸν, δ’ δὲ αὐτῇ ὀρᾷ νοητὸν τε καὶ αἰδές.

83a  παραλαβοῦσα: taking over; aor. pple
3 οὕτω...ἔχουσαν: being in this way
3 λύειν: supply τὴν ψυχὴν as object
4 μεστή: is...; nom. predicate governing a partitive gen.; supply the verb ἔστι
5 ἀπάτης δὲ (μεστή): supply the predicate and linking verb ἔστι from above
5 ὀμμάτων: gen. pl. οὐς
6 ἀναχωρεῖν: i.e. from the senses
6 δοκοῦσα: as much as
7 συλλέγοντες...ἀθροίζοντες: that (the soul)...; ind. disc., both mid. voice
8 παρακελεύομενή: modifies ἡ φιλοσοφία μηδείς...ἄλλο...ἄλλο (α) ἦ: nothing other but...; or

νοητός, -ή, -όν: perceptible to the mind, 3
δομια, -ατος, τό: the eye, 5
ὅρατος, -ή, -όν: to be seen, visible, 17
οὐς, ὀτός, τό: ear, 2
παρα-κελεύομαι: to urge, encourage, order, 3
παρα-λαμβάνω: to take over, 2
παρα-μιθέομαι: to encourage, exhort, 1
πιστεύω: to trust, believe in, rely on, 5
σκέψις, -εως, ἢ: perception, observation, 4
συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 4
φιλο-μαθής, -ές: pursuer of learning, 5
φιλο-σοφία, ἢ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11

‘nothing other rather than’

b1 ἄντιν (ἂ)αυτῇ: that it...; acc. subject and dat. object of understood πιστεύειν
ὅτι δ’ ἄν...σκοπῇ: and whatever...; ὃ τι is neuter acc. sg. ὀς, the antecedent is μηδέν; 3s pres. subj. + ἄν in an indefinite relative clause

3 ἡγεῖσθαι: to believe; parallel to πιστεύειν and governed by παρακελευομένη; μηδέν ἀληθείς is a double acc. (obj. and predicate) εἰναί δὲ τὸ μὲν τοιοῦτον...δ’ δὲ: and that such a thing is...but that which...; ind. disc. governed by same verbs of persuading
4 νοητὸν...ἀидеός (ἐναί): acc. predicate of understood εἰναί; δ’...ὁρᾷ is the subject
ταύτη ὅν τῇ λύσει σώκ οἰομένη δεῖν ἐναντιοῦσθαι ἦ τοῦ ὡς ἀλθῆς φιλοσόφου ψυχὴ οὕτως ἀπέχεται τῶν ἡθονῶν τε καὶ ἐπιθυμῶν καὶ λυπῶν καὶ φόβων καθ᾽ ὀσον δύναται, λογιζομένη ὅτι, ἐπειδὰν τις σφόδρα ἡσθῇ ἢ φοβηθῇ [ἡ λυπηθῇ] ἢ ἐπιθυμήσῃ, οὐδὲν τοσοῦτον κακὸν ἐπαθεν ἀπ’ αὐτῶν ὃν ἂν τις οἰκηθεί, οἶον ἡ νοσήσας ή τί ἀναλώσας κ δια τὰς ἐπιθυμίας, ἀλλ’ ἄν πάντων μέγιστον τε κακῶν καὶ ἐσχατόν ἐστι, τοῦτο πάσχει καὶ οὐ λογίζεται αὐτῷ.

τί τοῦτο, ὁ Σώκρατες; ἐφ’ ὁ Κέβης.

ὅτι ψυχή παντὸς ἀνδρώπου ἀναγκάζεται ἢμα τε ἡσθῇναι σφόδρα ἢ λυπηθῇ ἐπὶ τῷ καὶ ἱγείοσθαι περὶ δ’ ἄν μάλιστα τοῦτο πάσχῃ, τοῦτο ἐναργέστατον τε εἶναι καὶ ἀληθέστατον,
σύχ οὐτως ἔχον· ταῦτα δὲ μάλιστα τὰ ὀρατὰ· ἣ οὐ; πάνυ γε.

δ’ οὐκοῦν ἐν τούτω τῷ πάθει μάλιστα καταδείκται ψυχῇ ὑπὸ σώματος;

πῶς δῆ; ὃτι ἐκάστη ἤδονὴ καὶ λύπη ὄσπερ ἢλων ἔχουσα προσηλοί αὐτὴν πρὸς τὸ σῶμα καὶ προσπερναὶ καὶ ποιεῖ σωματοειδῆ, δοξάζουσαν ταῦτα ἀληθῆ εἶναι ἀπέρ ἄν καὶ τὸ σῶμα φῆ. ἐκ γὰρ τοῦ ὁμοδοξεῖν τῷ σώματι καὶ τοῖς αὐτῶι χαίρειν ἀναγκάζεται οὕμαι ὁμότροπος τε καὶ ὁμότροφος γίγνεσθαι καὶ οἷα μηδέποτε εἰς Ἁδίου καθαρῶς ἀφικέσθαι, ἀλλὰ ἀεὶ τοῦ σώματος ἀναπλέα ἔξιέναι, ὡστε ταχὺ πάλιν πίπτειν εἰς

Ἅιδης, -ου ὁ: Hades, 15
ἀιρέω: to seize, take; mid. choose, 4
ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel, require, 10
ἀναπλέοις -ου: filled up, quite full (gen), 1
δοξάζω: to think, opine, suppose, imagine, 3
ἐξ-ἐρχομαι: to go out, come out, 5
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
ἠλων, το: nail, 1
κατ-δέω: to bind fast, bind on, 1
λύπη, ἡ: pain, grief, 8
μηδέποτε: not ever, never, 8

8 σύχ οὐτως ἔχον: although...; pple is concessive in sense, see p. 7 for translation ταῦτα: and these are...; add linking verb ὅμο-δοξέω: have the same opinion, agree with (dat) 1
ὁμο-τροπος-ον: of the same habits or life, 1
ὁμο-τροφος-ον: of the same rearing, 1
ὁρατός, -ῆ, -όν: to be seen, visible, 17
πάθος-εος το: experience incident passion 11
πίπτω: to fall, 3
προσ-ηλός: to nail to, rivet, 1
προσ-περνάοι: to pin to, fasten to, 1
σωματο-ειδής-ες: corporeal, bodily, 5
χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well 12

φημι in an indefinite relative clause, the antecedent is ταῦτα
καί: also; or ‘too’
7 τοῦ ὁμοδοξεῖν: the agreeing with; articular inf., translate as a gerund τοῖς αὐτοῖς: the same things (τοῦ) χαίρειν: the delighting in...; articular inf. parallel to the first
8 οἷα: parenthetical, οἷα
9 οἷα...ἀφικέσθαι: such as never to arrive...; οἷος + inf. denoting result; the infinitive are epexegetic (explanatory) infinitives εἰς Ἁλίδου: to Hades’ (house)
10 ὡςτε...: so as...; + inf., result clause
Ἄλλο σῶμα καὶ ὀσπερ σπειρομένη ἐμφύεσθαι, καὶ ἐκ τούτων ἄμοιρος εἶναι τῆς τοῦ θείου τε καὶ καθαροῦ καὶ μονοειδοῦς συνουσίας.

ἀληθέστατα, ἐφη, λέγεις, ὁ Κέβης, ὁ Σώκρατες.

τούτων τοίνυν ἐνεκα, ὁ Κέβης, οἱ δικαίως φιλομαθεῖς κόσμιοι εἰσὶ καὶ ἀνδρεῖοι, οὐχ ὃν οἱ πολλοὶ ἐνεκά φάσων· ἡ σοὶ οἰει;

οὖ δήτα ἐγώγε.

οὐ γάρ· ἀλλ’ οὕτω λογίσατ’ ἄν ψυχὴ ἄνδρὸς φιλοσόφου, καὶ οὐκ ἂν οἰηθεὶς τῇν μὲν φιλοσοφίαν χρὴναι αὐτῆν λύειν, λυούσης δὲ ἐκείνης, αὐτὴν παραδίδοναι ταῖς ἠδοναῖς καὶ λύπαις ἐαυτὴν πάλιν αὐ ἐγκαταδεῖν καὶ ἀνήνυτον ἔργον πράττειν Πηνελόπης τινα ἐναντίως ἴστον μεταχειριζομένης, ἀλλὰ

λύπη, ἡ: pain, grief, 8

λύω: to loosen, dissolve, break up, 7

μετα-χειρίζω: to handle, take in hand, 1

μονο-εἰθῆς, -ες: one in kind, simple, 3

παρα-δίδωμι: give or hand over, transmit, 2

Πηνελόπης, ἡ: Penelope (Odysseus’ wife), 1

πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12

σπείρω: to plant, sow, 1

συν-ουσία, ἡ: communion, association, 4

τοῖ-νυν: well then; therefore, accordingly, 21

φιλο-μαθῆς, -ες: pursuer of learning, 5

φιλο-οοφα, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 13

φιλό-οοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18

e1 σπειρομένη: pass. pple

4 ἀληθέστατα: superlative adv. or dir. obj.

5 δικαίως: rightly

6 εἰνι: 3p pres. εἰμι

διν...ἐνεκα: for the sake of the (things) which; τοῦτων ἡ

7 οἰει: 2s pres. mid. οἶμαι

84α2 οὐ γάρ: ἀλλ’: no indeed; rather...; or “no indeed, but...” γαρ expresses assent (S 2806)

λογίσασθαι(ο) ἄν: would reason, would calculate; potential opt.

3 ἀν οἰηθεὶς: would...; potential opt., aor.

pass. deponent οἴσμαι

χρήνα: that...; inf. χρή

ἀὐτήν: i.e. ψωχῆ

λυούσης...ἐκείνης: but while...; gen. abs.

ἀὐτῆν...ἐαυτῇ: that it...itself; both acc. subject and reflexive obj. refer to ἄν ψωχῆ

πάλιν...ἐγκαταδεῖν: to bind (itself) back again; i.e. to the body; inf. of result

6 Πηνελόπης...μεταχειριζομένης: of a Penelope...; i.e. just as Penelope, wife of Odysseus, weaves and unravels a web on a loom to delay choosing a suitor; a subjective gen. modifying ἔργον
γαλήνην τούτων παρασκευάζουσα, ἐπομένη τῷ λογισμῷ καὶ ἀεὶ ἐν τούτῳ οὖσα, τὸ ἀλῆθὲς καὶ τὸ θεῖον καὶ τὸ ἄδοξον

b θεωμένη καὶ ὑπ’ ἐκείνου τρεφομένη, ζῆν τε οίεται οὕτως δεῖν ἐως ἄν ζῆ, καὶ ἐπειδήν τελευτήσῃ, εἰς τὸ συγγενὲς καὶ εἰς τὸ τοιοῦτον ἀφικομένη ἀπηλλάξαται τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων κακῶν. ἐκ δή τῆς τοιαύτης τροφῆς οὕδεν δεινὸν μὴ φοβηθῇ).

5 [ταῦτα δ’ ἐπιτηδεύσασα,] ὁ Σιμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, ὅπως μὴ διασπασθείσα ἐν τῇ ἀπαλαγῇ τοῦ σώματος ὑπὸ τῶν ἀνέμων διαφυσθείσα καὶ διαπτομένη οἴχηται καὶ οὕδεν ἐτί οὐδαμοῦ ἦ.

c συγῆ οὖν ἐγένετο ταῦτα εἰσόντος τοῦ Σωκράτους ἐπὶ πολὺν χρόνον, καὶ αὐτὸς τε πρὸς τῷ εἰρημένῳ λόγῳ ἦν ὁ

ἀ-δόξωστος, -ου: not a matter of opinion, 1
ἀνειμοῦ, -ου, ὁ: wind, 4
ἀνθρώπων, -ην, -ου: belonging to human, human, 7
ἀπ-αλλαγέ, ἡ: release, departure; escape, 7
ἀπ-αλλαττό: release; set free; escape, 15
γαλήνη, ἡ: calm, stillness, 1
δεινός, -ης, -ον: terrible; wondrous, clever, 6
dia-πέταμαι: to fly through, 2
dia-σπάω: to tear apart, pull asunder, 1
dia-φπαω: to blow in different directions, 3
ἐπιπέταμε: to pursue, practice, 4
ἐπομεναι: to follow, accompany, escort, 9
ἐνε: until, as long as, 15

4 οὖσα: fem. nom. sg. pres. pple εἰμί
b1 τρεφομένη: pass. pple + gen. agent/cause
οίεται οὐτως: and in this way it thinks...; governs inf. of δειν καὶ ζῶ
2 ἂν ζῆ: 3s pres. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause, ζῶ
το τοίγενες: what is related
3 ἄπτηλλαχθα: aor. pass. inf. with δειν in b2 τῶν...κακῶν: from...; gen. of separation
4 οὐδὲν δεινὸν μὴ φοβηθῇ: there (is) no risk that it fear...; 'there (is) nothing terrible that...’ μὴ + subj. (aor. pass. dep. φοβέω) is a fearing clause
5 ἄποτος μὴ: that...; ‘lest,’ another fearing clause: ἄποτος μὴ + subj. may be used in

θέαμαι: to see, watch, look at; consider, 3
θεῖος, -ας, -ον: divine, sent by the gods, 15
λογισμός, ὁ: a counting, calculation; account, reasoning, 3
οὐχὶμαι: to go, go off, depart, 14
ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that 10
οὐδαμοῦ: nowhere, 5
παρα-σκευάζω: to get ready, prepare, 8
σημεία, ἡ: silence, 1
συγ-γενής, -ές: related; subst. relative, 6
τρέφω: to foster, nourish, rear, 1
τροφή, ἡ: food; rearing, upbringing, 4
φοβέω: to terrify, frighten; mid. fear, 15

4 place of of μὴ to suggest something that will happen (S 2230), see also 77b4
6 διασπασθείσα: nom. sg. aor. pass. pple τοῦ σώματος: from...; gen. of separation ὑπὸ: because of...; by...; gen. of cause
7 διαφυσθείσα: nom. sg. aor. pass. pple διαπτομένη: aor. mid. pple, διαπέταμαι ἦ: exists; 3s pres. subj. εἰμί, fearing clause
ci εἰσόντος...Σωκράτους: gen. abs.
2 ἐπὶ...χρόνον: over...; acc. of duration
ἀυτὸς: himself; modifies ὁ Σωκράτης
πρὸς...λόγῳ ἦ: was (intent) in the account just spoken πρὸς + dat. can have a

meaning similar to ἐν + dat. or denote occupation (S 1695.2); pf. pass. λέγω (ἐρ-)

104
Σωκράτης, ὃς ἰδεῖν ἐφαίνετο, καὶ ἡμῶν οἱ πλείστοι. Κέβης δὲ καὶ Σιμμίας σμικρὸν πρὸς ἀλλήλους διελεγέσθην. καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ἴδων αὐτῷ ἢρετο, τί; ἐφη, ὡμῶν τὰ λεχθέντα μῶν μὴ δοκεῖ ἐνδεῶς λέγεσθαι; πολλὰς γὰρ δὴ ἔτι ἔχει ὑποψίας καὶ ἀντιλαβᾶς, εἰ γε δὴ τις αὐτὰ μέλει ἰκανός διεξινεῖ. εἰ μὲν οὖν τι ἄλλο σκοπεῖσθον, οὐδὲν λέγω· εἰ δὲ τι περὶ τούτων ἀπορεῖτον, μηδὲν ἀποκνήσητε καὶ αὐτὸι ἐπείδῃ καὶ διελθεῖν, εἰ ηῇ ὡμῶν φαίνεται βέλτιον ἄν λεχθῆναι, καὶ αὐτὸ καὶ ἐμὲ συμπαραλαβεῖν, εἰ τι μᾶλλον οἴσοντε μὲτ' ἐμοῦ εὐπορήσειν.

καὶ ὁ Σιμμίας ἐφη· καὶ μήν, ὁ Σώκρατες, τάληθε σοι ἐρώ. πάλαι γὰρ ἡμῶν ἐκάτερος ἀπορῶν τὸν ἔτερον προσβείν

3 ὃς ἰδεῖν ἐφαίνετο: as it seemed to look at; epexegetical (explanatory) aor. inf. ὄρκῳ (ἐίδον), impersonal use of φαίνεται

4 σμικρὸν: lowly; or 'barely' adverbial acc., the two are talking so quietly that Socrates cannot make out the words

5 ἰδον: aor. pple ὄρκῳ (ἐίδον)

6 ἔλεγο: aor. ἔρομαι

7 τὰ λεχθέντα: things said; aor. pass. λέγω μὴν: surely do not seem...; expecting a no reply; for the repetition of μὴ: S 2651ε

8 ἔχει: (the account) has...; add subject

9 εἰ γε δὴ: if, at any rate indeed; γε δὴ reinforce one another and are emphatic and restrictive (GP 245)

10 εἰ μὲν οὖν...ἐλ δὲ: if then... but if...

11 σκοπεῖσθον: you two are considering; dual

12 εὔ-πορεω: to prosper, thrive, be well off, 1

13 μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19

14 μὴν (μὴ οὖν): surely not? (expects a no reply)

15 πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13

16 πι: in some way, somehow, 4

17 πλεῖστοι: more, greatest, 3

18 προ-ωθέω: to push forward, 1

19 σμικρός: small, little, 19

20 συμπαραλαβέω: take along (as a helper) 2

21 ὕπ-ουσία, ἣ: suspicion, apprehension, 1

22 περ. pres. mid. σκοπέω

23 οὖδέν: nothing (important); i.e. nonsense

24 τι: at all; inner acc.

25 ἀπορεῖτον: you two...; dual 2nd pers. pres. act. ἀπορέω

26 μηδὲν ἀποκνήσητε: do not at all...; + inf., prohibitive subj. (μὴ + aor. subj.) μηδὲν is an inner acc.

27 ἀν λεχθήναι: could have been said; ἂν + aor. pass. inf. indicates past (unrealized) potential (ἀν + aor.) in direct speech or potential opt. (e.g. 'could be said')

28 καὶ αὐτῷ: and moreover also

29 τι: at all; inner acc.

30 καὶ μὴ: well certainly; GP 356

31 ἔρω: ἐφέρω, fut. λέγω

32 πάλαι...προσβείν: has been pushing the other; pf. progressive in sense
καὶ κελεύει ἑρέσθαι διὰ τὸ ἐπιθυμεῖν μὲν ἄκοψαι, ὀκνεῖν δὲ ὡς χλον παρέχειν, μὴ σοι ἄγδης ἣ διὰ τὴν παροῦσαν συμφορὰν.

καὶ ὃς ἄκοψας ἐγέλασεν τε ἥρεμα καὶ φησιν· Βαβαί, ὁ Σιμμία· ἢ που χαλεπῶς ἂν τοὺς ἄλλους ἄνθρωπους πείνασμι ὡς οὐ συμφορὰν ἠγούμαι τὴν παροῦσαν τόχην, ὦτε γε μηδὲ ὑμᾶς δύναμαι πείθεων, ἀλλὰ φοβεῖσθε μὴ δυσκολώτερον τι νῦν διάκειμαι ἡ ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν βίῳ καὶ, ὥς ἔοικε, τῶν κύκνων δοκῶ φαυλότερος ὑμῖν εἶναι τὴν μαντικήν, οὗ ἐπειδὰν ἀποθανεῖν ἄδοντες καὶ ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ, τότε δὴ πλεῖστα καὶ κάλλιστα ἄδοιοι, γεγονότες ὅτι μέλλουσι παρὰ τὸν θεόν ἀπίεναι οὐπέρ εἰσι θεράποντες. οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι διὰ τὸ αὐτῶν δέος τοῦ θανάτου

6 ἔρεσθαί: inf. ἔρομαι

ἀκούσαι: to hear (your response); aor. inf. object of articular inf. τὸ ἐπιθυμεῖν

(διὰ τὸ) ὀκνεῖν δὲ: but (of account of) skrinking from; + inf., an articular inf.; 2nd object of διὰ and parallel to ἐπιθυμεῖν

7 μὴ...γά: that...; fearing clause, μὴ + subj. εἰς παρουσίαν: present; pple πάρειμα

8 δι: this one; demonstrative

9 χαλεπός: with difficulty

ἀν...πείσαμι: I would...; potential opt.

c1 ὡς: that...

δότε γε: when at any rate...

2 φοβεῖσθε: you are afraid; 2s mid.

κάλλιστα: most nobly, most beautifully, 2

κελεύω: to bid, order, command, exhort, 8

κύκνος: ὁ: a swan, 4

μαντικός: ἦ, ὁ ὄν: prophetic, oracular, 3

μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19

ὀκυέω: to shirk, hesitate, hang back, 1

ὄχλος: τὸ: trouble; crowd, throng, mob, 1

παρέχειν: to provide, furnish, supply, 16

πλεῖστος: ἦ, ὁ ὄν: most, greatest, 3

πρόσθεν: before, 10

πολυφορά: ἦ: misfortune, mishap, 3

προκήρυκα: τῇ νόμῳ: before, 10

παρο: ἀντικήν: comparative adv.

πρόσθεν: to provide, furnish, supply, 16

πλεῖστος: ἦ, ὁ ὄν: most, greatest, 3

πρόσθεν: before, 10

μὴ...διάκειμα: that...; ‘lest,’ fearing clause, μὴ governs a subjunctive for fear regarding the future and an indicative, as here, for a fear regarding the present or past (S 2233)

δυσκολώτερον: comparative adv.

3 τοι: somewhat, at all; acc. of extent by degree with the comparative

τῶν κύκνων: than...; gen. of comparison τὴν μαντικήν (τέχνην): in prophetic art; acc. of respect

85a Πλεῖστα καὶ κάλλιστα: superlative advs.

2 γεγονότες: being joyous because; pl. pple οὐπέρ...: whose servants they are

3 αὐτῶν: their own; ἐαυτῶν
καὶ τῶν κύκνων καταψεύδονται, καὶ φασιν αὐτοὺς θρηνούντας τὸν θάνατον ὑπὸ λύπης ἐξάδεωσιν, καὶ οὐ λογίζονται ὅτι οὐδὲν ὄρνεων ᾳδει ἄτονος εἰς ὑπὸ τινὰ ἀλλήν λύπην λυπηταί, οὐδὲ αὐτὴ ἢ τε ἁγιῶν καὶ χελιδῶν καὶ ὁ ἐποψ, ἃ δὴ φασι διὰ λύπην θρηνούντα ἄτε. ἁλλ’ οὔτε ταῦτα μοι φαίνεται λυποῦμενα ἄτεν οὔτε οἱ κύκνοι, ἀλλ’ ἄτε οἴμαι τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος ὄντες, μαντικοὶ τέ εἰσι καὶ προειδότες τὰ ἐν Ἀιδοῦ ἁγαθὰ ἄδουσι καὶ τέρπονται ἐκεῖνην τῇ ἁμέρᾳ διαφερόντως ἤ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν χρόνῳ. ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἡγοῦμαι ὁμόδουλός τε εἶναι τῶν κύκνων καὶ ἑρός τοῦ αὐτοῦ θεοῦ, καὶ οὐ χεῖρον ἑκεῖνων τῇ μαντικήν ἔχειν παρὰ τοῦ δεσπότου, οὐδὲ δυσθυμότερον αὐτῶν τοῦ βίου ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. ἀλλὰ

4 φασιν: they claim; i.e. the people claim
αὐτοὺς: that they...; i.e. geese, acc. subject
5 ὑπὸ: because of...; gen. of cause
6 πειν...ριγ...λυπηταί: 3s pres. subj.
a-contract, c-contract, and e-contract verbs, indefinite temporal clause
7 οὐδὲ: not even
& ἂ δὴ: which very (birds)...; acc. subj., the the neut. pl. refers to neut. τὸ ὄρνεων (l. 4)
φασι: i.e. the people say
8 ταῦτα: these (birds)
b1 ἄτε...δυντεῖν: inasmuch as...; ‘since,’ ἄτε + pple indicates cause from the speaker’s point of view, pple of εἰμι
οἴμαι: parenthetical, οἴμαι
καταψεύδοιται: to speak falsely of (gen) 1
κύκνος, ὁ: a swan, 4
λογίζομαι: to reason, calculate, count, 9
λυπηταί: to cause pain, distress, grief, 5
λύπη, ἡ: pain, grief, 8
μαντικός, -ῆς, -ον: prophetic, oracular, 3
ομόδουλος, -ος, ὁ: fellow slave, 1
ὄρνευ, τὸ (ὄρνις): bird, 1
πεινάω: to be hungry, crave, 1
προ-οίδα: to know beforehand, 3
ριγώω: to be cold, shiver, 1
τέρπομαι: to satisfy, delight, 1
χεῖρων, -οντος, -οντος: worse, inferior, 5
χελιδῶν, -ῶνος, ἡ: a swallow (bird), 1
τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος: Apollo’s (birds); gen. predicate of the pple εἰμι
eἰμι: 3p pres. εἰμι
2 προειδότες: pple προ-οίδα
ἐν Ἀιδοῦ: in Hades’ (house)
3 ἐκεῖνῃ...ἡμέρᾳ: during...; acc. duration
dιαφερόντως ἢ: differently from; i.e. more than
4 καὶ: also
6 οὐ χεῖρον ἑκεῖνων: no worse than these; comparative adv. and gen. of comparison
παρά: from...; gen. of source
7 δυσθυμότερον αὐτῶν: see line 6
τοῦ βίου: from...; gen. of separation

107
Objection: Soul as a Harmony

τοῦτον γ’ ἐνεκα λέγειν τε χρή καὶ ἐρωτάν ὅτι ἄν βούλησθε, ἐως ἄν Αθηναίων ἐώσιν ἄνδρες ἐνδεκα.

καλῶς, ἐφη, λέγεις, ὁ Σωκράτης· καὶ ἐγώ τε σοι ἐρώ ὅ ἄπορω, καὶ αὕ ὀδε, ἥ οὐκ ἀποδέχεται τὰ εἰρημένα. ἐμοὶ γὰρ δοκεῖ, ὃ Σωκράτης, περὶ τῶν τοιούτων ἰσως ὀσπερ καὶ σοὶ τὸ μὲν σαφὲς εἰδέναι ἐν τῷ νῦν βιω ἣ ἀδύνατον εἶναι ἣ παγχάλεπτον τι, τὸ μέντοι αὐτὰ τὰ λεγόμενα περὶ αὐτῶν μὴ οὐχὶ παντὶ τρόπῳ ἐλέγχειυ καὶ μὴ προσφίλεται πρὶν ἂν πανταχῇ σκοπῶν ἀπείτη τις, πάνι μαλθακοῦ εἶναι ἄνδρός· δεῖν γὰρ περὶ αὐτὰ ἐν γε τι τούτων διαπράξασθαι, ἢ μαθεῖν ὅπῃ ἔχει ἢ εὑρεῖ ἢ, εἰ ταῦτα ἀδύνατον, τὸν γοῦν βέλτιστον ὑπὸ ἀνδρωπίνων λόγων λαβόντα καὶ δυσεξελεγκτό-

ἀ-δύνατος, -ov: unable, incapable, impossible, 6
Ἀθηναῖος, -α-, -ov: Athenian, of Athens, 6
ἀνθρώπινος, -η-, -ov: belonging to human, human, 7
ἀπε-εἶπον: to forbid, deny, give up, 1
ἀπο-δέχομαι: to accept, receive, 9
ἀ-πε-ρέχει: be at a loss, puzzled, bewildered, 4
βέλτιστος, -η-, -ov: best, 14
γοῦν: γε οὖν, at least, at any rate, any way, 4
δια-πράττω: to accomplish, effect, 1
δυσ-ε-ελέγχοντος, -ov: difficult to refute, 1
ἐάν: to permit, allow, let be, suffer, 9
ἐλέγχον: cross-examine, refute; disgrace, 1
ἐν-δεκα: eleven, 3

8 ἐρωτάν: inf. σ-contract verb
圬 ἃν: whatever...; ὃ τι, indefinite relative
9 ἔως...ἔσιν: 3p pres. ἐάω
10 καλῶς: well

ἐγὼ τε...καὶ ἄν ὀδε: both I will speak...and in turn this one here (will speak); i.e. Cebes
c1 ἥ οὐκ ἀποδέχεται: in what way he...
relative clause, dat. of manner
τὰ εἰρημένα: pf. pass. pple, λέγω (ἐρ)
2 κατ: also; or ‘too,’ adverbial
3 τὸ...ἐλέγχειν: that to know something reliable; inf. οἶδα is subject of εἶναι
4 τὸ μέντοι αὕ...μὴ οὐχὶ ἐλέγχειν: however, not to question in turn...; μὴ οὐχὶ + inf.
may follow a negated verb; this articular
inf. is the subject of εἶναι from line 6

5 παντὶ τρόπῳ: in...; dat. of manner

ἀπείτη: renounces from examining; 3s aor. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause

6 πάνι μαλθακοῦ εἶναι ἄνδρός: is (the sign) of quite a weak man; gen. predicate, the two articular infinitives τὸ εῖλεγχειν and τὸ προσφίλεται are subject

7 δεῖν γὰρ: for that it is necessary
ἐν γε τι: some one thing at least; γε is restrictive, obj. of aor. inf. διαπράξασθαι
ἡ...ἡ; ἢ: either...or...or
8 ὅπῃ ἔχει: in what way he is able
eὶ ταῦτα (διαπράξασθαι): if (to do) these is
9 τῶν...λόγων: i.e. of things said by men
τατον, ἐπὶ τούτου ὄχοιμενον ὠσπερ ἐπὶ σχεδίας κινδυνεύοντα
διαπλέσαι τὸν βίον, εἰ μὴ τις δύναιτο ἀσφαλεστερον καὶ
ἀκινδυνότερον ἐπὶ βεβαιοτέρου ὁχήματος, ἥ λόγου θείου
tυνός, διαπορευθήναι. καὶ δὴ καὶ νῦν ἔγωγε οὐκ ἐπαισχυν-
θήσομαι ἐρέσθαι, ἐπειδὴ καὶ σὺ ταύτα λέγεις, οὐδὲ ἐμα-
tὸν αἰτίασομαι ἐν ὑστέρῳ χρόνῳ ὅτι νῦν οὐκ ἐξον ᾧ μοι
δοκεῖ. ἐμοὶ γὰρ, ὡς Σώκρατες, ἐπειδὴ καὶ πρὸς ἐμαυτὸν
καὶ πρὸς τόνδε σκοπῶ τὰ εἰρήμενά, οὐ πάνυ φαινεται ἱκανῶς
εἰρήσθαι.

καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης, ἰσως γάρ, ἔφη, ὡς ἑταῖρε, ἀληθῇ σοὶ ε
φαίνεται’ ἀλλὰ λέγε στὴ δὴ οὐχ ἱκανῶς.

ταύτῃ ἐμοιγε, ἡ δ’ ὡς, ἡ δὴ καὶ περὶ ἀρμονίας άν τις καί

αιτίασμαι: accuse, charge; blame, 4
ἀ-σφαλῆς, -ῆς: safe, secure, not liable to fall 6
βέβαιος, -ας, -ων: steadfast, steady, firm, 3
δια-πλέω: to sail through, 1
dia-πορεύω: to travel through, 1
dύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἐ-αἰσχύνομαι: to be ashamed of, 1
ἐρομαι: to ask, enquire, question, 12
ἐταίρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11

δ1 ἐπὶ τούτου ὄχοιμενον: conveyed upon it
ἐπὶ: upon
2 διαπλέσαι: aor. inf. διαπλέω
ἐι μὴ...δύναιτο: unless one should...; pres.
opt., equivalent to an apodosis in a fut. less
vivid condition
3 ἀσφαλεστερον καὶ ἀκινδυνότερον:
comparative adverbs
ἡ λόγου θείου τυνός: or some divine
proclamation; in apposition to ὁχήματος
4 διαπορευθήναι: aor. pass. dep. inf.
καὶ δὴ καὶ νῦν: and in particular now; ‘and
especially now’, lit. ‘and indeed also now’
5 καὶ: also, too
6 ἐπιου: 1s aor. λέγω
7 πρὸς...πρὸς...σκοπῶ: I examine with...

θείος, -ας, -ων: divine, sent by the gods, 15
κινδυνεύοντα: to risk, venture; it is likely, 7
κινδυνός, ὁ: risk, venture, 2
δπτη: where; in what way, how, 11
ὄχεω: to ride, carry, convey, 1
ὄχημα, -ατος, το: raft, vehicle, carriage, 2
σχέδια, ἡ: raft, make-shift boat, 1
ὕστερός, -ας, -ων: later, last; adv. later 17

with...; i.e. I speak to...and to...
9 τα εἰρήμενα: pf. pass. pple λέγω (ἐπ)
οὐ πάντω: not quite
10 εἰρήσθαι: pf. pass. inf. λέγω (ἐπ)
e2 ἀλλὰ: come...; as often preceding an
imperative
δπτη δὴ: in what way precisely...
3 οὐχ ἱκανῶς (φαίνεται εἰρήσθαι): supply
verbs from d9-10
3 ταύτῃ...δὴ: in this way...in which very
way; dat. of manner, demonstrative and
relative pronouns
ἐμοιγε: supply ἱκανῶς φαίνεται
εἰρήσθαι
καὶ...καὶ: both...and...
Objection: Soul as a Harmony

λύρας τε καὶ χορδῶν τὸν αὐτὸν τοῦτον λόγον εἴποι, ὡς ἡ μὲν ἄρμονία ἀόρατον καὶ ἀσώματον καὶ πάγκαλὸν τι καὶ θεϊκόν ἐστιν ἐν τῇ ἡρμοσμένῃ λύρᾳ, αὐτῇ δ' ἡ λύρα καὶ αἱ χορδαῖ σώματα τε καὶ σωματοειδὴ καὶ σύνθετα καὶ γεώδη ἑστὶ καὶ τοῦ θυτοῦ συγγενῆ. ἐπειδὰν ὡς ἤ κατάξῃ τις τὴν λύραν ἢ διατέμη καὶ διαρρήξῃ τὰς χορδὰς, εἰ τις διασχυρίζοιτο τῷ αὐτῷ λόγῳ ὀστερόν σὺ, ὡς ἀνάγκη ἐτι ἐναι τὴν ἄρμονίαν ἑκείνην καὶ μὴ ἀπολωλέναι-οὐδεμία γὰρ μηχανὴ ἃν ἐγὼ τὴν μὲν λύραν ἐτι ἐναι διερρογυνών τῶν χορδῶν καὶ τὰς χορδὰς θυτοειδεῖς οὕσας, τὴν δὲ ἄρμονίαν

4 ἃν τις...ἐἰποί: one might say; potential opt. ὡς: (namely) that...; in apposition to λόγον, 86a1 ἡρμοσμένην: tuned; pf. pass. ἄρμοξον 2 σωματοειδῆ...γεώδη...συγγενή: neuter pl.: σωματοειδὲ-α, γεώδε-α, συγγενε-α 3 κατάξῃ, διατέμη, διαρρήξῃ: 3s subj. in an indefinite temporal clause; aor. pres. and aor. subj. respectively 5 τῷ...λόγῳ: with...; dat. of means ὡς: that...; governed by διασχυρίζοιτο

85e

ά-ἀρατος, -ον: unseen, invisible, 12 ἄρμοξο: harmonize, fit together, join, adapt 7 ἄ-σώματος, -ον: disembodied, incorporeal, 1 γεώδης, -ες: earth-like, earthy, 2 δια-ρρήγινομι: break through, 2 δια-τέμινοι: to cut through, cut apart, 1 δια-σχυρίζομαι: affirm confidently; rely on, 5 θεῖος, -α, -ον: divine, sent by the gods, 15 θυτο-ειδής, -ες: of mortal nature or kind, 1 ἄνάγκη: (it is) necessary ἄπολωλέναι: pf. act. inf. ἀπόλλυμι οὐδεμία...ἀπολομένην: a very large parenthetical statement (lines a6-b2) οὐδεμία...ἐν εἴ: there would be no way that...; potential opt. εἰμί

85e

θυτός, -η, -όν: mortal, liable to death, 7 κατ-ἀγνωμι: to shatter, break in pieces, 1 λύρα, ἡ: lyre, 11 μηχανή, ἡ: means, instrument, contrivance, 2 παγ-καλός, -η, -ον: very beautiful or noble, 1 συγ-γενής, -ής: related; subst. relative, 6 σῦν-θετός, -ον: put together, composite, 4 σωματο-ειδής, -ες: corporeal, bodily, 5 χορδή, ἡ: string, gut-string, 7
ἀπολωλέναι τὴν τοῦ θείου τε καὶ ἀθανάτου ὁμοφυή τε καὶ ξηρός, προτέραν τοῦ θυτοῦ ἀπολομένην—ἂλλὰ φαίη ἀνάγκη ἔτι που ἐίναι αὐτὴν τὴν ἁρμονίαν, καὶ πρότερον τὰ ξύλα καὶ τὰς χορδὰς κατασαπησθεῖσαι πρὶν τι ἐκείνην παθεῖν—καὶ γὰρ οὖν, ὥς Σώκρατες, οἶμαι ἔγωγε καὶ αὐτὸν σε τοῦτο ἐντεθυμήσατο, ὅτι τοιούτων τι μάλιστα ὑπολαμβάνομεν τὴν ψυχὴν εἶναι, ὡσπερ ἐντεταμένου τοῦ σώματος ἠμῶν καὶ συνεχομένου ὑπὸ θερμοῦ καὶ ψυχροῦ καὶ ξηροῦ καὶ ψυχροῦ τοιούτων τινῶν, κράσιν εἶναι καὶ ἁρμονίαν

ἐν-θυμέμοια: to take to heart, ponder, 2
ἐν-τείνω: to stretch, strain tight, 3
θείος, -α, -ου: divine, sent by the gods, 15
θερμός, -η, -ον: hot, warm; subst. heat, 11
θυτός, -η, -ον: mortal, liable to death, 7
κατα-σήπια: to make rotten, let rot, 2
κράσις, -εως, η: mixing, blending, 4
ξηρός, -ά, -όν: dry, 1

πρότεραν τοῦ θυτοῦ ἀπολομένην: perishing earlier than (the harmony akin) to the mortal human; supply missing words from the context above

ἀλλὰ φαίη: but one would claim; resuming the condition in 86a4-5; 1s opt. equivalent to an apodosis in a fut. less vivid

ἀνάγκη: that (it is) necessary

πρότερον: previously; adverbial acc.

κατασαπησθεῖσαι: fut. mid., the preceding accusatives are the subject
c autw toitwn thn psuchh hmwn, epieidhn tauta kalw kai
metrws kratei pros allhla-ei oin tyuchanei th psuchh odsa
armonia tis, deilou oti, othan kalaethi to swma hmwn
ametrous he epitathu upo voswn kai allwn kakwn, thn men
psuchh anaqykei euthus uparchei apolwlenai, kaieter odsan
theoatithn, wsspere kai ai allai armoniai ai t' en tois
phogousai kai en tois twn demourgwn ergous paisi, ta de
leilana toj swmatos ekastou polwn chrwnon paraamenev,
d eves an he katakathh he kataasapti—ora oin pros toitwn twn
logon ti phsomev, ean ti xizoi krasov odsan thn psuchh
twn en twi swmati en twi kalousmovn banaatwr prwtwn aplot-
lusraith.

86c Objection: Soul as a Harmony

d 3s aor. subj. kefanumi
3s aor. subj. eimi, see p. 20
kata-kaio: to burn down, burn completely, 1
kata-sipw: to make rotten, let rot, 2
keranymi: to mix, mingle, 1
kraisoi, -ew, he: mixing, blending, 4
leiyavon, to: remains, remnant, 2
metrios, -a, -ov: moderate, in due measure, 7
vossos, o: illness, sickness, 5
para-meno: to abide, remain, 2
up-arxh: to be there, be ready, be available 4
phogou, o: voice, utterance, sound 2
kapalw: to slacken, loosen, release, 3
kalw: well; beautifully, 11

kata-kata, kataasapti: 3s aor. pass.
subjunctive in an indefinite temporal clause
katakaio, katastip: 3s aor. subj. kefanumi
3rd sg. aor. subj. eimi, see p. 20
3s pres. subj. o-contract verb as
apodosis of a fut. more vivid condition
(ei an + subj., fut. ind.)
ti psuchh...apollusia: that...; ind. disc.
governed by axios; krasov odsan is a
participial phrase modifying psuchh

c1 kalw: well
2 metrios: in due proportion, in due measure
kratei: 3s aor. subj. kefanumi

3 deilou oti: it is clear that...
kalalw: 3s aor. subj. kapalw in an
indefinite temporal clause

5 anaqykei uparchei: (it is) necessary
apollowlw: pf. act. inf. apollwmi
kaieter: although...; introducing, as often,
a pple

6 theostatum: superlative, predicate of odsan
7 polw chrwv: for...; acc. of duration
da1 he...he...: either...or

112
diaβλέψας οὖν ὁ Σωκράτης, ὥσπερ τὰ πολλὰ εἰώθει, καὶ μειδιάςας, δύκαια μέντοι, ἔφη, λέγει ὁ Σωμίας. εἰ οὖν τις ὑμῶν εὐπορότερος ἐμοὶ, τί οὐκ ἀπεκρίνατο; καὶ γὰρ οὐ φαύλως ἔσκειν ἀπτομένῳ τοῦ λόγου. δοκεὶ μέντοι μοι χρῆναι πρὸ τῆς ἀποκρίσεως ἐτί πρότερον Κέβητος ἀκούσαι τί αὐτὶ ἐγκαλεῖ τῷ λόγῳ, ἢν χρόνου ἐγγενομένου βουλευσόμεθα τί ἐροῦμεν, ἑπεὶτα [δὲ] ἀκούσαντας ἡ συγχωρεῖν αὐτοῖς εάν τι δοκώσι προσφέδεν, ἐὰν δὲ μή, οὕτως ἢδη ὑπερδικεῖν τοῦ λόγου. ἀλλ' ἀγε, ἢ δ' ὡς, ὃ Κέβης, λέγε, τί ὕν τὸ σὲ αὖθατον [ἀπιστιαν παρέχει.]

λέγω δῇ, ἢ δ' ὡς ὁ Κέβης. ἐμοὶ γὰρ φαίνεται ἐτί ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ ὁ λόγος εἶναι, καὶ, ὅπερ ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν ἐλέγομεν,
87 ταύτων ἐγκλημα ἔχειν. ὅτι μὲν γάρ ἦν ἡμῶν ἡ ψυχὴ καὶ πρὶν εἰς τόδε τὸ εἰδὸς ἐλθεῖν, οὐκ ἀνατίθημι μὴ ὧδε πάνυ χαριέντως καὶ, εἰ μὴ ἔπαχθές ἐστίν εἰπεῖν, πάνυ ἰκανώς ἀποδείχθαι· ὥς δὲ καὶ ἀποθανόντων ἡμῶν ἦτι ποιον ἔστων, οὔ μοι δοκεῖ τῇ γάρ μοι πᾶσι τούτοις πάνυ πολὺ διαφέρειν. τῇ οὖν, ἂν φαίη ὁ λόγος ἢ ἐπὶ ἀποτελεῖσθαι πολὺ ὧν τὸ ἀνθρώπινον τὸ γε ἀσθενεύστηρον ἦτι ὃν, τὸ δὲ πολὺ· χρωνιάτερον ὦτο δοκεῖ σοι ἄναγκαιον εἴναι ἐτί σώζεσθαι ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ; πρὸς δὴ τούτῳ τόδε ἐπίσκεψαι, εἰ τί λέγω·

87a1 ταύτων: the same; τὸ αὐτὸν ὅτι...ἡν: that...existed; impf. εἰμί καὶ πρὶν: even before...; + aor. inf. ἔρχομαι 2 ἀνατίθημι: i.e. I do not reject 3 μὴ οὔχι: that..., ‘lest...’; οὔ μὴ + inf. may follow a negated verb expressing denial or prohibition (S 2745) 4 ἀποδείχθαι: pf. pass. inf. ὡς δὲ: but that...; supply ἡ ψυχὴ as subject of ἔστιν ἀποθανόντων ἡμῶν: gen. abs., aor. pple ἀποθανόντων 5 τῇ γάρ: in the following way; ‘in this here way’, dat. of manner ὡς ἐν...: that... 6 ψυχῇ: supply linking ἔστιν σώματος: than...; gen. of comparison ἐπ-αχθης -ἔς: burdensome, ponderous, heavy 1 ἐπι-σκέπτομαι: to examine, inspect, 2 ἰσχυρὸς, -ά, -ών: strong, powerful; severe, 5 πολυ-χρονιώτερος, -ά, -ων: long-existing, 6 συγ-χαρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13 σφέζω: to save, keep, preserve, 4 τῇ: here; in this way, thus, 8 χαριέντως: gracefully, elegantly, 2

7 πᾶσι τούτοις: in all things; dat. of respect πολὺ: far; or ‘much’ adverbial acc. (acc. of extent by degree) διαφέρειν: that (the soul) surpasses; i.e. is superior τῇ: why....? 8 ἃν φαίη ὁ λόγος: (as) the argument might say; parenthetical, potential opt. φημί ἀποθανόντως τοῦ ἀνθρώπου: gen. abs. 9 τὸ γε ἀσθενεύστερον: the weaker part in fact...; i.e. the body τὸ δὲ πολυχρωνιώτερον: but...that the more long-lived part...; i.e. the soul b2 ἐπίσκεψαι: aor. imperative τὶ λέγω: I am saying anything (important); i.e. not speaking nonsense
εἰκόνος γάρ τινος, ὡς ἐοικεν, κάγω ὅσπερ Συμμίας δέομαι. ἐμοὶ γάρ δοκεῖ ὁμοίως λέγεσθαι ταῦτα ὅσπερ ἂν τις περὶ ἀνθρώπου ύφάντου πρεσβύτου ἀποθανόντος λέγοι τούτον τὸν λόγον, ὅτι οὐκ ἀπόλολεν ὦ ἀνθρώπος ἀλλ' ἔστιν που σῶς, τεκμήριον δὲ παρέχοντο θοιμάτων ὥς ἁμαίνεις ἵνα ἐστὶ σῶν καὶ οὐκ ἀπόλολεν, καὶ εἶ τις ἀπιστοῖς αὐτῷ, ἀνερωτήματο πότερον πολυχρονιώτερόν ἐστιν ὧς ἀνθρώπου ἣ ἱματίῳ ἐν χρείᾳ τε ὄντος καὶ φορουμένου, ἀποκριμαμένου δὴ [τινος] ὃτι πολὺ τὸ τοῦ ἀνθρώπου, οἴοιτο ἀποδείξατί οἳ παντὸς ἥρκε μᾶλλον ὑ γε ἀνθρώπου σῶς ἔστιν, ἐπειδή τὸ γε ὄλιγον χρονιώτερον οὐκ ἀπόλολεν. τὸ δ' οἴμαι, ὡς Συμμία, οὐχ οὕτως ἔχει· σκόπει γάρ καὶ σὺ

ἀμπ-έχω: to wrap around, to surround, 1
ἀν-ερωτάω: to ask about, inquire into, 1
ἀ-πιστέω: to distrust, not believe (+ dat.), 8
ἀπο-δείκνυμι: demonstrate, prove 11
ἀπο-κρίνωμαι: to answer, reply, 13
γένος, -εος, τό: lineage, family, stock; race, 7
δέομαι: lack, need, want; ask for (+ gen.) 7
eἰκών, -όνος, ἢ: a likeness, image; statue, 3
ἱμάτιον, τό: a cloak or mantle, 7
ὀλίγο-χρόνος, -ον: lasting a short time, 2

3 εἰκόνος τινος: a certain imagery; separation
cάγω: I too; καὶ ἔγω
4 ἄν τις...λέγων: one might say...
ἀποθανόντος: aor. pple ἀποθανοῦσα
ὅτι: (namely) that...
ἀπόλολεν: did perish; aor. ἀπόλλυμι
7 τεκμήριον: as evidence
(ἄν) παρέχοντο: he might...; supply ἄν, potential opt. parallel to ἂν λέγοι above
θοιμάτων: τὸ ἱμάτιον
ἡμπείχετο: impf. mid. ἀμπ-έχω
αὐτός: (the weaver) himself
8 ὑφναμένους: aor. mid. pple
ὅτι: that...; following τεκμήριον
ἵστι σῶν: that (the cloak) is; proleptic use of ἱμάτιον; note that σῶν is neut. predicate modifying ἱμάτιον
ἀπόλολεν: aor. ἀπόλλυμι

3 ἀρέχοιτο: to distrust, not believe (+ dat.), 8
πολύ-χρονος, -α, -ον: long-existing, 6
πότερος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
πρεβύτης, ὃ: old man, 1
σῶς, ὡς, ἢ: safe and sound, safe, sound, 6
tεκμήριον, τό: sign, indication, proof, 5
ὑφάνων: to weave, 2
ὑφάντης, -ος, ὃ: weaver, 2
φορέω: bear, carry, 1

3 ἀποκριμαμένου δή [τινος]: with (one) then responding; gen. abs.
pολυ (πολυχρονιώτερον) τὸ γένος τοῦ ἀνθρώπου: far (more long-lived) is that of a human being; adv. acc. (acc. of extent of degree); add words missing by ellipsis
ἴστι: he would think; parallel to ἂν λέγοι ἀποδείξατί that it...; pf. pass. inf.
ὁποία: that...

4 παντὸς...μᾶλλον: more than everything
ὅ γε ἀνθρώπος: the man at least
5 τὸ γε ὄλιγοχρονιώτερον: i.e. the cloak
6 τὸ δ'...燋ει: but this is not so; see p. 7
σκόπει: consider...; σκοπέ-ε, sg. imperative
ἄλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
ἀ-σθενής, -ές: without strength, weak, feeble 3
βίω: to live, 4
eἰκών, -όνος, ἡ: a likeness, image; statue, 3
ἐνεκα: for (the sake of), because of, (gen.) 13
ἐτος, -έως, τό: a year, 2
eὐ-θῆς, -ές: foolish, simple-natured, silly, 3
ἰμάτιον, τό: a cloak or mantle, 7
κατα-τρίβω: wear out, rub down, 4
μέτριος, -α, -ου: moderate, in due measure, 7

7 πᾶς: everyone; i.e. anyone
dὲν ὑπολάβοι: potential opt.
eὐθές: a foolish thing; neuter acc. sg.

8 πολλά...τοιαῦτα ἰμάτια: many such cloaks
eκείνων: than...; gen. of comparison
ἀπόλοωλεν: perished; aor. ἀπόλλυμι
πολλάν δοντων: although...; participial phrase is concessive
tοῦ τελευταίου (ἰματίου): than the last

1 d τοῦ τελευταίου (ἰματίου): than the last (cloak)...; gen. of comparison
οἴμαι: parenthetical, οἴομαι
οὐδέν τι μάλλον: not at all more; modifies the comparative adj. that follows; οὐδέν τι is acc. of extent by degree
2 ἰματίου: than...; gen. of comparison
3 τὴν αὐτήν...εἰκόνα: the same imagery

4 δέχατο...οὐμα: the soul in relation to the body would accept; potential aor. opt
αὐτά ταῦτα: these very things; intensive
5 ὡς... (namely) that...
6 ἀλλὰ γὰρ: but in fact; ‘and yet,’ introduces an objection (S 2819, GP 105)

7 τοῦ τελευταίου (ἰματίου): than the last
ὁ... βιός: one might live; 3rd potential pres. opt. o-contract verb,

8 πολλά ἐν τῷ καὶ... ἄν... especially...: ‘both otherwise and’ a common idiom

9 ἐπεὶ... ἀπολυτίκον: is in flux...; indicatives assimilated into opt. by preceding optatives

ἐτί: belongs with the following gen. abs
...

ΦΑΙΔΩΝ 87e

άλλα ἡ ψυχή ἀεὶ τὸ κατατριβόμενον ἀνυφαῖνοι-ἀναγκαῖον μεντῶν ἐπ', ὅποτε ἀπολλύοιτο ἡ ψυχή, τὸ τελευταῖον ὄφασμα τυχεῖν αὐτὴν ἔχουσαν καὶ τούτῳ μόνῳ προτέραν ἀπόλυοθαί, ἀπολομένης δὲ τῆς ψυχῆς τότ' ἡδή τῆν φύσιν τῆς ἀσθενείας ἐπιδεικνύοι τὸ σῶμα καὶ ταχὺ σαπὲν διοίχοιτο. ὡστε τοῦτῳ τῷ λόγῳ οὔπω ἅξιον πιστεύεισαν θαρρεῖν ὡς ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνωμεν ἐτι που ἡμῶν ἡ ψυχὴ ἔστιν. εἰ γάρ τις καὶ πλέον ἐτι τῷ λέγοντι ἢ ἃ σὺ λέεις συγχωρήσειν, δοὺς αὐτῷ μὴ μόνον ἐν τῷ πρὶν καὶ γενέσθαι ἡμᾶς χρόνῳ ἐναι ἡμῶν τὰς ψυχὰς, ἀλλὰ μηδὲν κωλύειν καὶ ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνωμεν ἐνίων ἐτι ἐνιαί καὶ ἐσεσθαι καὶ πολλάκις γενησεσθαι καὶ ἀποθανεῖσθαι αὕθει—οὕτω γάρ αὐτὸ φύσει

οπότε: when, by what time, 6
οὐ-πω: not yet, 3
πιστεύω: to trust, believe in, rely on, 5
πλέων: more, greater, 17
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
σάπτω (σήμα): make rotten; corrupt, waste, 2
συν-χωρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13
tαχύς, είς: quick, swift, hastily, 9
tελευταῖος, -ας, -ον: last, final, 5
ὕφασμα, -ατος, τό: woven web, woven robe 1
ψυχή, -εος, η: nature, character; form, 11

αὐ-υφαῖνω: to weave anew, weave again, 1
ἀξίος, -α, -ον: worthy of, deserving of, 15
ἀ-θένεια, η: weakness, feebleness, 4
αὖθις: back again, later, 9
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
δι-οξιμα: be clean gone, be quite gone, 1
ἐνιοί, -ας, -α: some, 7
ἐπί-δεικνυμι: to indicate, point out, prove, 5
ἦδή: already, now, at this time, 16
θαρρεώ: be confident or bold, take courage, 9
κατα-τρίβω: wear out, rub down, 4
κωλύω: to hinder or prevent, 5

ἐ1 ἀλλά: yet; or rather, introducing the apodosis
ἀ-υφαῖνοι... ἀπολλύοιτο: indicatives made opt. by assimilation to preceding optatives ἀ-αγκαίον μεντ(ο) ἐν εἴη: it would be...; apodosis in the fut. less vivid condition
τὸ τελευταῖον ὑφασμα: acc. object
τυχεῖν αὐτὴν ἔχουσαν: that it (the soul) happens to have...; i.e. ψυχή, ind. disc. governed by ἀ-αγκαίον ἐν εἴη
τούτῳ μόνῳ: than...; i.e. the body, gen. of comparison with προτέραν
ἀπολομένης... ψυχή: gen. abs. ἀνδρωτος τῆς φύσις... ἀσθενείας: i.e. natural weakness
ἐπιδεικνυμι... διοίχοιτο: indicatives made opt. by assimilation to preceding optatives σαπὲν: neuter sg. aor. pass. pple σάπτω

modifying τὸ σῶμα

πολυτερ τῷ λόγῳ: dat. of pple πιστεύω
ἀξίον (ἐστίν): it is not deserving (for us); + inf., impersonal construction
ὡς: that...

πλέον... συνχωρήσειν: one were to yield even more...; + dat. ind. object; opt.

δοῦσ: granting...; ‘allowing’ nom. sg. aor. pple. διδωμι
μή μόνον... ἀλλά: not only... but
πρὶν καὶ γενέσθαι ἡμᾶς: before we were born also; modifying ἐν τῷ χρόνῳ
ἐλεια: that... existed; governed by δοῦσ
μηδέν κωλύει: that nothing prevents...;
ἐνεώς (that the souls) of some;
ἐσεσθαι... ἀποθανεῖσθαι: fut. infs., εἰμι

αὐτὸ φύσει: that it by nature...; i.e. soul
The image contains a page from a Greek text, with some English annotations. The page appears to be discussing various Greek words and phrases related to concepts such as fear, dread, shrink from, and endurance. It includes definitions and usages of words like δείδω (to give, offer, grant, provide), θαρρεῖ (be confident, take courage, be bold), and ὄταροῦν (for anyone whomsoever of us). The page also contains examples and conditional clauses in Greek, explaining their usage and meanings.
πάντες οὖν ἰκούσαντες εἰπόντων αὐτῶν ἀδήσως διετέθη—κατακαταµαθαθεὶς, ὥς ὠστερον ἐλέγομεν πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ὅτι ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμπροσθεν λόγου σφόδρα πεπεισμένους ἦμᾶς πάλιν ἑδόκουν ἀναταραξαί καὶ εἰς ἀπιστίαν καταβαλεῖν οὐ μόνον τοῖς προερημένοις λόγοις, ἀλλὰ καὶ εἰς τὰ ὠστερον μέλλοντα ῥηθῆσεθαι, μὴ οὐδενὸς άξιοι εἰμεν κριταὶ ἤ καὶ τὰ πράγματα αὐτά ἀπίστα ἥ.

EX. ἐν τοῖς θεοῖς, ὁ Φαίδων, συγγυνώμην γε ἔχω ὑμῖν. καὶ γὰρ αὐτόν με νῦν ἰκούσαντά σου τοιοῦτόν τι λέγειν πρὸς ἐμαυτόν ἐπέρχεται ἡ τίνι οὖν ἐτι πιστεύσομεν λόγῳ; δ ὡς γὰρ σφόδρα πιθανός ὑν, ὃν ὁ Σωκράτης ἔλεγε λόγον, νῦν εἰς ἀπιστίαν καταπέπτωκεν. ἑαυτοῦ γὰρ μοι ὁ ἀκριτῆς, ὃ: a judge,decider, 1

κριτῆς, ὃ: a judge,decider, 1

μέλλων: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19

νῃ: by...(+ acc, invoking a god ), 14

πιθανός, ἢ, -ον: persuasive, plausible, 3

πιστεύω: to trust, believe in, rely on (dat) 5

πράγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18

προ-λέγω: to say or mention beforehand, 4

συγ-γνώμη, ἢ: forgiveness, sympathy, 1

σφάδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18

趵τερος, -α, -ον: later, last; adv. later 17

μη...εἰμεν...نهار: that we were...be...; ‘lest,’ a fearing clause in secondary sequence with 1p. pres. opt. εἰμί and 3s. pres. subj. εἰμί; though opt. is more common, a subj. in secondary sequence presents a fear vividly (S 2226)

8 νῃ τοῖς θεοῖς: in exclamation

συγγυνώμην γε ἔχω ὑμῖν: I certainly have sympathy for you all

9 καὶ γὰρ: for in fact...

αὐτὸν με: that I myself...; subj. of λέγειν

σου: gen. of source, obj. of ἰκούσαντα

πρὸς ἐμαυτόν ἐπέρχεται: it occurs to me that...; impersonal, governs an acc. + inf. τινι...λόγοι: what account...?

2 ὡς...πιθανός ὧν: how exceedingly persuasive though it is, the account; the ppie εἰμί is concessive, supply ὃ λόγος

καταπέπτωκεν: pf. καταπέπτω

καταπέπτωκεν: pf. καταπέπτω
λόγος οὐτός ἀντιλαμβάνεται καὶ νῦν καὶ ἀεὶ, τὸ ἀρµονίαν τινὰ ἡµῶν εἶναι τὴν ψυχήν, καὶ ὡσπερ ύπέµνησεν µε ῥῆθεις ὅτι καὶ αὐτῷ µοι ταῦτα προµέστοκα. καὶ πάνι δέοµαι πάλιν ὡσπερ εξ ἁρχῆς ἄλλου τινὸς λόγου ὃς µε πείαε ὅς τοῦ ἀποθανόντος οὐ συναποθνήσκει ἡ ψυχή. λέγε ὁν πρὸς Δίως τῇ ὁ Σωκράτης µετήλθε τὸν λόγον; καὶ πότερον ἐκάκεινος, ὡσπερ ὑµᾶς φής, ἐνήδηλος τὶ εὐγένετο ἀχθόµενος ἡ ὁ, ἀλλὰ πρῶς ἐβοήθησεν τῷ λόγῳ; [ἢ] καὶ ἴκανος ἐβοήθησεν ἡ ἐνδεώς; πάντα ἡµῖν δίελθε ὡς δύναςαι ἀκριβέστατα.

ΦΑΙ. καὶ µήν, ὡς Ἐξέκρατες, πολλάκις θαυµάσας
5 Σωκράτης οὐ πώποτε µάλλον ἡγάσθην ἡ τότε παραγενόµενος.

89 τὸ µὲν οὖν ἔχειν ὧτι λέγοι ἐκεῖνος ἵσως οὖθεν ἄτοπον· ἀλλὰ

αὐγαµαί: to admire, wonder, marvel at,
ἀκριβῆς, -ης: exact, accurate, precise,
ἀντι-λαµβάνω: take hold of, captivate +gen
ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning; rule, office,
ἄ-τοπος, -ου: strange, odd, extraordinary,
ἀθοµία: to be burdened, grieved, pained,
βοήθω: to come to help, rescue, aid (dat)
δέοµαι: lack, need, want; ask for (+ gen.)
δι-έρχοµαι: to go or pass through,
δύναµαι: to be able, can, be capable,
ἐν-δεώς: defectively, insufficiently,
ἐν-διέλθη, -ῆ: visible, manifest, clear,

4 ἀντιλαμβάνεται: with partitive gen µου
καὶ...καί: both...and
τὸ...ἐναι: namely that the soul...; articular
inf. is ind. discourse in opposition to λόγον
δόµεν: as it were

5 ῥήθεις: the account spoken (by you); nom.
sg. aor. pass. pple λέγω (ἐπ)
καὶ...ταῦτα: these things too; nom. subject
προµέστοκα: 3s plpf. mid.

7 ἄλλου τινὸς λόγου: gen. of separation,
obj. of δέοµαι
πείει: fut. πείθω

8 τοῦ ἀποθανόντος: of one...; aor. pple
πρὸς Δίως: by Zeus!; πρὸς + gen. is another
common way of invoking the gods

9 πότερον: whether...
καὶ...καί: that one also; i.e. Socrates

Zeús, ὁ: Zeus, 6
θαυµάζω: to wonder, marvel, be amazed at,
metro-έρχοµαι: to go after, pursue,
µήν: truly, surely, certainly,
παρα-γέγυνοµαι: to come near, be present,
πῃ: in what way, how,
pολλάκις: many times, often, frequently,
pράσος, -ου: mild, gentle, soft,
pρο-δοκέω: seem good (beforehand),
pώ-ποτε: ever yet, ever,
sυν-αποθνήσκω: to die together with,
ὑπο-µιµήσκω: to remind, mention,

ξενιθλος: clearly; the adj. is often translated
ὡς: at all; inner acc. with ἀρµόνειον
ἀλλὰ: but instead,
ἐβοήθησεν: aor. active βοηθέω
διέλθη: go through; i.e. relate, aor. sg.
imperative διέρχοµαι
ἀπός...: as...; + 2s pres. δύναµαι
ἀκριβέστατα: superlative adv.
καὶ µή: well certainly; in acceptance of an
invitation to speak (GP 356) but often used in
tragedy to open a new scene or introduce
a new character (S 2921)

5 ἡγάσθην: Is aor. pass. dep. ἀγαµαί
µὲν οὖν: certainly in fact; in affirmation
τὸ...ἐχειν: that (he) knew...
ὁ τὶ λέγοι: what he was to say; deliberative
οὐδὲν ἄτοπον: (it is) nothing strange that...
ἐγώ εἰμι μάλιστα ἔθαύμασα αὐτοῦ πρῶτον μὲν τούτο, ὡς ἠδὲς καὶ εὐμενὸς καὶ ἀγαμένως τῶν νεανίσκων τὸν λόγον ἀπεδέξατο, ἐπείτα ἦμων ὡς ἦν ἡ ἡθαύμασα ἦν ἱστία ὡς ἃ ὡς ἦν ἵππον περίπέτευσεν ὑπὸ τῶν λόγων, ἐπείτα ὡς καὶ ἦπι ἔδεσα ἄνεκαλέσατο καὶ θυμημένος ἀνεκαλέσατο καὶ προὔτηθεν πρὸς τὸ παρέπεσθαί τε καὶ συσκοπεῖν τὸν λόγον.

EX. πῶς δή; ΦΑΙΔ. ἐγὼ ἔρω. ἤτυχον γὰρ ἐν δεξίᾳ αὐτοῦ καθήμενος παρὰ τὴν κλίνην ἐπὶ χαμαίξηλον τινός, ὦ δὲ ἐπὶ πολὺ ψηλοτέρου ἢ ἐγὼ. καταψήθασα δόμον μου τὴν κεφαλήν καὶ συμπίέσας τὰς ἑπὶ τῶν αὐχένι τρίχας—εἰώθει γάρ, ὅποτε τύχοι, παίζειν μοι ἐν τὰς τρίχας—skirts δέ, ἐφε, ἰσως, ὦ Φαίδων, τὰς καλὰς ταῦτας κόμας ἀπόκερη.

ἀγαμένως: with respect, with admiration
αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize
ἀνα-καλέω: to call back, rally, call up
ἀπο-δέχομαι: to accept, receive
ἀπο-κέρω: clip, cut off
αὕριον: tomorrow
αὐχή, -ένος, ο: the neck, throat
δεξιός, δα, -όν: on the right hand or side
εἰδοθα: to be accustomed, 1
εὐ-μενής, -ες: well-disposed, favorable
ἡδέος: sweetly, pleasantly, gladly
ἡττάομαι: to be defeated, be inferior
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be amazed at
θρίος ο: hair
ἵασω: to heal, cure
ἴσως: perhaps, probably; equally, likely
κάθ-μαι: to sit
κατα-ψάω: stroke with the hand, caress
κεφαλή, ἱ: the head
κλίνῃ, ἱ: couch
κομη, ἱ: hair
νεανίσκος: youth
ὀξύς, -είς, -οῦ: sharp, keen, bitter
ὄποτέ: when, by what time
παιξέω: to play, jest
παρ-έπομαι: follow alongside, accompany
προ-τρέπω: urge on or forward, turn to
συ-σκοπέω: to press or grasp together
ὑψηλος, -ῆς, -οῦ: high, lofty
φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court
χαμαί-ζηλος: low seat, stool

2 αὐτοῦ...τούτο: this (aspect) of him; participial gen.
πρῶτον: adverbial acc.
ὡς: how;...modifies the next three adverbs
4 ὡς: how
ἡμῶς...ἡθαύμου δὲ (ἢ) πεπόνθεμεν...λόγους: he sensed what we had experienced by his words; aor. mid. αἰσθάνομαι governs a participial gen., which is here used proleptically as the acc. obj. and is more suitably the subject of the plpf. πάσχω
5 ὡς ὡς: how well

6 ὡς παρά...beside...

89a 121
The Value of Logos

ἔσουεν, ἢν δ᾽ ἐγώ, ὡς Σώκρατες.
οὐκ, ἂν γε ἐμοὶ πείθῃ.
ἀλλὰ τι; ἢν δ᾽ ἐγώ.

τῆμερον, ἐφη, κἀγὼ τᾶς ἐμᾶς καὶ σὺ ταῦτας, ἐάνπερ γε ἡμῶν ὁ λόγος τελευτήσῃ καὶ μή δυνάμεθα αὐτῶν ἀναβιώ- 

εὶ διασθαί. καὶ ἐγώ; ἂν, εἰ σὺ εἶην καὶ με διαφεύγοι ὁ 

λόγος, ἐνορκοῦν ἂν ποιησαίμην ὡσπερ Ἀργείωι, μή πρότερον 

κομήσεως, πρῶν ἂν νικήσω ἀναμαχόμενος τὸν Σιμμίου τε καὶ 

Κέβητος λόγον.

ἀλλ᾽, ἢν δ᾽ ἐγώ, πρῶς δύο λέγεται οὐδ᾽ ὁ Ἡρακλῆς οἷός 

tε εἶναι.

ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐμέ, ἐφη, τὸν Ἰόλεων παρακάλει, ἦς ἐτι 

φῶς ἐστιν.
παρακαλῶ τοίνυν, ἐφη, οὐχ ὡς Ἡρακλῆς, ἀλλ’ ὡς Ἰόλεως τὸν Ἡρακλῆ.
οὐδὲν διώσει, ἐφη. ἀλλὰ πρῶτον εὐλαβηθῶμεν τι πάθος μὴ πάθωμεν.
τὸ ποιον; ἦν δ’ ἐγὼ.
μὴ γενώμεθα, ἦ δ’ ὦς, μισόλογοι, ὡσπερ οἱ μισάνθρωποι γγυγόμενοι ὡς οὐκ ἔστων, ἐφη, ὅτι ἂν τις μείζον τοῦτον κακὸν πάθοι ἡ λόγους μισήσας. γίγνεται δὲ ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ τρόπου μισολογία τε καὶ μισανθρωπία. ἦ τε γὰρ μισανθρωπία ἐνδύεται ἐκ τοῦ σφόδρα τυλιστείσαι ἄνευ τέχνης, καὶ ἥγησασθαι παντάπασί γε ἀληθῆ ἐναι καὶ ύπνη καὶ πιστὸν τὸν ἃνθρωπον, ἐπειτα ὀλίγον ὑστερον εὑρεῖν τοῦτον πονηρὸν τε καὶ ἀπιστον, καὶ αὕτη ἑτερον καὶ ὅταν τοῦτο

ἄνευ: without, 9
ἀ-πιστος, -ον: not trustworthy, distrustful 2
ἀδί: back again, later, 9
διαφέρω: to carry over; differ, surpass, 8
ἐν-δύμαι: to go into, enter, 2
εὐλαβεῖσαι: be cautious, be careful, beware, 5
εὑρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 8
Ἡρακλῆς: Heracles, 3
Ἰόλεως: 1olaus, 2
μισ-ἀνθρωπία: hatred of mankind, 2
μισ-ἀνθρωπος, -ον: hating mankind, 1
μισέω: to hate, 4
μισο-λογία: hatred of argument, 1
μισο-λογος, -ον: hating argument, 1
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 15
πάθος-εος τό: experience incident passion 11
παντά-παια: all in all, absolutely 15
παρα-καλεῖ: to summon, call to, 2
πιστεύω: to trust, believe in, rely on, 5
πιστός, -η, -ον: trustworthy; credible 2
πνεύμα, -α, -ον: what sort of? what kind of?, 9
πονηρός, -α, -ον: bad, evil; painful, grievous 2
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
φήναι: craft, art, 6
τρόπος, ὅ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17
φην: sound, healthy, wholesome, 7
ὑστερος, -α, -ον: later, last; adv. later 17

9 τοίνυν: accepting an invitation ( GP 571)
ἐφην: see p. 6
ὡς: as
ὥς Ἰόλεως (παρακαλεῖ) τὸν Ἡρακλῆ: as...; supply verb from above
11 οὐδεν διώσει: it will make no difference; inner acc., fut. διαφέρω
πρῶτον: adverbial acc.
3 εὐλαβηθῶμεν: let us...; hortatory subj.
aor. pass. deponent
3 μὴ πάθωμεν τι πάθος: that...; ‘lest’
fearing clause: μὴ + aor. subj. πάσχω
13 τὸ ποιον: what?; the article is not unusual ἦν: I said; impf. ήμι (see pg. 6)

d1 μὴ γενώμεθα: lest...; a fearing clause in response to μὴ πάθωμεν above
2 ὡς οὐκ ἔστων...ὅτι: since it is not possible that...; impersonal ἐστι
ἀν...πάθοι: could suffer; potential aor. opt.
3 μισήσας: nom. sg. aor. pple μισώ
ἐκ τοῦ...τρόπου: from the same manner
5 ἐκ τοῦ...πιστεύσαι: from trusting...;
τις: someone; dat. object
ἡγήσασθαι: that (you) think that...
6 ὑγιέ-α: 3rd decl. acc. sg. with ἀνθρωπον
7 ὀλίγον: a little; adv. (acc. extent by degree)
εὑρεῖν: to find (this one); with πιστεύσαι
8 ἑτερον: i.e the same outcome with another
The Value of Logos

pollakis πάθη τις καὶ ὑπὸ τούτων μάλιστα οὖς ἄν ἡγήσατο
e ὀικειοτάτους τε καὶ ἐταιροτάτους, τελευτῶν δὴ θαμὰ προσ-
κροῦων μισεῖ τε πάντας καὶ ἡγεῖται οὐδὲν οὐδὲν ὑγίες
eἶναι τὸ παράπαν. ἦ σῶκ ἔσθησαι σύ πω τούτῳ γεγονόμενον;
πάνυ γε, ἢν δ’ ἐγώ.
5 ὀύκοιν, ἦ δ’ ὡς, αἰσχρὸν, καὶ δήλον ὅτι ἄνευ τέχνης τῆς
περὶ τάνθρωπεια ὁ τοιοῦτος χρῆσαί ἐπεχείρει τοῖς ἀνθρώ-
ποις; εἴ γάρ ποι μετὰ τέχνης ἔχρητο, ὢσπερ ἔχει οὕτως
90 ἄν ἡγήσατο, τοὺς μὲν χρηστοὺς καὶ πονηροὺς σφόδρα
ὁλίγους εἶναι ἐκατέρως, τοὺς δὲ μεταξὺ πλείστους.
πῶς λέγεις; ἔφην ἐγώ.
โรงพερ, ἦ δ’ ὡς, περὶ τῶν σφόδρα σμικρῶν καὶ μεγάλων:

αἰσθάνομαι: perceive, feel, learn, realize, 11
αἰσχρός -ά- -όν: ugly, shameful, disgraceful 3
ἄνευ: without, 9
ἀνθρώπος, -α- -όν: human, of a human, 3
δῆλος, -η- -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
ἐκάτερος, -α- -όν: each of two, either, 5
ἐπὶ-χειρέω: attempt, try, put one’s hand on, 8
ἐταιροτάτος, ὀ: closest companion, 1
θαμά: often, 2
μεταξύ: between, betwixt, 6
μισέω: to hate, 4
ὀλίγος, -α- -όν: one’s own; subst. relatives, 4
παρά-παν: altogether, absolutely, 3
πλείστος, -η- -ον: most, greatest, 3
πολλακις: many times, often, frequently, 14
πονήρος, -α- -όν: bad, evil, painful, grievous 2
προσ-κροῦω: to clash; knock against, 1
πω: yet, up to this time, 1
σμικρός, -ά- -όν: small, little, 19
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
τέχνη, ἢ: craft, art, 6
ὕπης,-ής: sound, healthy, wholesome, 7
χράομαι: to use, employ, engage, (+ dat.) 11
χρηστός, -η- -ον: good, worthy, 1

3 ἡ...πάθη: 3s aor. subj. πάσχω in a
indefinite temporal clause
ὑπὸ τούτων: because of these (men); gen.
of cause
μάλιστα: especially
ἄν ἡγίσατο: he might consider (x) (y);
potential aor. opt. governs a double acc.
(object and predicate)
e1 τελευτῶν δή: finally; pple as adverb
2 οὐδενός οὐδέν: that nothing of anyone is
altogether sound
3 ἔσθησα: 2s pf. mid. αἰσθάνομαι
4 πάνυ γε: quite so
ἡ: 1s impf. ἦμι, see p. 6
5 ὀύκοιν...αἰσχρόν...δήλον: Then, (is it) not
disgraceful and clear that; add linking verb
ἡ δ’ ὡς: see note on pg. 9
τῆς περὶ τ(α) ἀνθρώπεια: regarding
human nature; prepositional phrase in the
attributive position modifying τέχνης
6 χρῆσατι: to engage with; + dat.
7 εἰ...ἐχρήστο...ἀν ἡγίσατο: if he were
engaging...he would have considered.
mixed contrafactual condition (εἰ + impf.,
ἀν + aor. indicative)
ἕξει οὕτως: is so; see p. 7
90a! τοὺς μὲν...τοὺς δῆ: namely that...and
that...; ind. disc. governed by ἡγίσατο
πλείστους: (are) very many; predicate
3 λέγεις: do you mean

124
οἰεῖ τι σπανίωτερον ἐλναὶ, ἢ σφόδρα μέγαν, ἢ σφόδρα σμικρὸν ἐξευρεῖν ἄνθρωπον ἢ κύνα ἢ ἄλλο ὀτιοῦν; ἢ ἂν ταχὺν ἢ βραδὺν ἢ αἰσχρὸν ἢ καλὸν ἢ λευκὸν ἢ μέλανα; ἢ οὐχ ἥσθησαι ὅτι πάντων τῶν τωντῶν τὰ μὲν ἄκρα τῶν ἑσχάτων σπάνια καὶ ὅλγα, τὰ δὲ μεταξὺ ἄφθονα καὶ πολλὰ;

πάνυ γε, ἢν δ’ ἐγώ
οὐκοῦν οἰεῖ, ἐφῆ, ἐπονηρίας ἄγων προτεθείη, πάνυ ἂν ὅλγοις καὶ ἑνταῦθα τοὺς πρώτους φανῆναι;

εἰκός γε, ἢν δ’ ἐγώ.

εἰκός γάρ, ἐφῆ. ἀλλὰ ταύτη μὲν οὐχ ὁμοίοι οἱ λόγοι τοὺς ἄνθρωπους, ἀλλὰ σοὶ νυνὶ προάγοντος ἐγώ ἐφεσπόμην, ἀλλ’ ἐκείνη, ἢ, ἐπειδὰν τὸς πιστεύῃ λόγῳ τοῦ ἀληθεί

...

5 ὅλα: do you think...?; 2s pres. ὁμοία in a very lengthy question

σπανίωτερον: i.e. more unusual

7 ὧν ὀψί θάνασαι: or have you not perceived?

8 τὸ ἄκρα...ἐσχάτων: the ends of the extremes (are...); add a linking verb

10 τὰ δὲ μεταξὺ: but those inbetween

5 πάνυ γε: quite so, quite indeed; affirmative

οἰεῖ: see line 5

b1 εἴ...προτεθείη...ἀν...φανῆναι: if...should be proposed, would appear; fut. less vivid, here with aor. pass. opt. and an aor. pass. inf. (ἀν aor. pass. inf’ is equiv. to aor. pass. opt. in direct speech)

μέλας, μέλαινα, μέλαν: black, dark, 1

μεταξὺ: between, betwixt, 6

νῦν-δὴ: just now, 15

ὁλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small, 15

ὁστίο-οὐ, ἥπιοιού, ὅτι-οὐ: whosoever, 11

πιστεύω: to trust, believe in, rely on (dat) 5

πονηρίας: wickedness, vice, 1

προ-ἀγω: to lead the way, bring forth, 1

προ-τίθημι: to set forth, set out, propose, 2

συμκρός, -ά, -ον: small, little, 19

σπάνιος, -ά, -ον: rare, scarce, 2

σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18

ταχὺς, εία, υ: quick, swift, hastily, 9

ἀγών: a noun, not pple

καὶ ἑνταῦθα: there also; i.e. in that case

γε: quite, indeed; for emphasis

εἰκός γάρ: (yes) for it is likely

ταύτη: in this way; dat. of manner

ὁμοίοι (εἰσ): predicate; add linking verb

σοῦ...προάγοντος: gen. abs.

ἐφεσπόμην: 1s aor. mid. ἑφ-ἐποιμαί

6 ἐκείνη, ἢ: (I followed) in that way, in which (way one follows) ...; dat. of manner, demonstrative and relative

πιστεύσῃ...ἀληθεί ἐναι: believes some account to be true...; ἀληθεί is a dat. sg. predicate following ἐναι

125
The Value of Logos

εἶναι ἄνευ τῆς περὶ τοὺς λόγους τέχνης, κἀπειτα ὀλίγῳ ὀστερον αὐτῷ δόξῃ ψευδῆς εἶναι, ἐνίοτε μὲν ὄν, ἐνίοτε δ᾽ οὐκ ὄν, καὶ ἀδικ ἐτερος καὶ ἐτερος—καὶ μάλιστα δὴ οἱ περὶ τοὺς ἄντιλογικοῖς λόγους διατρίμπαντες οἰσθ᾽ ὅτι τελευτάντες οἴονται σοφάτατοι γεγονέναι καὶ κατανενοηγέναι μόνοι ὅτι υπὲ τῶν πραγμάτων οὐδενὸς οὐδὲν ὑγίες οὐδὲ βέβαιον υπὲ τῶν λόγων, ἀλλὰ πάντα τὰ ὄντα ἀτεχνικὰ ὃστερ ἐν Εὐρίπῳ ἄνω κάτω στρέφεται καὶ χρόνον οὐδένα ἐν οὐδένι μένει.

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἐφην ἐγώ, ἀληθῆ λέγεις.

οὐκοῦν, ὡς Ἐαδὼν, ἐφη, ὀικτρὸν ἄν εἰ ἦν το πάθος, εἴ ὄντος δὴ τινος ἀληθοῖς καὶ βεβαιοῦ λόγου καὶ δυνατοῦ

κάτω: downwards, below, beneath, 6
οἰκτρός, ἡ, -οῦ: pitable, pitiful, miserable, 2
πάθος -εος τό: experience incident passion 11
πράξις, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
σοφός, -η, -όν: wise, skilled, 5
στρέφω: to turn (about), wheel around, 1
τέχνη, ἡ: craft, art, 6
ὑγίης, -ές: sound, healthy, wholesome, 7
ὑστερος, -α, -ον: later, lasts; adv. later 17
ψευδής, -ές: false, lying, 1

καπειτα...δοξη: καὶ ἐπειτα...; 3s aor. subj. 
dοκεω parallel to πιστευῃ
ὄλιγον: a little; adv. acc. (acc. of extent by degree)
αὐτος: to him; dat. of reference, refers to the τις in line 6
ἐνίοτε μὲν...ἐνίοτε δ': sometimes...at other times
ὅν (ψευδής): being (false); pple εἰη, add the same missing predicate to both pples
ἐτερος καὶ ἐτερος: the next one and the next one; i.e. the same is true again and again
οὐδα (α) ὅτι: you know (that); 2s οἶδα, the clause is almost parenthetical here
tελευτώντες: in the end; or ‘finally’ the pple is often translated as an adv.
γεγονεναι: pf. inf. γέγονομαι
κατανενοηγεναι: pf. inf.
κατανοήσαι, ἔπειτα διὰ τὸ παραγίνεσθαι τοιούτως τις δὲ λόγοις, τοῖς αὐτοῖς τοτὲ μὲν δοκοῦσιν ἀληθέσιν εἶναι, τοτὲ δὲ μὴ, μὴ ἐαυτὸν τις αἰτιῶτο μηδὲ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἀτεχνίαν, ἀλλὰ τελευτῶν διὰ τὸ ἀλγεῖν ἄσμενος ἐπὶ τοὺς λόγους ἀφ᾽ ἑαυτοῦ τὴν αἰτίαν ἀπώσατο καὶ ἦδη τὸν λοιπὸν βίον μισῶν τε καὶ λοιαρωφάν τοὺς λόγους διατελοῦ, τῶν δὲ ὄντων τῆς ἀληθείας τε καὶ ἐπιστήμης στερηθεὶς.

νὴ τὸν Δία, ἦν δὲ ἐγώ, οὐκρόν δήτα.

πρῶτον μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη, τούτῳ εὐλαβηθῶμεν, καὶ μὴ παρίσωμεν εἰς τὴν ψυχὴν ὡς τῶν λόγων κινδυνεύει οὐδὲν εὖν ἐναι, ἀλλὰ πολὺ μάλλον ότι ἡμεῖς ὑπόπῳ ὑγίως ἔχομεν, ἀλλὰ ἀνδριστεόν καὶ προβουλητέον ὑγίως ἔχεων, σοὶ μὲν οὖν

αἰτίασαι: accuse, charge; blame, 4
ἀλγεῖν: to feel pain, suffer, grief, 1
ἀνδριστεός, -ος: one must play the man, 1
ἀπ-οθέω: to push away, repel, reject, 1
ἀσμενος, -η, -ον: well-pleased, glad, 4
ἀ-τεχνία, ἦ: lack of skill, lack of art, 1
δήτα: certainly, to be sure, of course, 5
δια-τελέω: continue, live; accomplish, 1
eὐλαβέομαι: be cautious, be careful, beware, 5
Zeus, Ὁ: Zeus, 11
κατα-νοέω: to understand, observe well, 2
cινδυνεύω: to risk, venture; it is likely, 7

κατανοήσαι: capable to understand; i.e. ‘capable to be understood’ aor. inf. as an epexegetic (explanatory) inf. with the adj. δυνατοῦ; English would prefer a pass. inf. δια...παραγίνεσθαι: on account of (his) meeting with; the missing subj. is a person τοιούτοις...λόγοις: dat. of compound verb
tοῖς αὐτοῖς: the same (arguments) ...; in apposition to λόγοις
tοτέ μὲν...τοτὲ δὲ: at one time...at another δοκοῦσαι: dat. pl. pres. pple

μὴ...αἰτήσοτο: if (if) one should not...; the opt. (αἰτίασοτο) is the main verb of the protasis starting with εἰ in c8; a pres. mid. optative in a fut. less vivid condition
tελευτῶν: finally; pple as adv. ἄσμενος: gladly; an adj. in the nom. can often be translated as an adverb

λοιδορέω: to abuse, rail against, revile, 1
λοιπός, -η, -ον: remaining, the rest, 3
μισέω: to hate, 4
νὴ: by...(+ acc, invoking a god ), 14
οἰκτρός, -η, -ον: pitable, pitiful, miserable, 2
οὐ-πο: not yet, 3
παρ-ήμα: to admit; let pass, let in, 1
παρα-γίνομαι: to come near, be present, 11
προβουλητεός, -ον: one must be eager, 1
στερέω: to deprive from, rob, defraud, 5
tοτέ: sometimes, at some time, 4
ὕγης, -ές: sound, healthy, wholesome, 7
ἐπι: onto...

άποσαίτο: should...; aor. opt. ἀπ-οθέω parallel to αἰτήσοτο
tὸν λοιπὸν βίον: for...; acc. of duration
διατελέω: should...; opt. in same protasis
tὸν ὄντων: of the things which are
tῆς ἀληθείας...ἐπιστήμης: from...; gen. of separation
στερηθείς: (that one) should be...; 3s aor pass. opt. in still the same protasis from c8
tὸν Δία: Zeus. acc. sg.
εἰ...εὐλαβηθῶμεν...μὴ παρίσωμεν: let us...and let us not...; hortatory subj., aor. pass. dep. and pres. subj. παρ-ήμι
ὡς...ὅτι: that...that...; object of παρίσωμεν

ἐξομέν: we are...; + adv., see p. 7
ἀνδριστεόν... one must be a man and be eager; impers. verbal adj. for obligation
καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις καὶ τοῦ ἔπειτα βιοῦ παντὸς ἔνεκα, ἐμοὶ δὲ

αὐτοῦ ἔνεκα τοῦ θανάτου, ὡς κυνυνεύω ἐγώγε ἐν τῷ παρόντι

perse αὐτοῦ τούτου οὗ φιλοσόφως ἔχειν ἀλλ’ ἄσπερ οἱ πάνω

ἀπαίδευτοι φιλούκω. καὶ γὰρ ἐκεῖνοι ὅταν περὶ τοῦ ἀμ-

φισβητῶσιν, ὅπως δὲ ἀ αὐτοὶ ἔθεντο ταῦτα δόξει τοῖς παροῦσιν, τοῦτο προθυμοῦνται. καὶ ἔγω μοι δοκῶ ἐν τῷ παρόντι

tosούτον μόνον ἐκείνων διοίκειν· οὐ γὰρ ὅπως τοῖς παροῦσιν

ἀ ἐγὼ λέγω δόξει ἀληθῇ εἶναι προθυμίσουμαι, εἰ μὴ ἔποιη

πάρεργον, ἀλλ’ ὅπως αὐτῶ μοι ὅτι μάλιστα δόξει οὗτωs

b ἔχειν. λογίζομαι γὰρ, ὡ φίλε ἐταϊρε-θέασαι ως πλεο-

νεκτικῶς—εἰ μὲν τυγχάνει ἀληθῆ ὅντα ἄ λέγω, καλῶς δὴ

4 τοῦ ἔπειτα βιοῦ: future life; ‘life hereafter’

91a1 αὐτοῦ ἔνεκα...θανάτου: for the sake of my death itself

ὅς: since

κυνυνεύω: as often, this verb governs an infr. an may be translated as ‘run to risk to...’ or ‘is likely to’

παρόντι: present (moment); pple πάρεμι

2 φιλοσόφως ἔχειν: to be philosophic, to be disposed philosophically.; see p. 7

3 φιλούκως (ἔχειν): parallel to line 2 above καὶ γάρ: for in fact

τοῦ: something; alternative to gen. τινὸς

ἀμφιπρητῶσιν: 3p pres. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause

4 ὅπως...ἔχειν περὶ...λόγος ἦ: this is the object of φοντίζομαι; ὅπως...ἔχει, ‘how it is...’ refers to whether the λόγος is true or false; ἦ is 3s subj. ἐμι in an indefinite relative

ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that 10

πάρεργον, τοῖ: secondary or indirect matter 1 

πλεονεκτικός, -η, -ον: greedy, grasping, 1

προ-θυμίσομαι: be eager for, zealous for, 12

περί; to set, put, place, arrange, 10

τοσούτος, -αὐτη, -ούτο: so great, so many, 3

φιλο-νικος, -oν: fond of victory, ambition, 1

φιλο-νικος, ὦ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18

φοντίζω: to think, worry, give heed to, 3

clause beginning with περὶ ὅν

5 ὅπως...δόξει: but that...will seem; in apposition to τοῦτο in l. 6

ἀ...ἔθεντο: which they themselves proposed aor. mid. τίθημι (θε), the antecedent is ταῦτα, the neuter pl. subject of δόξει

toῖς παροῦσιν: dat. pl. pple πάρεμι

7 τοσούτον μόνον: only so much; inner acc. + adverbial acc.

ἐκείνων: from those; i.e. οἱ ἀπαίδευτοι, gen. of comparison with διαφέρω (S 1401)

diaphero: fut. διαφέρω

ὁπως...δόξει: see line 5 above

8 (ταῦτα) ἂ...λέγοι: these things which...; add antecedent ταῦτα as subject of δόξει

εἰ μὴ...πάρεγγον: except it is...

9 ὅτι μάλιστα: as much as possible

(ἀ...λέγοι) δόξει: (what I say) will seem

b/ θέασαι ὅς: watch how...!; aor. imperative
εχει το πεισθηναι: ει δε μηδεν έστη τελευτησαντι, αλλ' ουν
touτων γε τον χρόνου αυτων τον προ τοι θανατου ήττων τοις
παροσιων ή της έσομαι οδυρόμενος, ή δε άνοια μοι αυτη ου
συνδιατελει—κακον γαρ ου ήν—and ολογον άπο-
λειται. παρεσκευασμένοι δη, έφη, ο Σμιμα τε και Κέβης,
ουτωσι έρχομαι επι τον λόγον έμεις μέντοι, αν έμοι πει-
θησθε, σμικρον φροντισαντες Σωκράτους, της δε άληθειας
κολο μάλλων, εαν μεν τι υμιν δοκαι άληθες λέγειν, συνομο-
λογησατε, ει δε μη, παντι λόγω αντιτεινετε, ειλαβομενοι
οπως μη έγω υπο προθυμίας άμα έμας έξαι-
πατήσας, οσπερ μελιττα το κέντρον έγκαταλιτών οίχησομαι.

αλλ' ίτεν, έφη. πρωτον με υπομνησατε ά ελεγετε, εαν
μη φανωμαι μεμημένος. Σμιμας μεν γαρ, ώς έγωμαι,
Socrates’ Reply to Simmias

ἀπιστεῖ τε καὶ φοβεῖται μὴ ἡ ψυχὴ ὁμοῦ καὶ θειότερον καὶ
d κάλλιον ὅν τοῦ σώματος προαπολλυότατα ἐν ἀρμονίας εἴδει
οὖσα: Κέβης δὲ μοι ἐδοξεῖ τοῦτο μὲν ἐμοὶ συγχωρεῖν,
pολυχρονιῶτερόν γε εἶναι ψυχὴν σώματος, ἄλλα τόδε
ἀδηλίων παντί, μὴ πολλὰ δὴ σώματα καὶ πολλάκις κατα-
τρίψασα ἡ ψυχὴ τὸ τελευταίον σῶμα καταλιποῦσα νῦν
αὐτῆ ἀπολλυότατα, καὶ ἡ αὐτὸ τοῦτο θάνατος, ψυχῆς ὀλέ-
θρος, ἐπεὶ σώμα γε ἀεὶ ἀπολλυόμενον οὐδὲν παύεται. ὥρα
ἀλλ’ ἡ ταῦτ’ ἐστίν, ὁ Συμμία τε καὶ Κέβης, ἃ δεὶ ἡμᾶς
ἐπισκοπεῖσθαι;

δ συνωμολογεῖτην δὴ ταῦτ’ εἶναι ἀμφότεροι.
πότερον οὖν, ἐφη, πάντας τοὺς ἐμπροσθεὶς λόγους οὐκ
ἀποδέχεσθε, ἡ τοὺς μὲν, τοὺς δ’ οὖν;

†-δηλος, -ον: unclear, unknown, obscure, 1
διμοφο: both (dual), 1
ἀ-ποστέω: to distrust, not believe (+ dat.), 8
ἀπό-δοχαια: to accept, receive, 9
εἴδος, -εως, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἐ-προσβεθέν: before, former; earlier, 7
ἐπ'-ακοπέω: to examine, inspect, 3
θείος, -α, -ων: divine, sent by the gods, 15
καλλίως, -ον: more noble or beautiful, 7
κατα-λείπω: to leave behind, abandon, 1
κατα-τρίβω: wear out, rub down, 4

δολεθρος, ο: death, ruin, destruction, 3
δαιμον: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
παύεω: to stop, make cease, 6
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
πολυχρόνιος, -α, -ων: long-existing, 6
πότερος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
προ-απόλλυμια: to perish beforehand, 1
προχερέω: agree, yield, come together, 13
προωμολογεῖσθαι: to agree with, say the same, 4
προτεραιος, -α, -ον: last, final, 5
φοβεῖσθαι: to terrify, frighten; mid. fear, 15

καταλιποῦσα: aor. pple καταλίπει σα
αὐτή: itself; intensive ἢ ψυχή
ἡ: is; 3s pres. subj. in same clause, αὐτό
τοῦτο is subject, and θάνατος is predicate
ψυχῆς δολερος: in apposition
ἐπεί: since…; causal in sense
οὐδὲν: not at all; inner acc.
παύεται: cease + complementary pple
ἐλλο(λ) ἢ ταὐτ(α) ἐστίν: are these the things…?; ‘is it other than these things…?’
ἐλλάτι τι ἡ ὁften introduces a direct
question and may be left untranslated
καταλίπει: 3rd pl. dual impf.
ἀφιεροω: both; dual nom. subj.
πότερον…: if then do you…accept…or…?
τούς μέν, τούς δ’ οὖ: some…not others
τοῦς μὲν, ἐφάτην, τοὺς δ’ οὖ.

τί οὖν, ἢ δ’ ὦς, περὶ ἐκείνου τοῦ λόγου λέγετε ἐν ὧν ἐφαμεν τὴν μάθησιν ἀνάμιθην εἶναι, καὶ τοῦτον οὖτως ἔχοντος ἀναγκαῖος ἔχειν ἄλλοθι πρότερον ἡμῶν εἶναι τὴν ψυχήν, πρὶν ἐν τῷ σώματι ἐνδεθήναι;

ἐγὼ μὲν, ἐφη ο Ἀρρην, καὶ τότε θαυμαστῶς ὡς ἐπείσθην ὑπ’ αὐτοῦ καὶ νῦν ἐμμένω ὡς οὐδενὶ λόγῳ.

καὶ μήν, ἐφη ο Σωκράτης, καὶ αὐτὸς οὖτως ἔχω, καὶ πάνυ ἂν θαυμάζομαι εἰ μοι περὶ γε τούτῳ ἄλλο ποτὲ τί δόξειν.

καὶ ο Ἐκέστης, ἀλλὰ ἀνάγκη σοι, ἐφη, ὡς Ζήης, αὐτὰ δόξαι, ἑάνπερ μείνῃ ἢδε ὡς ἠδήσις, τὸ ἀρμονίαν μὲν εἶναι σύνθετον πράγμα, ψυχῆν δὲ ἀρμονίαν τινὰ ἐκ τῶν κατὰ τὸ

4 τοὺς μὲν, τοὺς δ’ οὖ: interlocutors often repeat the question (l. 3) to express assent ἐφάτην: 3d pers. dual impf. φημι
5 ἢ δ’ οὖ: see note on p. 9
6 τοῦτο...ἔχοντος: gen. abs.; see p. 7
7 ἀναγκαῖος ἔχειν: that it is necessary that; ‘that it is disposed necessarily’ ἡμῶν: possessive with acc. subj. ψυχῆν
92α1 ἐνδεθήναι: aor. pass. inf. ἐνδέω, πρὶν often governs an inf.
2 καὶ...καὶ: both...and
3 ἂν θαυμαστῶς ὡς: how marvelously...; once, ‘it is marvelous how...’ the neut. predicate θαυμαστῶν has assimilated to the adv. ὡς ἐπείσθην: 1s aor. pass. πείθω
3 ὡς οὐδενὶ λόγῳ: as...; dat. of compound verb

θαυμαστῶς, -η, -ον: wonderful, marvelous
μάθησις, -εως, -η: learning, instruction
μένω: to stay, remain
ξένος, ὡς: guest-friend, friend, stranger
πρήγμα, -στο τό: thing, act; matter, affair
σύνθετος, -ον: put together, composite

ΦΑΙΔΩΝ 91e

4 καὶ μήν: well certainly; in acceptance of an invitation to speak (GP 356) but often used in tragedy to open a new scene or introduce a new character (S 2921)
5 ἂν θαυμάζομαι εἰ...δόξειν: I would... if... should seem good; fut. less vivid condition (εἰ opt., ἄν + opt.), pres. and aor. opt.
περὶ γε τοῦτο: concerning this, at least
6 ἀνάγκη: (it is) necessary
7 δόξαι: aor. inf. δοκέω
μείνη: 3s aor. μένω
τδ...ἐίναι: (namely) that...; in apposition to οἶνος, articular inf.
8 ἀρμονίαν τινά: in apposition to ψυχῆν, the acc. subject of συγκείθαι
κατὰ τό σῶμα: in the body
σῶμα ἐντεταμένων συγκείσθαι: οὐ γάρ ποι ἀποδέξῃ γε
b σαυτοῦ λέγοντος ὡς πρότερον ἢν ἁρμονία συγκειμένη, πρὶν ἐκείνα εἶναι ἐξ ἧν ἐδει αὐτὴν συντεθήναι. ἢ ἀποδέξῃ;
οὐδαμῶς, ἐφη, ὦ Σώκρατες.

αἰσθάνη σοίν, ἡ δ' ὅσ, ὦ ταῦτα σοι συμβαίνει λέγειν,
5 ὅταν φῆς μὲν εἴναι τὴν ψυχήν πρὶν καὶ εἰς ἀνθρώπων ἑιδός τε καὶ σῶμα ἀφικέσθαι, εἴναι δὲ αὐτὴν συγκειμένην ἐκ τῶν οὐδέπω ὄντων; οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἁρμονία γε σοι τοιοῦτον ἐστὶν ὑπὸ ἀπεκάλεσιν, ἄλλα πρότερον καὶ ἡ λύρα καὶ αἱ χορδαὶ καὶ

c ὦι φθόγγοι ἔτι ἀνάρμοστοι ὄντες γίγνονται, τελευταῖον δὲ πάντων συνίσταται ἡ ἁρμονία καὶ πρῶτον ἀπόλλυται. οὔτος οὖν σοὶ ὁ λόγος ἐκεῖνῳ πῶς συνάσεται;

9 ἐντεταμένων: things...; pf. pass. pple, the image of strings stretched and in harmony
αποδέξῃ: 2s fut. mid.
γε: not indeed; emphasizing οὐ
b1 σ(ε)αυτοῦ λέγοντος: gen. abs. ὑς: that...; ind. disc.
πρότερον: adv. acc.
ὁν...συνεκείμενη: was (already) composed; periphrastic form impf. ἐιμί + pple (S 1961)
2 εἴναι: existed
συντεθήναι: pf. pass. inf. συντιθήματι
αποδέξῃ: ἀποδέξεις(ο)σι, 2s fut. mid.
4 αἰσθάνῃ: αἰσθάνεται, 2s pres. mid.
5 ἢ δ' ὅσ: see note on p. 9
ταῦτα...λέγειν: you happen to say these things; 'it happens to you to say these things,' impers. verb and dat. of interest
φῆς: 2s pres. subj. φημι in an indefinite
suy-kelma: be composed, be compounded, 6
samevaios: to happen, occur, result, 8
sin-aido: sing with, be attune with, agree, 1
sin-ishtma: to set together, unite, combine, 2
sin-tihi: put together, combine, 7
teleutagoi, -a, -ov: last, final, 5
phoygoos, o: voice, utterance, sound 2
chorbi, o: string, gut-string, 7

temporal clause
εἴναι: exists
anhrwtopo: modifies both eidois and soma
6 afikeostha: aor. inf., τὴν ψυχὴν is subject
einai de autyn sugkeimeven: but it is (already) composed; see line b1
tou...ontow: things which are
7 ou gar di: for of course...not; employed with ge to eliminate a possibility (GP 244)
8 o: to which; dat. of compound verb
ei esti...ontei: pple, ei

teleutaioi pantov: the last of all; adv. acc. and partitive gen.
2 ou...o logos: this argument; i.e. that the soul is a harmony
3 ekeiwo (logos): with that argument; i.e. that the soul is recollection; dat. compound
οὐδαμῶς, ἤφη ὁ Συμμίας.
καὶ μὴν, ἂ δ’ ὅς, πρέπει γε εἴπερ τῷ ἄλλῳ λόγῳ συνωδῷ εἶναι καὶ τῷ περὶ ἀρμονίας.
πρέπει γάρ, ἤφη ὁ Συμμίας.
οὖν τοίνυν, ἤφη, σοὶ οὐ συνωδός· ἄλλ’ ὥρα πότερον αἴρῃ τῶν λόγων, τὴν μάθησιν ἀνάμνησιν εἶναι ἢ ψυχήν ἀρμονίαν;
πολὺ μᾶλλον, ἤφη, ἐκείνων, ὡς Σύκρατες. ὅδε μὲν γάρ μοι γέγονεν ἀνεν ἀποδείξεως μετὰ εἰκότων τινὸς καὶ εὐπρε-πείας, ὃθεν καὶ τοῖς πολλοῖς δοκεῖ ἀνθρώποις· ἐγὼ δὲ τοῖς διὰ τῶν εἰκότων τὰς ἀποδείξεις ποιομένους λόγοις σύνοιδα ὑπὸν ἀλαζόσων, καὶ ἂν τις αὐτοῦς μὴ φυλάττηται, εὖ μάλα

ἀπέκτοις: to seize, take; mid. choose, 4
ἀλαζόν, ὁ-νος, ὁ, ἂ: pretentious, braggart; subst. imposter, pretender, vagabond, 1
ἄνα-μνησις, -εως, ἂ: recollection, recall, 11
ἀνευ: without, 9
ἀπὸ-δειξίς, εως, ἂ: demonstration, proof, 4
eικὸς, ὀτος, τὸ: likely, probable, reasonable 18
eὐ-πρεπεία, ἂ: attractiveness; plausibility, 1

5 καὶ μὴν...γε: and yet...in fact; καὶ μὴν can often be positive, but here it is adversative and γε introduces a point of greater importance (GP 358)
ἡ δ’ ὅς: see note on p. 9
πρέπει...ἀρμονίας: it is appropriate— if any other argument to be in tune—in fact for the (argument) concerning harmony (to be in tune)—i.e. the argument of the soul as harmony should in tune with the argument of the soul as recollection; πρέπει governs a dative; καὶ is adverbial
7 γάρ: (yes), for...
8 ὅρα: ὁρα-ε, imperative
9 αἰρή: 2s pres. mid.
tῶν λόγων: partitive gen. with πότερον, "which one"
11 πολὺ: far, by far; adv. acc. (acc. of extent

μάθησις, -εως, ἂ: learning, instruction, 6
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
ὁ-θεν: from where, from which, 4
οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all, 11
πρέπει: it is fitting, it is suitable (impers.) 8
πολλοίς, -ου: in tune, in harmony, 2
φυλάττω: to guard, keep watch over, 1

by degree)
ἐκείνων: i.e. the λόγος that learning is recollection
ὁ-θεν: this (other) one; i.e. the λόγος that the soul is harmony
ἐκότος: likelihood, probablity
2 ὅθεν: i.e. for which reason
καὶ: also
3 διὰ τῶν εἰκότων...ποιομένοις: having made their proofs through likelihoods
4 ὁδις: dat. pl. pple εἰμί
ἀλαζόα: dat. predicate
d1 ἂν...φυλάττει: if...is on guard against;
(ἐ)ὰν, a present general condition (ἐι ἂν subj., pres. ind.)
5 ἔξαπατώσι, καὶ ἐν γεωμετρίᾳ καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπασιν. ὁ δὲ περὶ τῆς ἀναμνήσεως καὶ μαθήσεως λόγος δὲ ὑποθέσεως ἀξίας ἀποδέχασθαι εἰρήται. ἔρρηθη γὰρ ποὺ οὕτως ἦμων εἶναι ἡ ψυχή καὶ πρὶν εἰς σῶμα ἀφικέσθαι, ὥσπερ αὐτὴς ἐστών ἡ ὑσία ἔχουσα τὴν ἐπωνύμιαν τὴν τοῦ ‘δ ἔστων’ ἐγὼ δὲ ταύτην, ὡς ἐμαυτὸν πεῖθω, ἱκανός τε καὶ ὀρθῶς ἀποδέχεγμα. ἀνάγκη οὖν μοι, ὡς ἔουσα, διὰ ταύτα μὴ ἐμαυτοῦ μήτε ἄλλου ἀποδεχεσθαι λέγουτος ὡς ψυχή ἐστών ἀρμονία.

93 τινὶ συνθέσει προσήκειν ἄλλως πως ἔχειν ἢ ὡς ἂν ἐκεῖνα ἔχῃ ἢ ἄν συγκέπτα; ὁδόμασω.

5 ἔξαπατώσι: (the arguments) deceive (us); 3p pres. or possibly dat. pl. α-contract pple modifying λόγος in d3 καὶ...καὶ...: both...and
7 ἀξίας ἀποδέχασθαι: worthy to accept; an aer. mid. epexegetical ( explanatory) inf., English prefers the passive: ‘worthy to be accepted’
ἐίπται: pf. pass. λέγω (ἐρ-)
ἐρρήθη: 3s aer. pass. λέγω (ἐρ-)
καὶ πρὶν: even before...
ὥστε... ἢ ἕστιν: just as being exists, having the name of “what it is”; The use of gen. αὐτῆς is not easy to determine. Rowe prefers the less attestable reading αὐτῷ, ‘being itself’
e1 ταύτην: referring to fem. sg. ἡ οὕσια ἀποδέχεγμαι: pf. mid. ἀποδέχομαι

μη-τε: and not, neither...nor, 15
οὐδαμός: in no way, not at all, 11
οὐσία, ἡ: being, essence, substance, 6
προσ-ήκει: it belongs to, it is fitting, befits 15
πως: somehow, in any way, 3
συγ-κέμα: be composed, be compounded, 6
συ-θέσις, -εως ἡ: composition, combination 1
τῇδε: here; in this way, thus, 8
ὑπο-θέσις, -εως, ἡ: proposal, hypothesis, 6

2 ἀνάγκη...ἀποδέχασθαι: (it is) necessary to accept
3 ἐμαυτοῦ...ἄλλου...λέγουτος: from...nor from...; gen. of source, ἀποδέχασθαι is dependent on ἀνάγκη, not the genitive
4 τί δέ: what (about); as often, employed to make a further point
ἡ δ′δ: see note on p. 9
ἀρμονία...προσήκειν: that it belongs to harmony or...; προσήκειν is impersonal and governs a dat. of compound verb
3 ἄλλως πως ἔχειν: to be...; the true subject of προσήκειν; for ἔχω + adv., see p. 7
93α1 ἡ ὡς ἂν...ἐχεῖ: than in whatever way those things are (disposed); ἔχω + adv.
2 ἢ ἄν ἂν... ἂν + subj. in an indefinite relative clause
ΦΑΙΔΩΝ

οὐδὲ μὴν ποιεῖν τι, ὡς ἑγὼμαι, οὐδὲ τι πάσχειν ἄλλο παρ’ ἂν ἐκεῖνα ἢ ποιήσῃ ἢ πάσχῃ; συνέφη.

οὐκ ἄρα ἤγεισθαί γε προσῆκει ἀρµονίαν τοῦτων ἡ ἀν ἐν συντεθῃ, ἀλλ’ ἐπεσθαὶ. συνεδόκει.

πολλοῦ ἄρα δεῖ ἐναντία γε ἀρµονία κινηθῆναι ἢ ἡ φθέγξασθαι τι τί ἀλλ’ ἐναντιωθῆναι τοῖς οὗτοις μέρεσιν.

πολλοῦ μέντοι, ἐφή.

τί δὲ; οὐχ οὗτων ἀρµονία πέφυκεν εἴναι ἐκάστη ἀρµονία ὡς ἢν ἄρµοσθῇ;

οὐ μανθάνω, ἐφή.

ἡ οὐχὶ, ἢ δ’ ὅς, ἢν μὲν μᾶλλον ἀρµοσθῇ καὶ ἐπὶ πλείν, εἴπερ ἐνδεχεται τοῦτο γίγνεσθαι, μᾶλλον τε ἢν ἀρµονία εἰ καὶ πλείων, εἰ δ’ ἦττον τε καὶ ἐπ’ ἐλαττον, ἦττον τε καὶ ἐλάττων;

4 οὐδὲ μὴν...πάσχῃ: certainly (does it seem to you belong to harmony) neither to do something, as I suppose, nor to suffer something other contrary to whatever those things either do or suffer? supply δοκεῖ σοι προσῆκειν ἀρµονίαν: pará + acc. here means ‘contrary to’ and introduces an indefinite relative clause (ἂν + 3s subj.)

οὐδὲ μὴν: certainly neither...; GP 339

ὁς ἑγὼμαι: as...; ἐγὼ ὅιμαι (ὁιμαί)

5 συνερή: he agreed; 3s impf. σύνηρη

6 ἥγεισθαι: lead; in contrast to ἐπεσθαὶ; προσῆκει: it is fitting; governs acc. subj. + inf. construction

ἄν συντεθῇ: 3s aor. pass. subj. συντίθημι in an indefinite relative clause

7 συνεδόκει: he agrees

8 πολλοῦ...σεῖ: is far from + inf.; ‘lacks from much,’ gen. of separation, the subject is ἀρµονία

πλέ(ί)ων, -ον: more, greater, 17

προσ-ήκει: it belongs to, it is fitting, befits 15

σύμ-φημ: to agree, approve, 3

συν-δοκ: to seem good also, 6

συν-τίθημ: put together, combine, compose 7

φθέγγομαι: to utter a sound, voice, speak, 2

φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14

ἐναντία: in opposite directions; inner acc.

κινηθῆναι: moving; aor. pass. deponent ἄν: leave untranslated, ἄν + inf. is equiv. here to past potential in dir. disc., sec l. 14

9 τι ἄλλο ἐναντιωθῆναι: doing any other thing opposing; inner acc., aor. pass. deponent inf.

τοῖς (ἕ)αυτῆς μέρεαι: obj of ἐναντιωθῆναι

10 πολλοῦ μέντοι: repeating l. 8 as an assent

11 τί δὲ: what (then)?; a new argument

12 οὐχὶ (ὁ)ἄν...; ἢν ἐπί: or if it is harmonized would harmony not be...?; mixed condition ἐν ἄν + subj. (aor. pass.), ἄν + opt. (εἰμί)

καὶ ἐπὶ πλείν: and to a greater extent

b2 εἰ δ’ ἦττον...: if (it is harmonized); add verb ἐπ(ί) ἐλαττον: and to a lesser extent
πάνυ γε.

ἡ οὖν ἐστὶ τοῦτο περὶ ψυχῆν, ὡστε καὶ κατὰ τὸ σμικρότατον μᾶλλον ἐτέραν ἐτέρας ψυχῆς ἐπὶ πλέον καὶ μᾶλλον ἡ ἐπ’ ἐλαττον καὶ ἤττον αὐτὸ τοῦτο εἶναι, ψυχῆν; οὐδ’ ὀπωσδείον, ἐφι.

φέρε δή, ἐφθ, πρὸς Διός: λέγεται ψυχῆ ἣ μὲν νοῦν τε ἔχειν καὶ ἄρετὴν καὶ εἶναι ἀγαθή, ἡ δὲ ἀνοιάν τε καὶ μοχθηρίαν καὶ εἶναι κακῆς; καὶ ταῦτα ἀληθῶς λέγεται;

ἀληθῶς μέντοι.

tῶν οὖν θεμένων ψυχῆν ἀρμονίαν εἶναι τί τις φήσει ταῦτα ὑντα εἶναι ἐν ταῖς ψυχαίς, τὴν τε ἄρετην καὶ τὴν κακίαν; πότερον ἀρμονίαν αὖ τινα ἄλλην καὶ ἀναρμοστίαν; καὶ τὴν μὲν ἠρμόσθαι, τὴν ἀγαθῆν, καὶ ἔχειν ἐν αὐτῇ

---

**Philosophical Vocabulary:** The following comparatives are near equivalents in the argument.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ἐπὶ πλέον (to a greater extent)</td>
<td>is equivalent to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐπὶ ἐλαττον (to a less extent)</td>
<td>is equivalent to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ἄρμονία οὔς ἄλλην ἄρμονίαν, τὴν δὲ ἀνάρμοστον αὐτήν τε εἶναι καὶ οὐκ ἔχειν ἐν αὐτῇ ἄλλην;

οὐκ ἔχω ἔγωγ', ἐφη ὁ Συμμίας, εἰπεῖν: δῆλον δὲ ὅτι τοιαῦτ' ἀττ' ἂν λέγοι ο ἐκεῖνο ὑποθέμενοι.

ἀλλὰ προωμολόγηται, ἐφη, μηδὲν μᾶλλον μηδὲ ἦττον ἐτέραν ἐτέρας ψυχῆν ψυχῆς εἶναι: τούτῳ δὲ ἐστὶ τὸ ὁμολόγημα, μηδὲν μᾶλλον μηδὲ ἐπὶ πλέον μηδὲ ἦττον μηδὲ ἐπὶ ἔλαττον ἐτέραν ἐτέρας ἄρμονίαν ἄρμονίας εἶναι. ἦ γάρ;

πάνυ γε.

τὴν δὲ γε μηδὲν μᾶλλον μηδὲ ἦττον ἄρμονίαν οὔσαν μήτε μᾶλλον μήτε ἦττον ἡμοσθαί: ἔστων οὕτως;

ἔστιν.

ἀν-ἀρμοστός, -ον: not fitting, out-of-tune, 1
ὅμολογημα, -ατος, τό: what is agreed upon 1
δήλος, -η, -ον: clear, evident, conspicuous, 14
τοιαύτ': in truth, truly (begins open question), 5
μηδέν, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 16

ψυχή is acc. subj. while ἐτέρας ψυχῆς is gen. of comparison; the stylistic device (interlocking word order) is synchysis

μηδέν: that not at all; see line d1

ἐτέρας: potential opt.

ὅροι-ὑποθέμενοι: aor. mid. pples; ὑποτιθήμι: to set up, suppose, propose, 4

ψυχή is acc. subj. while ἐτέρας ψυχῆς is gen. of comparison; the stylistic device (interlocking word order) is synchysis

μηδέν: not at all; see line d1

ὁμολόγημα: is in harmony; pf. pass. denotes a state rather than an activity
Socrates’ Reply to Simmias

93d

ἡ δὲ μῆτε μᾶλλον μήτε ἤττον ἡμοσμένη ἔστιν ὅτι πλέον

ἡ ἐλαττων ἀρμονίας μετέχει, ἢ τὸ ἱσον;

τὸ ἱσον.

οὐκόν ψυχὴ ἐπειδὴ οὐδὲν μᾶλλον οὐδὲ ἤττον ἄλλη

e ἄλλης αὐτῷ τοῦτο, ψυχή, ἐστίν, οὐδὲ δὴ μᾶλλον οὐδὲ ἤττον ἡμοσταί;

οὐτώ.

tοῦτο δὲ γε πεπονθυίᾳ οὐδὲν πλέον ἀναρμοστίας οὐδὲ

ἀρμονίας μετέχοι ἂν;

οὐ γὰρ οὖν.

τοῦτο δ’ αὖ πεπονθυῖα ἄρ’ ἂν τι πλέον κακίας ἢ ἀρετῆς

μετέχοι ἑτέρα ἑτέρας, εἴπερ ἢ μὲν κακία ἀναρμοστία, ἢ δὲ ἀρετὴ ἀρμονία εἰη;

---

ἀ-ἀρμοστία, ἢ: discord, lack of harmony, 4
ἀ-ἀρετή, ἢ: excellence, goodness, virtue, 9
ἀ-ἀρμόζω: harmonize, fit together, join, adapt 7
ἡ-ἡττων, -ον: less, weaker, inferior, 16
κακία, ἢ: wickedness, flaw, cowardice, 6
μετ-ἐξω: to partake of, have share in (gen) 13
πλέον, -ον: more, greater, 17

9 ἢ δὲ (ἀρμονία)...ἡμοσμένη ἔστιν ὅτι: and that being neither more fully nor less fully harmonized, is it because...; pf. pass. pple. the comparatives are adverbs
πλέον ἢ ἐλαττων: greater (share) or lesser (share)...; inner acc.; possibly equivalent to ἐπὶ πλέον, ἐπὶ ἐλαττων, see p. 136
10 ἀρμονίας: partitive gen. obj. of μετέχει τὸ ἱσον: equal (share); an inner acc.
12 οὐκόν ψυχή...ἔστιν: then a soul, since one is not at all more fully nor less fully this itself, a soul, than another; ἄλλης is a gen. of comparison; αὐτῷ τοῦτο is a predicate and ψυχὴ in apposition
e1 δὴ: then, therefore; inferential (GP 225)
2 ἡ-ἡμοσταί: 3s pf. pass.
4 πεπονθυίᾳ (ψυχή): (a soul) having experienced...; pf. pple. πάσχω, fem. sg.

modifying the missing subject ψυχή
οὐδὲν: not at all; adv. acc. (acc. of extent by degree) modifying πλέον
πλέον: greater (share); inner acc.
5 μετέχοι ἂν: would...; potential opt.
6 οὐ γὰρ οὖν: no for certain; ‘no for sure’ (S 2958) (GP 447)
7 πεπονθυίᾳ (ψυχή): (a soul)...; pf. pple. πάσχω, supply a noun
ἀρ(α) ἂν...μετέχου: introducing a yes/no question, potential opt.
τι: at all; adv. acc. (acc. of extent of degree) modifying πλέον
8 ἑτέρα ἑτέρας: one (soul)...than another (soul); nom. subj. and gen. of comparison
ἐἶπε...ἐίη: if...should; protasis in a fut. less vivid condition (ei opt., ἂν + opt.)
οὐδὲν πλέον.
μᾶλλον δὲ γέ ποι, ὦ Σωκράτες, κατὰ τὸν ὀρθὸν λόγον κακίας οὐδεμία ψυχή μεθέξει, ἐπεὶ ἄρμονία ἐστίν· ἄρμονία γὰρ δὴπο ταντέλως αὐτὸ τοῦτο οὖσα, ἄρμονία, ἀναρμοστίας οὔποτε ἀν μετάσχοι.
οὐ μέντοι.
οὐδὲ γε δὴπο ψυχή, οὖσα παντελῶς ψυχή, κακίας.
pῶς γὰρ ἐκ γε τῶν προειρημένων;
ἐκ τούτου ἄρα τοῦ λόγου ἡμῖν πᾶσαι ψυχαὶ πάντων ζῶν ὑμών ἀγαθὰ ἐσούνται, εἰπέρ ὑμῶν ψυχαὶ πεφύκασιν αὐτὸ τοῦτο, ψυχαὶ, ἐναι.
ἐμοίγε δοκεῖ, ἐφη, ὦ Σώκρατες.
Socrates’ Reply to Simmias

η καὶ καλῶς δοκεῖ, η δ’ ὅσ, οὕτω λέγεσθαι, καὶ πάσχειν
b ἀν ταῦτα ὁ λόγος εἰ ὑπόθεσις ἢν, τὸ ψυχῆν ἄρμονὶαν εἶναι;
οὐδ’ ὑπωστιοῦν, ἔφη.
tί δέ; η δ’ ὅσ· τῶν ἐν ἀνθρώπῳ πάντων ἐσθ’ ὅτι ἄλλο
5 λέγεις ἄρχειν ἢ ψυχῆν ἄλλως τε καὶ φρόνιμων;
οὐκ ἐγώγε. 

πότερον συγχωροῦσαν τοῖς κατὰ τὸ σῶμα πάθειν ἢ καὶ ἐναντιομένην; 
λέγω δὲ τὸ τοιοῦδε, οἷον καῦματος ἐνόντος καὶ δάφους ἐπὶ τούπατίων ἐλκεῖν, τὸ μὴ πίνειν, καὶ πείνης
ἐνούσης ἐπὶ τὸ μὴ ἐσθίειν, καὶ ἂλλα μυρία που ὀρώμεν
10 ἐναντιομένην τὴν ψυχῆν τοῖς κατὰ τὸ σῶμα· ἡ οὐ;
πάνυ μὲν ὦν.

οὐκοῦν αὖ ὁμολογήσαμεν ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν μὴτον' ἀν αὐτὴν, ἁμονίαν γε οὐσαν, ἐναντία ἁδειν οῖς ἐπιτείνοιτο καὶ χαλάτο καὶ ψάλλοιτο καὶ ἄλλο ὁτιῶν πάθος πάντων ἐκεῖνα έξ άν τυγχάνοι οὐσα, ἀλλ' ἐπεσθαί ἐκεῖνις καὶ οὕσατ' ἀν ἠγεμονεύειν;

ὁμολογήσαμεν, ἐφ' πῶς γὰρ οὖ;

τι οὖν; νῦν οὐ πάν τοὖναντίον ήμιν φαίνεται ἐργαζόμενη, ἠγεμονεύοισα τε έκεῖνων πάντων έξ άν φησι τις αὐτὴν εἶναι, καὶ εναντιομενὴ ὅλου πάντα διὰ παντὸς τοῦ βίου ϐαίνεται εἰς τοὺς, καὶ δεσπόζουσα πάντως τρόπους, τὰ μὲν χαλεπώτερον κολάζουσα καὶ μετ' ἀλγηδῶνων, τά τε κατὰ τὴν γυμναστικὴν καί

2 πάνυ μὲν οὖν: quite certainly indeed; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
3 ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν (λόγοις): in the previous conversation
4 αὐτὴν: that it...; i.e. the soul, acc. subject ἁμονίαν γε οὐσαν: since...; pple εἰμι is conditional in force; ἁμονίαν is predicate οῖς ἐπιτείνοιτο...ἐκεῖνα...οὐσα;: to (the things) which those (ἐκεῖνα) out of which (the soul) happens to be (composed) tighten and loosen and vibrate and experience whatever other experience; neut. pl. ἐκεῖνα is subject of 3s opt verbs in an indefinite relative clause in secondary sequence; the relative οῖς (τοῦτοις ὁ) is acc. pl. Attracted into the dat. of the missing antecedent, a dat. of special adj. ἐναντία
5 μὴ-ποτε: not ever, never, 1
6 ἐπεσθαί, ἠγεμονεύειν: parallel to ἁδειν, the soul is still acc. subject
8 πῶς γὰρ οὖ: how (could it) not?; lit. ‘(yes), for how could it not’
9 πάν τὸ ἐναντίον: acc. direct object φαίνεται: supply ὑπὸ ὡς καί as subject
10 ἐξ άν φησι τις αὐτὴν εἶναι: from which one says that it is (composed)
11 ὅλου πάντα: in almost all things; acc. of respect and gen. of separation, i.e. almost is lit. ‘from a little’ (see also 80c9)
12 πάντως τρόπους: in all ways; acc. respect τὰ μὲν...τὰ έδ...: some (things) other (things); ‘some corrections...’ inner acc. χαλεπώτερον: comparative adv.
3 τὰ τε κατὰ...: those in...; in apposition
τὴν ἱατρικὴν, τὰ δὲ πραθότερον, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἀπειλοῦσα, τὰ δὲ νοθετοῦσα, ταῖς ἐπιθυμίαις καὶ ὀργαῖς καὶ φόβοις ὡς ἄλλη οὖσα ἄλλω πράγματι διαλεγομένη; οἷον που καὶ Ὁμήρος ἐν Ὁδυσσείᾳ πεποίηκεν, οὐ λέγει τὸν Ὁδυσσέα:

στήθος δὲ πλῆξας κραδίην ἤνίπαπε μῦθῳ:

ε ’τέλθατι δή, κραθή καὶ κώντερον ἄλλο ποτ’ ἐτήλης:’

ἀρ’ οὖ ἐν αὐτὸν ταῦτα ποιῆσαι διανοούμενον ὡς ἀρμονίας αὐτῆς οὖσα καὶ οἷα ἄγεσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν τοῦ σώματος παθήματος, ἄλλ’ οὐχ οἷα ἄγεν τε ταῦτα καὶ δεσπόζερ, καὶ οὖσα αὐτῆς πολὺ θειότερον τυὸς πράγματος ἢ καθ’ ἀρμονίαν;

νη Δία, ὦ Σώκρατες, ἐμοιγε δοκεῖ.
οὐκ ἄρα, ὁ ἀριστε, ἥμιν οὐδαμῇ καλῶς ἔχει ψυχήν ἀρμονίαν τινὰ φάναι εἶναι οὕτε γὰρ ἂν, ὡς ἐσουκεν, ὡμήρῳ θείῳ ποιητῇ ὀμωλογοίμεν οὕτε αὐτοὶ ἥμιν αὐτοῖς.

ἔχει οὕτως, ἐφή.

εἶν δὴ, ἢ δ᾽ ὁς ὁ Σωκράτης, τὰ μὲν Ἀρμονίας ἥμιν τῆς Θηβαῖκης Λεά πως, ὡς ἐσουκε, μετρίως γέγονεν: τί δὲ δὴ τὰ Κάδμου, ἐφή, ὁ Κέβης, πῶς ἱδασόμεθα καὶ τίνι λόγῳ;

οὐ μοι δοκεῖσ, ἐφή ὁ Κέβης, ἐξευρήσεων τουτοι γοῦν τὸν λόγον τὸν πρὸς τὴν ἀρμονίαν θαυμαστῶς μοι ἐπες ὡς παρὰ δόξαν. Συμιών γὰρ λέγοντος ὅτε ἡπόρει, πάνω ἐθαῦμαζον εἰ τί ἔξει τις χρήσασθαι τῷ λόγῳ αὐτοῦ. πάνω οὖν μοι ἀτῶς ἐδοξέν εὐθὺς τὴν πρώτην ἔφοδον οὐ δέξασθαι

---

8 οὐκ...οὐδαμῇ: not...in any way; redundant καλῶς ἔχει: it is good; see p. 7
9a1 ἄν...ἀμολογοίμεν: we should agree with αὐτοὶ ἥμιν αὐτοῖς: we ourselves (agree) with ourselves; Intensive and reflexive εἶν δὴ: very well; εἶν is a particle based on the 3p opt. form of εἰμι ἢ δ᾽ ὁ Σωκράτης: Socrates here said; note on p. 9
4 τὰ μὲν Ἀρμονίας...γέγονεν: the affairs of Harmonia, the Theban, have somehow, as it seems, turned to be moderately propitious for us; the goddess Harmonia was the wife of Cadmus, the mythical founder of the city of Thebes, Simmis and Cebes’ home city
8 Θηβαῖκος, -ῆ, -ον: Theban, 1
9 Λεός, -ον: propitious, gracious (Ion. Λεός) 2
11 ἑλάσκομαι: to propitiate, make propitious, 1
5 Κάδμος, -ου, ὁ: Cadmus, 2
7 καλῶς; well; beautifully, 11
5 μέτριος, -α, -ον: moderate, in due measure, 7
3 συμιών, οὖ, ὁ: maker, creator, poet, 6
1 πως: somehow, in any way, 3
11 χράσαμαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.)

5 τί δὲ δὴ...τίνι λόγῳ: Just what (are) the affairs of Cadmus? Cebes, how and with what account will we propitiate (him)?
7 τουτοι: this here; deictic iota
8 πρὸς...: against...
9 Συμιών Λέγοντος: gen. abs. ἐθαύμαζον: I wondered...: 1s impf.
3 δέξασθαι: not to have withstood the first attack...; i.e. not to have received an attack and to have survived
τού σοῦ λόγου. ταύτα δή οὐκ ἂν θαυμάσαμι καὶ τὸν τοῦ Κάδμου λόγον εἰ πάθοι.

5 ὀγαθὲ, ἐφ' ὁ Σωκράτης, μὴ μέγα λέγε, μὴ τις ἢμῶν βασκανία περιτρέψῃ τὸν λόγον τὸν μέλλοντα ἔσεθαί.

6 ἀλλὰ δὴ ταύτα μὲν τῷ θεῷ μελήσει, ἡμεῖς δὲ Ὀμηρωκῶς ἐγγὺς ἱόντες πειρώμεθα εἰ ἀρα τι λέγεις. ἐστὶ δὲ δὴ τὸ κεφάλαιον δὲν ζητεῖς· ἀξιοὶς ἐπίδειχθημα ἢμῶν τὴν ψυχήν

7 ἀνώλεθρον τε καὶ ἀθάνατον ὦσι, εἰ φιλόσοφος ἀνήρ μὲλ-

8 λων ἀποθανεῖσθαι, θαρρῶν τε καὶ ἡγούμενος ἀποθανόν ἐκεῖ εἰ πράξεων διαφερόντως ἢ εἰ ἐν ἄλλῳ βίῳ βιοὺς ἔτελεύτα, μὴ ἀνόητον τε καὶ ἠλίθιον θάρρος θαρρήσῃ. τὸ δὲ ἀπο-

9 φαίνειν ὑπὸ ἱσχυρὸν τὸ ἐστω ἡ ψυχή καὶ θεοεἰδὲς καὶ ἦν ἐτί

95b Final Argument

ἁ-νότος, -ον: foolish, unintelligent, 5
ἂν-ώδερος, -α, -ον: indestructible, 12
ἀξίωσ: to think worthy, deem right, 3
ἀπο-παίνω: to show, make clear; perform, 2
βασκανία, η: slander, malice; witchery, 1
dia-φερόντως: especially; differently, 4
ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearly, 5
ἐπι-δείκνυμι: to indicate, point out, prove, 5
εὖ: well, 19
ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 9
ἡλίθιος, -ον: foolish, silly; idle, vain, 1
θαρρέω: be confident, take courage; be bold 9
θάρρος, τος: courage, confidence, boldness, 1

3 ταύτα δὴ: the same very things; τὰ αὐτὰ obj. of aor. opt.πάθοι
ἂν θαυμάσαμι... εἰ πάθοι: I would...if it should;... fut. less vivid, the λόγον is both the object of θαυμάσαμι and the subject of πάθοι (aor. opt. πάσχω)
καί: also

5 ὀγαθὴ: οἱ ὀγαθῇ; vocative, direct address μὴ...Λέγε: negative imperative μέγα: haughty words; i.e. ‘big words’ often denotes words that provoke divine wrath μὴ...περιτρέψῃ: lest;... ’(I fear) that.’ a fearing clause with μὴ + 3s aor. subj.
ἐορθεῖ: fut. inf. εἰ μὴ following μέλλοντα ἄλλο δὴ: well then (GP 241)
μελήσει: fut. μέλει, neuter pl. subject
ὅντες: pple ἔρξομαι

θαυμάζω: wonder, be surprised at, amazed, 7
θεο-εἰδής, -ές: god-like, of divine form, 1
ἱσχυρὸς, -ά, -ον: strong; powerful; severe, 5
Κάδμος, -οῦ, ὁ: Cadmus, 2
κεφάλαιον, τό: chief point, main point, 1
μέλυ: there is a care for (dat.) for (gen.), 4
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
Ὀμηρωκός: in the manner of Homer, 1
πειράζω: to try, attempt, endeavor, 11
περι-τρέπω: turn or bring around, divert 1
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18

95b

τι: something (important)
ἐστι δὲ δὴ: but now.....is (this)
9 ἀξιοὶς: 2nd sg. pres. ἀξίωμα
ἐπιδειχθημα: aor. pass. inf.
c2 ἀποθανεῖσθαι: fut. mid. ἀποθανεῖσθαι
3 εἰ πράξεω: that...will fare well; fut. inf.
διαφερόντως: differently from, better than εἰ ἄλλῳ βίῳ: in a different life; i.e. in a non-philosophic life
4 μὴ ἀνόητον...θαρρῆσαι: will not (prove to) have a senseless and silly confidence; inner acc., μὴ is employed instead of οὖ in a protasis, the subject is φιλόσοφος ἀνήρ τὸ δὲ ἀποφαίνειν ὑπὸ: but as for showing that;... in respect to showing’ acc. respect
5 ἦν: existed
πρότερον, πρὶν ἡμᾶς ἀνθρώπους γενέσθαι, οὐδὲν κωλύειν ὕπό ταῦτα μηνύειν ἀθανασίαν μὲν μή, ὅτι δὲ πολυχρόνιον τέ ἐστιν ψυχῇ καὶ ἢν που πρότερον ἀμήχανον ὅσον χρόνον καὶ ἦδει τε καὶ ἐπραττεν πολλὰ ἄττα: ἀλλὰ γὰρ οὐδὲν τι μᾶλλον ἦν ἀθάνατον, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ εἰς ἀνθρώπου σῶμα ἐλθθὲν ἄρχῃ ἢν αὐτῇ ὅλεθρον, ὡσπερ νόσος: καὶ ταλαιπωρυμένη τε δὴ τούτον τὸν βίον ᾔη καὶ τελευτώσα γε ἐν τῷ καλουμένῳ θανάτῳ ἀπολλύοντο. διαφέρειν δὲ δὴ φῆς οὐδὲν εἶτε ἀπαξ εἶ σῶμα ἐρχεται εἶτε πολλάκις, πρὸς γε τὸ ἐκατὸν ἡμῶν φοβεῖσθαι προσήκει γὰρ φοβεῖσθαι, εἰ μὴ ἄνοητος εἶ, τῷ μὴ εἰδότι μηδὲ ἔχοντι λόγον διδόναι ὡς ἀθάνατον ἔστι. τοιαῦτ᾽ ἄττα ἐστίν, οἷμαι, ὥ Κέβης, ἃ εν...

6 οὐδὲν κωλύειν φῆς...: you claim that nothing hinders (acc) from (inf)
7 ἀθανασίαν μὲν μή, ὅτι δὲ πολυχρόνιον...: not immortality but that...; there is a lack of parallelism but the meaning is clear
polychrónioν: predicate, Plato often offers neuter predicates for masc. or fem. subjects
ἀμήχανον...: long time; acc. duration, (S 2535), see 80c9
8 ἢν: 3s impf. ētim
9 ἦδει: 3s plpf. οἶδα, simple past with no obj.
ἄττα: other things; alternative to τινά
ἄλλα γὰρ: but in fact; 'and yet,' introducing an objection (S 2819, GP 105)
d1 οὐδὲν τι μᾶλλον: not at all more; modifies the comparative adjectives that follow; οὐδὲν τι are acc. of extent by degree
ἡν: ἢ ψυχῇ is subject
ἀθανάτον: neuter predicate, see line 7
καί: in fact
λέγεις· καὶ ἐξεπίτηδες πολλάκις ἀναλαμβάνω, ἵνα μὴ τι διαφύγῃ ἡμᾶς, εἰ τε τί βούλεις, προσθήσῃ ἡ ἀφέλης.
καὶ ὁ Κέβης, ἀλλ` οὐδὲν ἔγγυε ἐν τῷ παρόντι, ἔφη, οὔτε ἀφελεῖν οὔτε προσθείναι δέομαι· ἐστὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἰ
λέγω.

ὁ οὖν Σωκράτης συχνὸν χρόνον ἐπισχῶν καὶ πρὸς ἐαυτόν τι σκεφάμενον, οὐ φαύλον πράγμα, ἔφη, ὁ Κέβης, ἵπτεις: ὅλως γὰρ δεῖ περὶ γενέσεως καὶ φθορᾶς τὴν αἰτίαν δια-
96 πραγματεύσασθαι. ἐγὼ οὖν σοι δίεμι περὶ αὐτῶν, ἔν μοι, τά γε ἐμὰ πάθη· ἔπειτα ἄν τί σοι χρήσιμον
φαίνεται ὑν ἃν λέγω, πρὸς τὴν πεθώ περὶ ὑν ἰ δὴ λέγεις χρήση.

άνα-λαμβάνω: to take up, find, resume, 3
ἀφ-αἰρέω: to take away, take away from, 2
γένεσις, -εος, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
δέομαι: lack, need, want; ask for (+ gen.) 7
δι-ἐρχόμαι: go through, narrate, describe, 1
δια-πραγματεύομαι: examine thoroughly, 2
δια-φεύγω: to flee, get away from, escape, 2
ἐμὸς, -ἡ, -ον: my, mine, 7
ἐξεπίτηδες: on purpose, 1
ἐπ-λαχῶ: hold up, restrain; wait, stop, 4
ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 9
ἶνα: in order that (+ subj.); where (+ ind.), 7

2 ἀναλαμβάνω: I am taking up (it) again; i.e. restating it
ἵνα μη...διαφύγῃ: so that...may; purpose, 3s. aor. subj.; indefinite τι is subject
3 βούλει: 2s pres. mid.
προσθήκῃς, ἀφέλης: you may...you may...; same purpose clause, aor. subj. προστίθημι (θές), ἀφαίρεω (ἐλ-)
4 παρόντι: present (moment): pple πάρειμι
οὐδέν: not at all; inner acc. with δέομαι
5 ἀφελεῖν, προσθεῖναι: aor. infs., προστίθημι (θές), ἀφαίρεω (ἐλ-), same verbs as in l. 3
6 ἤστη...ταύτα: these things are...; i.e. what Socrates has restated
7 συχνὸν χρόνον: for...; acc. of duration

δολος, -ης, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 9
πείθω, -ός, ἡ: persuasion, conviction, 1
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
πράγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18
προσ-τίθημι: to add, attribute, impose, give 10
πόλις: persuasion, conviction, 1
πολλάκις, -ης, -ον: long, much, great, 4
φαύλος -η -ον: slight, paltry, cheap, trifling 9
φθορά, ἡ: destruction, ruin, 4
χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11
χρήσιμος, -ης, -ον: useful, serviceable, 1

96a1 δείσθω: 1s fut. διέρχομαι
2 βούλη: βούλη(α), 2s pres. mid. subj. in a fut. more vivid (ει ἄν + subj., fut. ind.)
τὰ...πάθη: my own experiences
ἄν...φαίνηται,...χρήση: ἄν = ἄν, another fut. more vivid condition, χρήσε(ο)ς is 2s fut. χράομαι
τί: something; indefinite τι, nom. subject
3 ἄν ἄν... of (the things) which; or 'or whatever,' ἄν + subj. in an indefinite relative clause
πρὸς τὴν πείθω: with regard to...; πείθω (πείθω-α) is 3rd decl. acc. sg.; this noun is often personified as the goddess Peitho
άλλα μήν, ἕφη ὁ Κέβης, βούλομαι γε.

ἀκούει τοῦν ὡς ἐροῦντος. ἐγὼ γάρ, ἕφη, ὁ Κέβης, νέος ὃν θαυμαστῶς ὡς ἐπεθύμησα ταύτης τῆς σοφίας ὥν δὴ καλοῦσι περὶ φύσεως ιστορίαις ὑπερήφανος γάρ μοι ἐδόκει εἶναι, εἰδέναι τὰς αἰτίας ἐκάστου, διὰ τί γίγνεται ἐκαστον καὶ διὰ τί ἀπόλλυται καὶ διὰ τί ἔστι. καὶ πολλάκις ἐμαυτὸν ἄνω κάτω μετέβαλλον σκοπῶν πρῶτον τὰ τοιάδε: ἄρ' ἐπεδίαν τὸ θερμόν καὶ τὸ ψυχρόν σηπεδόνα τῶν λάβης, ὥσ τινες ἔλεγον, τότε δὴ τὰ ζῶα συντρέφεται; καὶ πότερον τὸ αἷμα ἐστὶν φ' φρονοῦμεν, ἢ ὁ ἀήρ ἢ τὸ πῦρ; ἢ τούτων μὲν οὐδέν, ὃ δ' ἐγκέφαλος ἐστιν ὃ τὰς αἰσθήσεις παρέχων τοῦ ἀκούειν καὶ ὅραν καὶ ὀφθαλίσθαι, ἐκ τούτων

άήρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
ἀέως, -ατος tó: blood, 1
αισθήσις, -εως, ἦ: sensation, perception, 19
ἀνω: up, above, 6
ἐγ-κέφαλος, ὄ: brain, 2
ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for (gen) 10
ζηρόν, τό: a living being, animal, 6
θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wonderful, marvelous, 11
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm; subst. heat, 11
ἰστορία, ἦ: inquiry, investigation, 1
κάτω: downwards, below, beneath, 6
μετα-βάλλω: turn (position), shift, change, 1
νέος, -α-, -ον: young; new, novel, strange, 1

5 ἀλλὰ μὴν...γε: well, certainly; in assent, γε emphasizes the verb, GP 343-4
6 ὡς ἐροῦντος: as (I)...; 'on the grounds that' or 'since' + fut. pple ἐρέω, ὡς + pple is causal and ὡς + fut. pple often expresses purpose
7 θαυμαστός ὡς: how marvelously...; once, ‘it is marvelous how...’ the neut. predicate θαυμαστόν has assimilated to the adv. ὡς ὧν δὴ: which very thing...
8 καλούω: call (x) (y); governs a double acc.
9 εἰδέναι: inf. οἶδα
διὰ τί: why; ‘on account of what’ or ‘for

ὁσφραίνομαι: to catch scent of, smell, 1
παρ-ἔχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14
πότερος, -α, -ον: (untranslated), whether, 19
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 14
σηπεδόν, -όνος, ἦ: decay, putrefication, 2
σοφία, ἦ: wisdom, judgment, intelligence, 2
συν-τρέφομαι: to grow by composition, be organized; feed together, 1
ὑπερήφανος, -ον: magnificent; overweening 1
φρονέω: to think, to be wise, prudent, 2
φύσις, -εως, ἦ: nature, character; form, 11
ψυχρός, -ά-, -όν: cold, chill, frigid, 10

what reason’
5 b1 ἄνω κάτω: back and forth
μετέβαλλον: 1s impf.
πρῶτον: first (of all); adverbial acc.
3 λάβη: 3s aor. subj. λαμβάνω
ὁς τινες ἔλεγον: as some used to say;
iterative impf.
τότε δὴ: at that very moment
4 ὃ: by which we think; or ‘because of which’ dat. of means or cause
5 ὧν...παρέχων: the one providing...
6 τοῦ ἀκούειν...: of...; all three infinitives are articular infinitives
dē γίγνοιτο μνήμη καὶ δόξα, ἐκ δὲ μνήμης καὶ δόξης λαβούσης τὸ ἥρεμειν, κατὰ ταῦτα γίγνεσθαι ἐπιστήμην; καὶ αἰ τοῦτων τὰς φθοράς σκοπῶν, καὶ τὰ περὶ τὸν οὐρανὸν

tе καὶ τὴν γῆν πάθη, τελευτών οὕτως ἐμαυτῷ ἐδοξά πρὸς ταῦτην τὴν σκέψιν ἀφυῆς εἶναι ὡς οὐδὲν χρῆμα. τεκμήριον δέ σοι ἑρῶ ἰκανόν ἐγὼ γὰρ ἐκ καὶ πρότερον σαφῶς ἠπιστήμην, ὡς γε ἐμαυτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκουν, τότε ὑπὸ ταῦτης τῆς σκέψεως οὕτω σφόδρα ἐτυφλώθην, ὡςτε ἀπέμαθον καὶ ταῦτα ἃ πρὸ τοῦ ὄμην εἰδέναι, περὶ ἄλλων τε πολλῶν καὶ διὰ τί ἀνθρώπος αὐξάνεται. τοῦτο γὰρ ὄμην πρὸ τοῦ παντὶ δήλον εἶναι, ὅτι διὰ τὸ ἐσθίειν καὶ πίνειν.

ἐπειδὰν γὰρ ἐκ τῶν συτίων ταῖς μὲν σαρξίς σάρκες προσγέωνται, τοῖς δὲ ὡστοῖς οὕστα, καὶ οὕτω κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν

πίνω: to drink, 16
πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 13
προσ-γίγνομαι: to come to be in addition to 4
σάρξ, σαρκός, ἡ: flesh, 3
σαφῆς, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
σιτίον, τό: grain, bread; provisions, 2
σκέψις, -εως, ἡ: viewing, observation, 4
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
teikmíрон, τό: sign, indication, proof, 5
τυφλόω: to make blind, 2
φθορά, ἡ: destruction, ruin, 4
χρῆμα, -ατος, τό: thing, money, possessions 6

7 γίγνοιτο: comes to be; an unexpected shift to opt., which may be replacing an indicative in ind. disc. in secondary seq. ἐκ...μνήμης...λαβοῦσης...ἐπιστήμην: and from memory and opinion, taking a resting, does knowledge come to be in this way?; aor. pple with articular inf. as direct object
8 τὰ...πάθη: the happenings; πάθε-α
1 τελευτών: finally, at last; pple as adv. πρὸς...: with regard to...
2 οὗτος...ός οὐδὲν χρῆμα: as...as no other creature; χρῆμα can denote the strange or extraordinary in kind: ‘monster,’ ‘creature’ ἑρῶ: fut. λέγω
3 ἡ καί...ἐπιστάμην: (the things) which

in fact...; ταῦτα ἃ, the missing antecedent is subject of ἐδοκοῦν, καὶ is adverbial
4 ὡς γε..., ἐδόκουν: since they...; ὡς γε is causal in sense, the subject of ἐδοκοῦν is the missing neuter pl. ταῦτα above
5 ὑπὸ...: because of; gen. of cause ἐτυφλώθην: Is aor. pass.
6 πρὸ τοῦ: before this (time)
7 ὄμην: impf. οἴσμαι
ἐιδέναι: inf. οἶδα
8 πρὸ τοῦ: before this this
di...: on account of...; + acc.
9 κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον: in the same way
λόγον καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις τὰ αὐτῶν οἰκεία ἑκάστοις προσγένηται, 
τότε δὲ τὸν ὀλίγον ὑγκὸν ὑντα ὑστερὸν πολὺν γεγονέναι, 
καὶ οὕτω γέγνεσθαι τὸν σμικρῶν ἀνθρωπον μέγαν. οὕτως 
tότε ὄμην· οὐ δοκῶ σοι μετρίως;
ἐμοιγε, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης.

σκέψαι δὴ καὶ τάδε ἔτι. ὅμην γὰρ ἰκανῶς μοι δοκεῖν, 
ὅπως τις φαύνοτο ἀνθρωπος παραστὰς μέγας σμικρῷ μεῖζων 
eἶναι αὐτῇ τῇ κεφαλῇ, καὶ ἵππος ἵππου· καὶ ἔτι γε τοῦτων 
eὔαργεστερα, τὰ δέκα μοι ἔδοκει τῶν ὄκτω πλέονα εἶναι διὰ 
tὸ δύο αὐτῶν προσείναι, καὶ τὸ δίπηχυ τοῦ πηχυαίου μεῖζων 
eἶναι διὰ τὸ ἡμέρει αὐτοῦ ὑπερέχειν.

νῦν δὲ δὴ, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, τί σοι δοκεῖ περὶ αὐτῶν;

3 ὁδικαί...προσγένηται: things proper 
to each of them are added to his other 
(parts); οἰκείος governs a dat. or gen., 
aor. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause
4 τότε δὴ: at that very moment 
tὸν...ἐντα: that the thing being...; acc. 
subject, ὀλίγον ὑγκὸν is predicate of the 
pple
γεγονέναι: pf. inf. γίγνομαι
6 ὅμην: impf. οἴμαι
8 σκέψαι: aor. mid. imperative 
δὴ: just, now; an intensive frequently 
employed with an imperative 
καί: also
9 ὅπως: whenever...; indefinite temporal, 
opt. replaces ἂν + subj. in secondary seq.
παραστάς: nom. sg. aor. pple 
σμικρῷ: beside a short one; dat. compound

ὅποτε: when, by what time, 6
παρ-ιστῆμι: to stand near, present, offer, 3
πηχυαῖος, -ης, -ον: a cubit, a cubit long, 2
περέχειν...: to come to be in addition, 4
πρόσ-ειμ: to be added to, add, 1
σκέπτομαι: look at, examine, consider, 9
σμικρός, -άς, -όν: small, little, 19
ὑπερ-έχω: to exceed, hold over or above, 8
ὑπερτερός, -άς, -όν: later, last; adv. later 17

μεῖζων: i.e. taller
eἰ αὐτῇ τῇ κεφαλῇ: by...; dat. of degree of 
difference
ἵππος: than...; gen. of comparison, supply 
verbs from earlier, φαύνοτο εἶναι μεῖζων 
καί...γε: and...; emphasizing the 
t raining word (S 2829)
τοῦτων: gen. of comparative
2 τα δέκα, τῶν ὄκτω: ten, eight; ignore the 
the article in translation; gen. comparison
3 διὰ τὸ...προσείναι: articular inf.
αὐτῷ: to...; dat. of compound verb 
tοῦ πηχυαίου: gen. of comparison;
4 διὰ τὸ...ὑπερέχειν: articular inf.
ἡμέρει αὐτοῦ: by...; dat. sg. ἡμέρος, dat. of 
degree of difference and partitive gen.
5 νῦν δὲ δὴ: and just now

149
πόρρω ποῦ, ἐφη, νὴ Διὰ ἐμὲ ἐλαῖ δος ὑπὲρ τῶν τῆν ἀιτίαν εἰδέναι, ὅσι γε οὐκ ἀποδέχομαι ἐμαυτοῦ οὔδε ὡς ἐπειδὰν εὔ τις προσθῇ ἔν, ἥ τὸ ἐν ψ προσετήθη δύο γέγονεν, ἥ τὸ προσεθέν, ἥ τὸ προσεθέν καὶ ὑ προσ-

97 ἐτέθη διὰ τὴν πρόσθεσιν τοῦ ἑτέρου τῷ ἑτέρῳ δύο ἐγένετο· θαυμάζω γὰρ εἰ ὅτε μὲν ἐκάτερον αὐτῶν χωρίς ἀλλήλων ἦν, ἐν ἀρὰ ἐκάτερον ἦν καὶ οὐκ ἡστήν τότε δύο, ἐπεὶ δ’ ἐπλησίασαν ἀλλήλως, αὐτὴ ἄρα αἰτία αὐτοῦ ἐγένετο τοῦ δύο γενέσθαι, ἢ σύνοδος τοῦ πλησίου ἀλλήλων τεθήναι. οὐδὲ γε ὡς εάν τις ἐν διασχήση, δύναμαι ἵπ τι πειθεῖσθαι ὡς αὐτὴ αὐτία γέγονεν, ἢ σχίσις, τοῦ δύο γεγονέναι· ἐναντία γὰρ 

h γίγνεται ἥ τότε αἰτία τοῦ δύο γίγνεσθαι. τότε μὲν γὰρ ὃτι

άπο-δέχομαι: to accept, admit, receive, 9
dia-σχίζω: to divide; split asunder, 2
dύναμαι: to be able, can, be capable, 15
ἐκάτερος, -α, -ον: each of two, either, 5
Zeús, δ: Zeus, 11
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be amazed at, 7
νὴ: by…(+ acc, invoking a god ), 14
πλησιάζω: to bring near, 2

πόρρω…τού ὀλεθραί: that I am far from thinking…!; this acc. + inf. is an infinitive of exclamation: employed as main clause to express surprise or indignation (S 2015)
Διὰ: acc. sg. Zeús

τοú: of anything; gen. sg. of indefinite τῆς εἰδέναι: inf. οἶδα
ὁ γε…ἀποδέχομαι…ὡς: since I do not accept from myself even that…; a relative pronoun + γε is often causal (S 2826)

ἐν…ἐν: dat. sg. of compound verb and acc. obj., both neuter from εἰς, μία, ἐν
προσθῇ: 3s aor. subj. προστίθημι (θε-) τὸ ἐν: nom. subject, hence the article
ὁ προσετήθη: to which…; 3s aor. pass. προστίθημι

γέγονεν: pf. γίγνομαι,
ἢ τὸ προσετέθη ἢ: either the one …or; neut. sg. aor. pass. pple, beginning a new clause
ὁ προσετήθη: and (the one) to which it was added; the missing antecedent is part of the subject

πλησιον, -η, -on: near, close to, (gen) 4
πόρρω: far from, far off; further into, 1
προσ-θέσις, ἤ: adding, addition, 3
προσ-τίθημα: to add; attribute, impose, give 10
σύν-οδος, ἢ: an assembly, meeting, 1
σχίσις, -εως, ἤ: division, parting, cleavage, 4
χωρίς: separately; apart from, without (gen) 6

97a1 τοῦ ἑτέρου: to the other; dat. governed by τὴν πρόσθεσιν

ἐν ἐκάτερο: the first word is the predicate and the second is the subject

ἡστήν: 3rd pers. dual impf.

αὐτὴ ἄρα: this, it turns out,…; αὐτὴ is the subject and αἰτία, the predicate

tοῦ…γενέσθαι: for…; articular inf., an objective gen. following αἰτία

ἤ σύνοδος: in apposition to αὐτῇ;

tοῦ τεθήναι: of…; aor. pass. inf. τίθημι

οὐδὲ γε ὡς: and yet that…not; parallel to οὐδὲ ὡς in line 96e8; οὐδὲ γε ὡς, introduces a negative counterpart (GP 156)

dιασχίςῃ: 3s aor. subj.

πειθεῖσθαι: to be persuaded; passive

ἡ σχίσις: in apposition to αὐτῇ

b1 ἐναντία…γίγνεται…γίγνεσθαι: for (this) turns out to be opposite than the cause of their becoming two at that (earlier) time; ἐναντία ἢ, ‘opposite than,’ is unusual

2 ὅτι: because
συνήγετο πλησίον ἄλληλων καὶ προσετίθετο ἑτέρων, ἕτερω, νῦν δ᾽ ὅτι ἀπάγεται καὶ χωρίζεται ἑτέρου ἀφ᾽ ἑτέρου. οὖν ἄν δ᾽ ὅτι ἐν γίγνεται ὡς ἐπίσταμαι, ἐπὶ πείθου ἐμαυτόν, οὖν ἄλλο οὐδὲν ἐνὶ λόγῳ δι᾽ ὅτι γίγνεται ἢ ἀπόλλυται ἢ ἕστι, κατὰ τούτον τὸν τρόπον τῆς μεθόδου, ἄλλα τῷ ἄλλον τρόπον αὐτὸς εἰκῆ τύρω, τούτον δὲ οὐδαμῇ προσέμεια.

ἀλλὰ ἀκοῦσας μὲν ποτε ἐκ βιβλίου τινός, ὡς ἐφή, Ἀναξ- αγόρου ἀναγιγνώσκος, καὶ λέγοντος ὡς ἄρα νοῦς ἐστιν ὁ διακοσμῶν τε καὶ πάντων αἰτίων, ταύτῃ δὴ τῇ αἰτίᾳ ὡς ἔπειτα τῇ ἄλλῃ ὧς αἰτίᾳ τε καὶ ἐδοξέομεν μοι τρόπον τινά, εὐδέχεσθαι τὸ τὸν νοῦν εἶναι πάντων αἰτίων, καὶ ἡγησάμην, εἰ τοῦτον οὕτως ἔχει, τὸν γε νοῦν κοσμοῦντα πάντα κοσμεῖν καὶ ἐκαστὸν τιθέναι ταύτῃ ὑπὸ

2 ἑτέρου ἑτέρῳ: one...to the other...; neuter nom. subj. and dat. object
3 δι᾽: because...
   ἀπάγεται: is removed
   ἑτέρου: neuter nom. subj.
4 ὅτι: if
   γίγνεται: is governed by ἐπίσταμαι
5 ἄλλῳ οὐδὲν: subject of the following verbs, here used proleptically: ‘I do not know nothing other why...’ is equivalent to ‘I do not know why nothing other...’
6 ἐν λόγῳ: in one word; i.e. in brief, dat. of manner
7 δι/(δ) γίγνεται...ἐστι: all governed by ἐπίσταμαι

νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
όπη: where; in what way, how, 11
οὐδαμῇ: in no place, in no way, not at all, 3
πλησίον, -η, -ον: near, close to; neighbors, 4
προσ-ήμα: to admit, send to, let come to, 2
προσ-τίθημι: to add, attribute, impose, give 10
πλησίον, -η, -ον: near, close to, (gen) 4
τίθημι: to set, put, place, arrange, 10
τρόπος, ὁ: a method, manner, way; turn, 17
φύρω: to mix up, jumble up; 1
χωρίζω: to separate, sever, divide, 3

κατὰ...τρόπον: according to this method
τούτον (τρόπον) οὐδαμῇ προσίεμαι: I s pres. mid.

ἀναγιγνώσκος, καὶ λέγοντος: from (someone) reading and...; the missing noun is a gen. of source following ἀκοῦσας, the gen. ἀναξαγόρου modifies βιβλίου
νοῦς: Mind, Nous; subject, scholars often leave the noun capitalized and in Greek
ταύτῃ...αἰτίᾳ: by...; or ‘in’, dat. of means

ἐφή: is good; see p. 7
τό...εἶναι: (namely) that...; ind. discourse
οὕτως ἔχει: see p. 7

ἐκαστὸν: each thing; obj. of τιθέναι
ταύτῃ: in this way; dat. of manner
ἀν βέλτιστα ἔχει· εἰ οὖν τις βούλευτο τὴν αἰτίαν εὑρεῖν

περὶ ἐκάστου ὅπη γίγνεται ἢ ἀπόλλυται ἢ ἔστι, τοῦτο δὲν

περὶ αὐτοῦ εὑρεῖν, ὅπη βέλτιστον αὐτῷ ἔστιν ἢ εἶναι ἢ

d ἀλλο ὁποῖον πάσχειν ἢ ποιεῖν· ἐκ δὲ δὴ τοῦ λόγου τοῦτον

οὖν ἀλλο σκοπεῖν προσήκειν ἀνθρώπω καὶ περὶ αὐτοῦ ἐκεῖ

νοῦ καὶ περὶ τῶν ἀλλῶν ἀλλός ἢ τὸ ἀριστον καὶ τὸ βέλτιστον.

ἀναγκαίον δὲ εἶναι τὸν αὐτὸν τοῦτον καὶ τὸ χεῖρον εἰδέναι:

tὴν αὐτὴν γὰρ εἶναι ἐπιστήμην περὶ αὐτῶν. ταῦτα δὴ λογιζόμενον ἁλμενὸς ὑποκείναι ἤμην διδάκταλον τῆς αἰτίας

περὶ τῶν ὄντων κατὰ νοῦν ἐμαυτῷ, τὸν Ἀναξαγόραν, καὶ

μοι φράσεων πρῶτων μὲν πότερον ἡ γῆ πλατεία ἐστὶν ἢ

e στρογγύλη, ἐπεὶ δὲ φράσεως, ἐπεκδοχήσεσθαι τὴν αἰτίαν

Ἀναξαγόρας, οὐ, ὁ: Anaxagoras, 2

ἀριστος, -ης, -ον: best, most excellent, 6

ἀμένος, -ης, -ον: well-pleased, glad, 4

βέλτιστος, -ης, -ον: best, 14

διδάκταλος, ὁ: teacher, 1

ἐπικεπτικόμαι: to explain in addition, 3

εἰρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 8

λογίζομαι: to reason, calculate, count, 9

6 βέλτιστα: ἔχει + superlative adv. (see p. 7); 3s subj. in an indefinite relative clause

7 βούλευτο: wished; opt. replacing ἄν + subj. in ind. disc. in secondary seq.

7 τοῦτο...δὴ: this...in what way; object of εὑρεῖν

δὲν: that is was necessary...; ind. disc. continuing from ἡγησάμην in c4

8 περὶ αὐτοῦ: concerning it; i.e. ἐκάστου, whatever object of inquiry

αὐτῷ: for it; dat. of interest

ἠ εἷναι...η ποιεῖν: subject infinitives of ἔστιν

d2 προσήκειν: that it is fitting; impersonal, still governed by ἡγησάμην in line c4

καὶ...καί: both...and

άλλα (ἡ) ἢ: but; οὖν...άλλα (ἡ) ἢ is an elliptical expression: ‘nothing but’ (S 2778)

4 εἶναι: that it is...; parallel to προσήκειν in

νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14

δὴ: where; in what way, how, 11

δοκιμῶν, ἂν...ὁ ὄνομα...ὅτι...ὁ: whosoever, 11

πλατυς, -ες, -ὐς: wide, broad, flat, 3

προσήκεια: it belongs, it is fitting, befits 15

στρογγύλος, -ης, -ον: round, spherical, 1

φράζω: to point out, tell, indicate, 6

χεῖρων, -ου, (-ους): worse, inferior, 5

d2 and also governed by ἡγησάμην (l. c4)

τὸν αὐτὸν τοῦτον: that this same (man)... acc. subj. of inf. οἶδα

καί: also

ταῦτα δὴ: these very things; intensive δὴ

6 ηὑρηκεῖι: pf. inf. εὑρίσκω

ζημία: impf. οἰμαί

7 τῶν ὄντων: the things which are; pple

κατὰ νοῦν: according to my mind; likely a wordplay on Anaxagoras’ Nous

τὸν Ἀναξαγόραν: in apposition

8 φράσεων: that (he)...; assume Anaxagoras as acc. subject of this fut. inf., governed by ζημία

πρῶτον: first; adverbial acc.

e1 φράσεων: he had told (me); aor. opt. may replace ἄν + subj. in ind. disc. in secondary sequence
καὶ τὴν ἀνάγκην, λέγοντα τὸ ἄμεινον καὶ ὅτι αὐτὴν ἄμεινον ἦν τοιαύτην εἶναι· καὶ εἰ ἐν μέσῳ φαίη εἶναι αὐτὴν, ἐπεκ- δηγήσεσθαι ὡς ἄμεινον ἦν αὐτὴν ἐν μέσῳ εἶναι· καὶ εἰ μοι ταῦτα ἀποφαίνω, παρασκευάσμην ὡς ὑμὴτε ποθεόμενον αἰτίας ἄλλο ἔδος. καὶ δὴ καὶ περὶ ἥλιον ὅτι παρασκευάσμην ἦσαίτως πενθόμενον, καὶ σελήνης καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀστρῶν, τάξιν τε πέρα πρὸς ἀλληλαὶ καὶ τροπῶν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων παθημάτων, πὴ ποτε ταῦτ' ἄμεινον ἐστὶν ἐκαστὸν καὶ ποιεῖν καὶ πάσχειν ἀ πάσχει· οὗ γὰρ ἢν ποτε αὐτὸν ὑμῖν, φάσκοντα γε ὑπὸ νοῦ αὐτὰ κεκοσμήσθαι, ἄλλην τινα αὐτοῖς αἰτίαν ἐπενεγκεῖν ὧ ὅτι βέλτιστον αὐτὰ ὦτις ἐχει ἐστὶν ὠσπερ ἔχει· ἐκάστῳ οὗν αὐτῶν ἀποδιδόντα τὴν αἰτίαν

2 τὴν ἀνάγκην: the necessity; i.e. why it must be so
3 τὸ ἄμεινον: what is better; i.e. round or flat
3 εἰ...φαίη: if he said; pres. opt. replacing ἂν + subj. in ind. disc. in secondary sequence
4 ὡς...ἡν: how it was; impersonal verb

ΦΑΙΔΩΝ 97e

 vpnθάνομαι: to learn by inquiry or hearsay, 3
ταχύς, εἰα, ὡ: quick, swift, hastily, 9
ποθέω: to long for, yearn after, 1
παρα-σκευάζω: to get ready, prepare, 8
πάθημα, -ατος, τό: experience, misfortune, 4
ποθέω: to long for, yearn after, 1

ΨΕΥΔΟΜΕΝΟΣ: fut. pple πυθόμαι again expressing purpose, i.e. ‘intending to...’
(περὶ) σελήνης: ellipsis, supply preposition
τάχυς...περὶ: περὶ τάχυος; gen. τάχει-ος
πρὸς ἀλλήλα: compared to one another

ΦΑΣΙΚΩ: to say, speak, assert, 1
ὡς-αὐτος: in the same manner, just so, 4
πυθόμαι: to learn by inquiry or hearsay, 3
ταχύς, εἰα, ὡ: quick, swift, hastily, 9

98a1 εἰ...ἀποφαίνω: if he showed; pres. opt. replacing ἂν + subj. in secondary sequence in ind. disc. governed by παρασκευάσμην
παρασκευάσμην: I had prepared myself; plpf. mid.; mid. is often reflexive in sense
ὡς...ποθεόμενος...ἴδως: 'to long no longer for...'; 'so as going to long for.' While readers expect ind. disc., Plato employs ὡς + fut pple (mid.) to express purpose.
2 καὶ δὴ καί: in particular; ‘and indeed also’
καὶ κοινὴ πάσι τὸ ἐκάστω βέλτιστον ὄμην καὶ τὸ κοινὸν πᾶσιν ἐπεκδηγήσεσθαι ἀγαθὸν καὶ οὐκ ἂν ἀπεδόμην πολλοῦ τὰς ἐλπίδας, ἀλλὰ πάνυ σπουδὴ λαβῶν τὰς βιβλίους ὡς τάχιστα οἶός τ᾽ ἡ ἀνεγίγνωσκον, ἵν᾽ ὡς τάχιστα εἰδεῖν τὸ βέλτιστον καὶ τὸ χεῖρον.

ἀπὸ δὴ θαυμαστῆς ἐλπίδος, ὦ ἑταῖρε, ὀχόμην φερόμενος, ἐπειδὴ προίων καὶ ἀναγιγνώσκων ὅρῳ ἄνδρα τῷ μὲν νῷ οὐδὲν χρώμενον οὖδὲ τινας αἰτίας ἐπαιτιώμενον εἰς τὸ διακοσμεῖν τὰ πράγματα, ἀέρας δὲ καὶ αἰθέρας καὶ ὑδάτα αἰτιώμενον καὶ ἀλλὰ πολλὰ καὶ ἁτόπα. καὶ μοι ἐδοξεῖν ὁμοιότατον πεπονθέναι ὁσπερ ἄν εἰ τις λέγων ὁτι Σωκράτης πάντα ὅσα πράττει νῦν πράττει, κἀπειτά εἰπερήμοσις λέγειν

ἀήρ, ἀέρος ὁ: air, mist 16
αἰθήρ-, ἀερός ὁ: aether, air, sky, 4
ἀιτία: assign, accuse, charge; blame, 4
ἄνα-γυγνόσκω: recognize, persuade; read, 3
ἄπο-διδω: to give back, return, render, 5
α-τοπος, -ου: strange, odd, extraordinary, 9
βέλτιστος, -ης, -ου: best, 14
βιβλος, ὁ: book, 1
δια-κομω: to arrange, order, 2
ἐλπίς, -ειδος, ἡ: hope, expectation, 9
ἐπι-αἰτια: assign (as cause), accuse 1
ἐπι-διπηγεομ: to explain in addition, 3
ἐπι-χειρεο: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 8
ἐταῖρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11

2 καὶ κοινῇ πᾶσι: and to everything in common; parallel to ἐκάστῳ in b1
tό...οἷα...ἀγαθόν: I thought that (the one)...would explain what is best for each and what is the good common to all; the missing acc. subj. governs ἀποδιδόντα
3 ἂν ἀπεδόμην πολλοῦ τὰς ἐλπίδας: and I would not give up (my hopes) for a great price; i.e. I had high hopes; οὐ + aor. mid. expresses past unrealized potential; the mid. of ἀποδίδωμι often means 'sell' or 'exchange and governs a gen. of price
4 ὡς τάχιστα οἶός τὲ ἡ: as quickly as I was able; '...I was the sort to...’ οἶος τὲ εἰμὶ is a common idiom for 'I am able...’
5 ἐκάστῳ...αἰτη: so that...might...; purpose, 1s.
op. οἶδα in secondary sequence
ὡς τάχιστα: as...as possible; + superlative
7 φερόμενος: carried along; pass. pple
8 προέρχο: nom. sg. pres. pple προέρχομαι
τῷ νῷ: dat. sg. νοῦς, obj. of χρώμενον
9 οὐδὲν: not at all; inner acc.
eἰς: for...; expressing purpose
10 ἀπιτιωμένον: assigning (as causes)...; i.e. to point out as responsible
11 ὁμοιότατον: superlative adv.
πεπονθέναι: to have happened; pf. πάσχω
ὦσπερ ἄν εἶ: just as if...; ὥσπερ εἶ, see 1.5
6 νῷ: with mind, with nous; dat. of means
cάπειτα: καὶ ἐπιείται

154
τὰς αἰτίας ἐκάστων ὑν πράττω, λέγοι πρῶτον μὲν ὅτι διὰ ταύτα νῦν ἐνθάδε κάθημαι, ὅτι σύγκειται μου τὸ σῶμα ἐξ ὀστῶν καὶ νεύρων, καὶ τὰ μὲν ὅστα ἔστω στερεὰ καὶ διαφυάς ἔχει χωρὶς ἀπ᾽ ἄλληλων, τὰ δὲ νεῦρα οία ἐπιτείνεσθαι καὶ ἀνίσθαι, περιαμπέχοντα τὰ ὅστα μετὰ τῶν σαρκῶν καὶ δέρματος ὑστέρηκε αὐτά· αἰωρουμένων ὑν τῶν ὀστῶν ἐν ταῖς αὐτῶν συμβολαῖς χαλῶντα καὶ συντείνοντα τὰ νεῦρα κάμπτεσθαι ποὺ ποιεῖ οἶνον τ´ εἶναι ἐμὲ νῦν τὰ μέλη, καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν αἰτίαν συγκαμβιθές ἐνθάδε κάθημαι· καὶ αὐτ´ περὶ τοῦ διαλέγεσθαι ὑμῖν ἐτέρας τοιαῦτας αἰτίας λέγοι, φωνᾶς τε καὶ ἀέρας καὶ ἀκοὰς καὶ ἀλλα μυρία τοιαῦτα αἰτιώμενον, ἀμελήσας τὰς ὑν ἀληθῶς αἰτίας λέγειν,

ἀήρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
αιτιόσωμα: assign, accuse, charge; blame, 4
αιωρέω: to lift up, raise, 2
ἀκοή, ἥ: hearing, 1
ἀμελέω: to have no care for, neglect, 5
ἀν-ήμω: to relax, let loose, send up, 1
δέρμα, -άτος, τό: skin, 1
dia-λέγωμαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
diaφαρμή, ἥ: joint, 1
ἐπί-τείνω: to stretch over, tighten, 3
κάθη-μαι: to sit, 4
κάμπτο-μαι, ἥ: bend, curve, 1
μέλος, -ές, τό: limb, 1
νεύρον, τό: sinew, tendon, nerve, 6

5 ὅποιο: which ἀι., acc. pl. relative pronoun attracted into the gen. of the antecedent (ἀντι στερέων ἀν οἶνον λέγοι: (just as if) one should say; opt. in a protasis beginning in line 3; the ἀν is part of a suppressed apodosis (ἀν + opt) and can be left untranslated (S 2478)
6 ἐνθάδε: here
ὅτε: (namely) that... or ‘namely because...’ in apposition to διὰ ταύτα
eξ: i.e. as a result from...;
ἐό: are the sort to...; add a linking verb; ἐό is a predicate that governs two expegegetic (explanatory) infinitives
d2 ὁ συνέχει αὐτά: which contains them αἰωρουμένων... ὀστῶν ἕν... συμβολαῖς:

5 όποιο: which ᾧ., acc. pl. relative pronoun attracted into the gen. of the antecedent (ἀντι στερέων ἀν οἶνον λέγοι: (just as if) one should say; opt. in a protasis beginning in line 3; the ἀν is part of a suppressed apodosis (ἀν + opt) and can be left untranslated (S 2478)
4 τὰ νεῦρα: nom. subject of ποιεῖ ταύτας τὰ μέλη: governed by οἶνον τε οἶνον τ:` εἶναι ἐμὲ: makes me able to... ‘makes me be the sort to... ’
5 συγκαμβιθές: nom. sg. aor. pass. pple
tοῦ διαλέγεσθαι ὑμῖν: conversing with you
7 λέγοι: (just as if) one should say; parallel to λέγοι in c5 in the same protasis from line c3
8 αἰτιώμενος: assigning (as causes)
ἐράς ἁλῆθος: truly; τὰς ὑν ἁλήθως αἰτίας may be translated as ‘the causes in reality’ or just ‘the real causes’
ὅτι, ἐπειδὴ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐδοξεῖ βέλτιον ἦνα ἐμοῦ καταψηφίσασθαι, διὰ ταῦτα δὴ καὶ ἐμοὶ βέλτιον αὐτὸν δέδοκται ἐνθάδε καθῆσασθαι, καὶ δικαιότερον παραμένοντα ὑπέχειν τὴν δίκην ἢν ἄν κελεύσωσιν ἐπεὶ νὴ τὸν κύνα, ὡς ἐγὼμαι, πάλαι ἄν ταῦτα τὰ νεῦρα καὶ τὰ ὀστά ἢ περὶ Μέγαρα ἢ Βοιωτοὺς ἦν, ὅπο Δόξης φερόμενα τοῦ βελτίστου, εἰ μὴ δικαιότερον ἂμην καὶ κάλλιον ἦνα πρὸ τοῦ φεύγειν τε καὶ ἀποδιδράσκειν ὑπέχειν τῇ πόλει δίκην ἢντιν ἂν τάττη, ἀλλὰ αἰτία μὲν τὰ τοιαύτα καλεῖν λίαν ἄτοπον ἐν δὲ τις λέγοι ὅτι ἄνευ τοῦ τὰ τοιαύτα ἐχεῖν καὶ ὀστά καὶ νεῦρα καὶ δῶσα ἄλλα ἔχω σῶ ἢν οἴος τ'] ἢ ποιεῖν τὰ δόξαντα μοι, ἀληθὴ ἄν λέγοιν ὡς μέντοι διὰ ταῦτα ποιῶ ἄ ποιῶ, καὶ ταῦτα νῦ πράττων, ἀλλὰ οὐ

δὲ-τόπος, -ου: strange, odd, extraordinary, 9
Ἀθηναῖος, -ας, -ου: Athenian, of Athens, 6
ἄνευ: without, 9
ἀπο-διδράσκω: to run away, flee, escape, 2
βέλτιστος, -ης, -ου: best, 14
βέλτιον, -ου (ονομα): better, 7
Βοιωτός, ὁ: Bocotian, 1
δίκαιος, -ας, -ου: just, right(eous), fair, 13
δόξα, ἡ: opinion, reputation, honor, glory, 7
ἐν-θέδε: here, hither, thither, 17
κάθημα: to sit, 4
καλλιώμ, -ου: more noble or beautiful, 7
κατα-ψηφίζωμαι: to vote against (gen) 1
κελεύω: to bid, order, command, exhort, 8
κύων, κυνός, ὁ: a dog, 2

λίαν: very, exceedingly, 1
Μέγαρα, τα: Megara, 1
νεῦρον, τό: sinew, tendon, nerve, 6
νῆ: by... (+ ace, invoking a god), 14
νοοῦ, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
ὄστεον, τό: bone, 9
πάλαι: for some time, long ago, of old, 13
παρα-μένω: to abide, remain, 2
πόλις, ἡ: a city, 1
πράττω: to do, accomplish, make, act, 12
πρό: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 13
τάττω: to order, arrange, marshall, 2
ὑπέ-ἔχω: to bear, suffer, undergo, 3
φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 10

2 ὅτι: (namely) that,... (namely) because...
3 ταύτα δὴ: these very things, precisely these καὶ: also, too
δέδοκται: it...; pf. pass. δοκέω
4 καὶ δικαιότερον: and (it has seemed) to be more just that I...; supply δέδοκται
dίκην: penalty
5 ἢν ἂν: whatever; indefinite relative + subj. ἐπεί: since...; causal
ἐγὼμαι: ἐγὼ ὁμοία
πάλαι ἄν... ἢν... εἰ...φιμν: would have been long ago... if I did not think; present contrafactual (εἰ + impf., ἂν + impf.); ἢν governs a neuter pl. subject, and πάλαι

suggests that ἦν is progressive in sense

99a1 ἢ περὶ Μέγαρα ἢ (περὶ) Βοιωτοὺς: either around Megara or around the Boeotians; note the lack of parallelism
2 ὑπὸ: by...; gen. of cause
3 πρὸ... ἀποδιδράσκειν: instead of...; + infs.
4 τῇ πόλει: for the city; dat. of interest
5 ἢτινα ἂν: whatever; indefinite relative
6 (ἐστιν) ἄτοπον: it is absurd; add verb ἔλεγοι... ἂν ἔλεγοι... should... would say
7 καὶ ὀστά... ἔχω: in apposition to τοιαύτα
8 οὐκ ἂν οἶος τ(ε) ἢ: I would be able...
9 ὡς...: (to say) that...; ind. disc.
τῇ τοῦ βελτίστου αἱρέσει, πολλή ἄν καὶ μακρὰ ῥαθυμαὶ εἰγὶ τοῦ λόγου. τὸ γὰρ μὴ διελέσθαι οἷον τ’ εἶναι ὅτι ἄλλο μὲν τί ἐστι τὸ αἴτιον τῷ ὄντι, ἄλλο δὲ ἐκεῖνῳ ἄνευ οὗ τὸ αἴτιον οὐκ ἂν ποτ’ εἰγὶ αἴτιον: ὃ δὴ μοι φαίνονται ἡπιαφώντες οἱ πολλοὶ ὄσπερ ἐν σκότει, ἄλλοτρῷ ὁμοίως προσχρόμενοι, ὄς αἴτιον αὐτὸ προσαγορεῦειν. διὸ δὴ καὶ ὁ μὲν τις διήνοι περιτιθέσι τῇ γῇ ὑπὸ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ μένεν δὴ ποιεῖ τὴν γῆν, ὁ δὲ ὄσπερ καρδόπως πλατεῖα βάθρων τὸν ἄέρα ὑπερεῖδε: τὴν δὲ τοῦ ὡς οἶον τε βελτίστα αὐτὰ τεθήναι δύναμιν οὕτω νῦν κείσατε, ταύτην οὐτε ζητοῦσιν οὔτε τινὰ οἴνοτα δαιμονιάν ἴσχυν ἔχειν, ἀλλὰ ἡγοῦνται τούτου Ἀτλαντα ἢν ποτε ἵσχυρότερον καὶ ἂθανατώτερον καὶ μᾶλλον ἰάπαντα

ἄηρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
αἱρεσις, -eos, ἡ: choice, deliberation; taking, 1
αἴτιος, -α, -ον: responsible, blameworthy, 8
ἀλλότριος -α -ον: not belonging, of another, 3
ἄνευ: without, 9
ἀπας, ἀπασα, ἀπαν: every, quite all, 14
Ἀτλας, -αντους, ὁ: Atlas, 1
βάθρων, τό: base, pedestal, 1
βελτιστος, -η, -ου: best, 14
δαιμονιος, -α, -ον: divine, of a god, 1
διαιρέω (ελ): to divide, separate, discern, 3
διή: ὑ: vertex, rotation; whirpool, eddy, 1
διό: δ’ ὃ, for which reason, for this reason, 4
δύναμις, -εως, ἡ: power, wealth, strength, 3
ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 9

b1 τῇ...αἱρέσει: because of...; dat. of cause
ἄν εἴη: would be; ῥαθυμαί is predicate; the clause (ὡσ...αιρέσει, a7-b1) is the subject
2 τοῦ λόγου: of talking; or ‘of speech’
τὸ γὰρ μὴ διελέσθαι οἶον τ(ε) εἶναι: (it is remarkable) that one is not able to distinguish...!; an inf. of exclamation, is used to express surprise or indignation
(S 2015), see 96e6
3 ὃτι ἄλλο μὲν... ἄλλο δὲ... αἰτιον: that the cause in reality is one thing but that without which the cause would not ever be a cause (is) another thing; τὸ αἴτιον is ‘the thing responsible,’ hence ‘cause’ or ‘reason’; τῷ δὲντι is adverbiai

ἰσχυρὸς, -ά, -όν: strong, powerful; severe, 5
ἰσχύς, -ύος, ἡ: strength, might, power, force, 2
καρδόπος, ὁ: kneading-trough, 1
κείμαι: to lie, set down, be placed, establish, 4
μακρός, ὁ, ὄν: long, far, distant, large, 4
μένω: to stay, remain, 8
οὐρανός, ὁ: sky, heaven, 10
περι-τίθημι: to put or place around, envelop 1
πλατύς, -εια, -γε: wide, broad, flat, 3
προσ-αγορεύομαι: to call (x) (γε), name, 1
προσ-χρόμαι: to use in addition (+ dat.), 2
ῥαθυμαί, ἡ: carelessness; laziness, 1
σκότος, -εως, τό: darkness, gloom, 1
ὑπερεῖδο: to put under as support, 1
ψηλαφάω: to grope for, touch, feel for, 1
4 δ’ ὃ: which very thing...; obj. of the pple
6 ὡσ...: so as to...; result clause.
ὁ μὲν τις...γῆν: a certain man by placing a vortex around the earth makes the earth just stay under the sky; dat. of compound
8 ὃ δὲ...ὑπερεῖδε: another puts air as a base under (the earth) as if (under) a flat trough
11 τῇ δὲ...ζητοῦσιν: but they do not seek this, (namely) the power for their being placed as best as it is possible to be placed just now; τοῦ τεθήναι is an articular inf. aor. pass. τίθημα; κείσατε is an explanatory inf.
3 τινα...ἔχειν: that it has some divine force
τούτου: than this one; gen. of comparison
Ἀτλαντα: that a (new) Atlas...
5 συνέχοντα ἐξευρέω, καὶ ὃς ἀληθῶς τὸ ἁγαθὸν καὶ δέον συνδεῖν καὶ συνέχειν οὐδὲν οἴσται. ἔγω μὲν οὖν τῆς τοιαύτης αἰτίας ὅπη ποτὲ ἔχει μαθητής ὄτου ὁδιστ' ἄν γενούμην ἔπειδη δὲ ταύτης ἐστερήσῃ καὶ οὔτ' αὐτὸς εὑρεῖν οὔτε παρ' ἄλλου μαθεῖν οἶός τε ἐγενόμην, τὸν δεύτερον

πλοῦν ἐπὶ τὴν τῆς αἰτίας ζήτησιν ᾧ πεπραγμάτευμαι βούλει σοι, ἐφη, ἐπίδειξιν ποιήσωμαι, ὁ Κέβης;

ὑπερφυσῶ μὲν οὖν, ἐφη, ὡς βούλομαι.

ἔδοξε τούνν μοι, ἃ δ' ἦν, μετὰ ταύτα, ἐπειδή ἀπειρήκη τὰ ὅντα σκοπῶν, δεῖν εὐλαβηθῆναι μὴ πάθομι ὅπερ οἱ τὸν ἦλιον ἐκλείποντα θεωροῦντες καὶ σκοπούμενοι πάσχουσιν· διαφθείρονται γάρ ποι ἐνοι τὰ ὀμματα, ἐὰν μὴ ἐν ὑδατῇ ἦ

ἀπό-λέγω: to renounce, refuse, decline, 1
δεύτερος, -ης, -ον: second, 1
δια-φθείρω: to destroy, corrupt, kill, 6
ἐκ-λείπω: to leave, abandon, eclipse, 1
ἐνοι, -ας, -α: some, 7
ἐξ-εὑρίσκω: to find out, discover, 3
ἐπί-δεικνύω, ἦ: exhibition, display, 1
eὐλαβέωμαι: be cautious, be careful, beware, 5
εὑρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 8
ζήτησις, εἰς, ἦ: seeking, examining, 3
ἡδύς, -εία, -υ: sweet, pleasant, glad, 5
ἥλιος, ὁ: the sun, 7
θεωρέω: to see, watch, look at, 3

5 . . . συνέχοντα: more all-encompassing ἄν...ἐξευρέω: would...; ἄν + aor. inf. is the equiv. to a potential opt. in direct disc. ὡς ἀληθῶς: truly
tὸ ἁγαθὸν καὶ δέον: what is good and binding; ‘the good and binding’, neut. pple
οὐδὲν: not at all; inner acc. with οἴσται
tῆς...αἰτίας...μαθητής...ἀτούνων: a pupil of whosoever of such a cause; objective gen.
ὅπη ποτὲ ἔχει: how in the world it is; p. 7
ἡδίστος(α): superlative adv. ἡδύς
ἐστερήθη: is aor. pass. + gen. separation
παρ(α): from...; place of source
οἶος τε ἐγενόμην: I turned out to be able; or ‘came to be able’, οἶος τε εἰμί. ‘I am the sort to’ is a common idiom for ‘I am able’ (here, with the aor. of γίνομαι)

μαθητής, οὖ, ὁ: a learner, student, pupil, 1
μαθήδων: to learn, understand, 12
ὄμμα, -ατος, τό: the eye, 5
ὅπη: where; in what way, how, 11
ὀστιοῦν, ἔτιον, ἔτι-οῦν: whosoever, 11
πλοῦς (πλοῦ): sailing, voyage, 1
πραγματεύομαι: busy oneself, take trouble, 2
στερήθην ὃς: to deprive from, rob, defraud (gen) 5
συν-δέον: to bind together, bind fast, 1
συν-ἐχώ: to hold together, contain, 4
ὑδώρ, ὑδατός, τό: water, 14
ὑπερφυσῶ: extraordinarily, enormously, 3

τὸν δεύτερον...ζήτησιν: a second sailing for seeking the cause; + πεπραγμάτευμαι
d1 ἥ: in what way...; dat. of manner
πεπραγμάτευμαι: pf. mid.
2 βούλει...ποιήσωμαι...: do you wish that I create...; 2s βούλομαι often accompanies a deliberative subj. conflating two questions: ‘what do you want?’ and ‘am I to create?’
3 ὑπερφυσῶ...ἀτος: (it is) extraordinary how; ὑπερφυς ἐστίν ὡς, nominative predicate is often attracted by the adverb ὡς
μὲν οὖν: certainly indeed; strong assent
ἀπειρήκη: plpf. ἀπολέγω (ἐρ-)
5 τὰ δύνα: the things which are
der: it is necessary; impersonal der
eὐλαβηθῆναι: aor. pass. deponent inf.
μὴ πάθομαι: lest I experience; fearing clause
τινὶ τοιούτῳ σκοπώνται τὴν εἰκόνα αὐτοῦ. τοιοῦτὸν τι καὶ 
éω διενόθην, καὶ ἔδεισα μὴ παντάπασι τὴν ὕψην τυφλω-
θείν βλέπων πρὸς τὰ πράγματα τοῖς ὄμμασι καὶ ἐκάστῃ 
tῶν αἰσθήσεων ἐπιχειρῶν ἀπεσθαί αὐτῶν. ἔδοξε δὴ μοι 
χρῆμαι εἰς τοὺς λόγους καταφυγόντα ἐν ἐκεῖνοις σκοπεῖν 
tῶν ὄντων τῆν ἀληθείαν. ἦσως μὲν οὖν ὃ εἰκάζω τρόπον 
tινὰ οὐκ ἔοικεν· οὐ γὰρ πάνω συγχωρῶ τὸν ἐν [τοῖς] λόγοις 
σκοπούμενον τὰ ὄντα ἐν εἰκόσι μᾶλλον σκοπεῖν ἢ τὸν ἐν 
[τοῖς] ἔργοις. ἀλλὰ οὖν δὴ ταύτῃ γε ὀρμησά, καὶ ὑποθέμενος 
ἐκάστοτε λόγον ὃν κρινόν ἐρρωμενέστατον εἶναι, ἢ μὲν 
ἀν μοι δοκῇ τούτῳ συμφωνεῖν τίθημι ὡς ἀληθῆ ὄντα, καὶ 
περὶ αἰτίας καὶ περὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀπάντων [ὄντων], ὃ δὲ ἀν

αἰσθήσεις, -εως, ἡ: sensation, perception, 19 
ἀτας, ἀπασα, ἀταν: every, quite all, 14 
ἀπτῶ: fasten, grasp (gen); kindle, set fire; 11 
βλέπω: to look at, see, 3 
δεῖδω: fear, dread, shrink from, feel awe, 11 
δι-νοέμα: to think, consider, intend, 6 
εἰκάζω: to liken, compare; pass. be like, 1 
εἰκών, -όνος, ἡ: a likeness, image; statue, 3 
ἐκάστοτε: each time, on each occasion, 4 
ἐπι-χειρέω: put one's hand on, attempt, try, 8 
ἔργον, το: work, labor, deed, act, 5 
ἐρρωμένος -η-ον: strong, healthy, powerful 1 
τοις: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19

κατα-φεύγω: to flee to refuge, seek refuge, 2 
κρίνω: to pick out choose; judge, decide, 2 
διενόθην: to set in motion; set out, begin, 5 
δοξά, -ατος, τό: the eye, 5 
διορθώ: to think, consider, intend, 6 
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15 
πράγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18 
συγ-χωρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13 
ὑπο-τίθημι: set forth, put, place, arrange, 10 
τρόπος, ὃ: a manner, way; turn, direction, 17 
τυφλόω: to make blind, 2 
ὕπο-τίθημι: to set up, suppose, propose, 4

ε1 τινὶ τοιούτῳ: (in) some sort of thing 
σκοπώνται: they examine; ἄν + subj. in a 
pres. general condition (ἐν ἄν subj., pres.) 100a1 τοῦ...σκοπούμενον: one examining...

τά δυντα: the things which are 
τοῦ ἐν ἔργοις (σκοπούμενον): the one...

ἀλλὰ (ἄλλα) οὖν δὴ...γε: well, in all events...; δὴ 
refinches the particles, γε emphasizes the 
preceding word; GP 445, S 2957 
ταύτη: in this way; dat. of manner 
ὑποθέμενος: aor. mid. pple ὑποτίθημι 

δὲ ἀν: whichever;...; ἄν + subj., relative 
ἀ μὲν...: (these things) which; (ταύτα) ἂ 
τούτω: i.e. the ἐρρωμενέστατος λόγος 
ὡς ἀληθῆ δυνά: on the grounds of being 
true; i.e. as true; ὡς + pple, alleged cause 
ἀ δ(ἐ): and whatever...; in reply to ἂ ἀν
μή, ὡς οὐκ ἀληθῆ. Βούλομαι δὲ σοι σαφέστερον ἐπείν ἄ λέγω· οἶμαι γάρ σε νὸν οὐ μανθάνειν.

οὐ μὰ τὸν Δία, ἐφη ὁ Κέβης, οὐ σφόδρα.


7 ὡς οὐκ ἀληθῆ (δοντα): on the grounds of not being true; i.e. as not true; ὡς + pple, expressed alleged cause
σαφέστερον: comparative adv.
λέγω: I mean
τὸν Δία: acc. sg. Ζεύς
b1 ἀλλὰ: well; as often, beginning a speech
(S 2784)
ἠ δ᾽ ὅς: see note on p. 9
οὐδὲν... nothing (is); add verb
2 παρεληλυθότι: past; pf. pple παρ-ἐχομαι
οὐδὲν: not at all; ‘made no ceasing,’ inner acc.
πέπαυμαι: pf. mid. + complementary pple
ἐἰδος: i.e. kind

μανθάνω: to learn, understand, 12
παρ-ἐρχομαι: to go pass, enter, 5
παύω: to stop, make cease, 6
πολυ-θρύλητος, -ον: much spoken of, well known, 1
πραγματεύομαι: busy oneself, take trouble, 2
σαφῆς, -ῆς: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
συγ-χωρεῖο: agree, yield, come together, 13
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18
ὑπο-τίθημι: to set up, suppose, propose, 4
ὡς: in this way, so, thus, 4

7 ὡς οὐκ ἀληθῆ (δοντα): on the grounds of not being true; i.e. as not true; ὡς + pple, expressed alleged cause
σαφέστερον: comparative adv.
λέγω: I mean
τὸν Δία: acc. sg. Ζεύς
b1 ἀλλὰ: well; as often, beginning a speech
(S 2784)
ἠ δ᾽ ὅς: see note on p. 9
οὐδὲν... nothing (is); add verb
2 παρεληλυθότι: past; pf. pple παρ-ἐχομαι
οὐδὲν: not at all; ‘made no ceasing,’ inner acc.
πέπαυμαι: pf. mid. + complementary pple
ἐἰδος: i.e. kind

πεπραγμάτευμαι: pf. mid.
ἐλιμ: fut. ἐρχομαι
ἐπὶ: to...; acc. place to which
5 ὑποθέμενος: aor. mid. pple ὑποτίθημι
ἐίναι: that there exists...
6 τι καλὸν: something beautiful
6 αὐτὸ κατ(α) (ἂ)αιτό: itself in itself
tαλλα: τὰ ἀλλα
7 ἄ: (things) which; (ταύτα) ἄ
dίδωσ: you grant; 2s pres.
8 ὡς ἀθάνατον (ἐστὶν) ψυχῆ: that a soul...; Plato often employs neuter predicates through the subject is masc. or fem.; supply a linking verb
ἤλλα μήν, ἐφη ὁ Κέβης, ώς διδόντος σοι οὐκ ἂν εἰς φθάνοις περαινών.

σκόπει δὴ, ἐφη, τὰς ἐκεῖνας εὰν σοι συνδοκῇ ὡσπερ ἐμοὶ. φαίνεται γάρ μοι, εἰ τί ἐστιν ἄλλο καλὸν πλὴν αὐτὸ τὸ καλὸν, οὐδέ δὲ ἐν ἄλλῳ καλὸν εἶναι ἡ διότι μετέχει ἐκεῖνοι τοῦ καλοῦ· καὶ πάντα δὴ οὕτως λέγω. τῇ τοιᾷδε αἰτίᾳ συγχωρεῖς; 

συγχωρώ, ἐφη.

οὐ τοίνυν, ἢ δ’ ὦς, ἐτί μενδάνω οὐδὲ δύναμαι τὰς ἄλλας αἰτίας τὰς σοφὰς ταῦτας γιγνώσκειν ἄλλ’ εὰν τίς μοι λέγῃ δὲ ὅτι καλὸν ἐστιν ὅτιον, ἥ χρώμα εὐανθῆς ἔχων ἡ σχήμα δὴ ἄλλο ὅτιον τῶν τοιοῦτων, τὰ μὲν ἄλλα χαίρειν ἐώς,
—ταράττομαι γὰρ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι—τούτῳ δὲ ἀπλῶς καὶ ἀτέχνως καὶ ἰσως εὐθέως ἔχω παρ’ ἐμαυτῷ, ὅτι οὐκ ἄλλο τι ποιεῖ αὐτὸ καλὸν ἢ ἢ ἐκεῖνον τοῦ καλοῦ ἐπεὶ παρουσίᾳ ἐπεὶ κοινωνίᾳ ἐπεὶ δὴ καὶ ὅπως ἡ προσγενομένῃ οὐ γὰρ ἔτι τούτῳ διαχρυσίζομαι, ἀλλ’ ὅτι τῷ καλῷ πάντα τὰ καλὰ [γύνεται] καλά. τοῦτο γὰρ μοι δοκεῖ ἀσφαλέστατον εἶναι καὶ ἐμαυτῷ ἀποκρίνασθαι καὶ ἄλλω, καὶ τούτου ἐχόμενος ἠγούμαι οὐκ ἂν ποτε πεσεῖ, ἀλλ’ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι καὶ ἐμοὶ καὶ ὅτι οὐκ ἄλλῳ ἀποκρίνασθαι ὅτι τῷ καλῷ τὰ καλὰ [γύνεται] καλὰ. ἢ οὐ καὶ σοὶ δοκεῖ; δοκεῖ.

καὶ μεγέθει ἄρα τὰ μεγάλα μεγάλα καὶ τὰ μείζων μείζων, καὶ σμικρότητι τὰ ἐλάττων ἐλάττων;

ἀ-σφαλῆς, -ές: safe, secure, not liable to fall  ἀ-τεχνώς: simply, absolutely, really  ἀπλῶς: singly, plainly, absolutely  ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply  δι-ισχυρίζομαι: affirm confidently; rely on  εἰ-τε: either…or; whether…or  εὖ-ήθης, -ες: foolish, simple-natured  ἰσος: perhaps, probably; equally, likely  κοινωνία, ᾗ: community, association  μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, height  ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that  ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that  ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that  παρ-ουσία, ᾗ: presence  πίπτω: to fall  προ-γήγορα: to come to be in addition  σμικρότης, -τητος, ᾗ: smallness  ταράττω: to trouble, stir, agitate, confuse  

α: among…; readers might prefer ‘by’ and a dat. of cause in this context  έξω: I hold  παρ(ά) εμαυτῶ: close to myself  δι(καιο) that…; in apposition to τοῦτο  ἄλλο τι: subject  ἐκεῖνον τοῦ καλοῦ: of that beautiful  δι(καιο) that…; in apposition to τοῦτο  ἐκεῖνον τοῦ καλοῦ: of that beautiful  ἐν ἂν...πεσεῖν: that I would fall short; partitive gen. is common with verbs of touching  τό καλὸν: because of the beautiful; ‘by…’  

μεγέθει: by…; dat. of cause  σμικρότητι: by…; dat. of cause  μείζων: μείζον(ν)α, neut. nom. pl.  ἐλάττων: ἐλαττσών(α), neut. nom. pl.
ναί.
oüδὲ σὺ ἀρ’ ἂν ἀποδέχου εἰ τίς των φαίη ἔτερον ἑτέρων
tῇ κεφαλῇ μείζω εἶναι, καὶ τόν ἐλάττω τῷ αὐτῷ τοῦτῳ ἐλάττω, ἀλλὰ διαμαρτύρομαι ἂν ὧτι σὺ μὲν οὐδὲν ἄλλο λέγεις
ἡ ὧτι τὸ μείζων πᾶν ἐτέρων ὦτερον οὐδεὶ ἄλλῳ μείζων ἐστὶν
ἡ μεγέθει, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο μείζων, διὰ τὸ μέγεθος, τὸ δὲ ἐλάττων οὐδεὶ ἄλλῳ ἐλάττων ἡ σμικρότητι, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἐλάττων,
diὰ τὴν σμικρότητα, φοβούμενος οἶμαι μὴ τίς σοὶ ἐναντίος λόγος ἀπαντήσῃ, ἐὰν τῇ κεφαλῇ μείζονα τών φης
ἐίναι καὶ ἐλάττω, πρώτων μὲν τῷ αὐτῷ τὸ μείζων μείζων εἶναι
καὶ τὸ ἐλάττων ἐλάττων, ἔπειτα τῇ κεφαλῇ σμικρᾶ ὄσῃ τόν
μείζων μείζω εἶναι, καὶ τοῦτο δὴ τέρας εἶναι, τὸ σμικρῷ των
μέγαν των εἶναι: ἡ οὖκ ἂν φοβοί ταῦτα;

ἀπο-αντάω: to encounter, meet with (dat.), 1
ἀπο-δέχομαι: to accept, receive, 9
dia-μαρτύρομαι: protest, insist; call gods and
men to witness, 1
κεφαλή, ἥ: the head, 6
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, height, 17

7 ἂν ἀποδέχοι(σ)ο: would…; 2s pres. mid.,
fut. less vivid condition
8 φαί: should claim; pres. opt.
ἐτέρον: than…; gen. of comparison
9 τῇ κεφαλῇ: by…; dat. of degree of
difference
μείζω: μείζω(ν)α, acc. sg. subject
τόν ἐλάττω (εἶναί): ἐλάττω(ν)α, acc. sg.
subject; supply inf.
τῷ αὐτῷ τοῦτῳ: by…; dat. of degree of
difference
101a1 διαμαρτύροι(σ)ο ἂν: you would
protest; parallel to ἀποδέχοι
2 τὸ μείζων πᾶν ἐτέρον: every greater thing
ἐτέρον: than…; gen. of comparison
οὐδεὶ ἄλλῳ: by…; dat. of degree of
difference
3 μεγέθει: by…; ‘because of…’ dat. of cause
μείζων: (it is) greater; add linking verb
diὰ τὸ μέγεθος: in apposition to diὰ τοῦτο

τῷ ἐλάττων...σμικρότητα: parallel to a2-3
5 διὰ τὴν σμικρότητα: in apposition to διὰ
tοῦτο in line 4
οἶμαι: οἴομαι, parenthetical
μὴ...ἀπαντήσῃ: that…; ‘lest’, fearing
clause; μὴ + subj. (3s aor.. pple)
6 τῇ κεφαλῇ: dat. of degree of difference
μείζονα...καὶ ἐλάττω: i.e. greater or
smaller; ἐλάττω(ν)α, both predicates of the
eἶναι, τῶν is acc. subject
7 τῷ αὐτῷ: by…; dat., degree of difference
8 σμικρᾶ ὄσῃ: σμικρᾶ is predicate of the sg.
ppe εἰμι
b1 καὶ...δὴ: and...indeed; emphasizing the
intervening word just as καὶ...γε
τῷ...εἶναι: articular inf. in apposition to
tοῦτο, τῶν is acc. subj.
σμικρῷ τῶν: dat. of cause
2 φοβοί(σ)ο: 2s see e7 above
déin toútou metasechín tâ melíltontâ duo èsesbhai, kai moundòs ò an mellh õn èsesbhai, tâs dè schísseis taútas kai prosseísseis kai tâs állass tâs toiautás koummeías èphis õn chaírein, pareis ápodkínasbhai tòis sеautòi sofwtérois: õu dè dédías õn, tò legeoménov, õn sèautòi skían kai õn ápeirián, èxòmenos èkeínon tòu ásphalów têis ùpobésewos, õútòs ápodkínai õn. eì dé tis áutís têis ùpobésewos èxouto, chaírein èphis õn kai óuk ápodkínai èwos õn tà õptè èkeínis õrmithènta skéfiau eì soi állassois súmfwnéi õì diaphonei èpeidh dé èkeíthis áutís déoì se didónoi lógon, ósasúntws õn didóihs, állass aì ùpobésein ùpobémenos õtis tòwn õnwbhein bêlitèstha fainóito, èwes èpì tì ikanòn elðois, áma dé óuk õn fúroio õsper oi è

áno-ðèv: from above, from on high, 2
á-peiðia, õì: inexperience, 1
áto-kivistóma: to answer, reply, 13
á-sphálokis, -ês: safe, secure, not liable to fall 6
bélístos, -nì, -ov: best, 14
dèdòw: fear, dread, shrink from, feel awe, 11
diaforén: to be in disharmony, disagree +dat 1
didóma: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
dé: to permit, allow, let be, suffer, 9
dèos: until, as long as, 15
koumeía, õì: subtleties, refinement, 1
mèlllos: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
met-èkho: to partake of, have share in (gen) 13

6 déin: that it is necessary...; following èxòis metasechín: aor. inf.; see p. 27
tà melâllonta...: things...; acc. subj.
èsebhai: fut. inf. éiûi
moundos (metasechín): add inf. to be parallel
7 õì: (that) which...; tòuto õì, acc. subj.
8 èphos õn chaírein: you should dismiss; opt., èwos chaírein, ‘allow...to say farewell’ is an idiom (see100d2), the verb is set in contrast to èxòis in 4
pareis: permitting; + dat. + inf., nom. sg.
aor. pple pare-ìmu
9 sèautou: gen. of comparison
dèdios: nom. sg. pf. pple òdèw
òw...òw: as the saying goes; ‘in
tò legeoménov: as the saying goes; ‘in respect to what is sai’ acc. respect

moundos, moundòs õì: unity, monad; solitary, 1
õrmá: to set in motion; set out, begin, 5
par-ìmu: to permit; let or allow pass, 1
proos-ðèias, õì: adding, addition, 3
sèautou (sèautou), õì, -ov: yourself, 4
séptomai: look at, examine, consider, 9
skia, õì: shadow, 1
sòforós, -nì, -ov: wise, skilled, 5
súm-foukén: be in harmony, agree (+dat.) 2
síchias, -èwos, õì: division, parting, cleavage, 4
ùpot-ðèias, -èwos, õì: hypothesis; proposal, 6
ùfó: to mix up, jumble up, 2
ùs-sautòs: in the same manner, just so, 4

d1 èxòmenos: clinging to...; + partitive gen.
tò õsphalów: the safety; õsphaléos, a substantive
ápodkínai(òs): 2s potential aor. opt.
el...èxouto, õìs õn: if...should lay hold of...you would; otherwise, ‘should attack’
edos õn...skefai(òs): indefinite temporal, assuming potential opt. of the main verb
tà...òrmythétta: things having arisen from that (hypothesis); i.e. consequences
èpeidh...èdeoì, õn didoïhs: when it should be necessary...; equiv. to a fut. less vivid
didóma lógon: to give an account
ùpotbímenos: by...; causal, aor. mid. pple
tòw õnwbhein: among those above
el elðoí: aor. opt. èrxousaî, indef. temporal
òv fúroï(òs): you would not jumble them
άντι-λογικός-όν: disputatious, contradictory; subst. disputed, 2
ἀρέσκω: to please, satisfy, appease (+ dat). 1
δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
εἰκότως: suitably, reasonably, fairly, 5
ἐν-στροφής: visible, distinct, manifest, 4
εὐρίσκω: to find, discover, devise, invent, 8
Zeús, ὁ: Zeus, 11
θαυμαστός, -ῆς: wonderful, marvelous, 11
ὑασ: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19
κυκάω: to stir up, throw into confusion, 1
νή: by…(+ acc, invoking a god ), 14
νοις, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
ὁμοίων: at the same place, together, 3
ὁμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
ὁμαίω: to set in motion; set out, begin, 5
σιμκρός, -άς, -όν: small, little, 19
σοφία, ἡ: wisdom, judgment, intelligence, 2
φιλό-σοφος, ὁ, ἡ: pursuer of wisdom, 18
φροντίς, -ίδος, ὁ: care, concern, thought, 1

2 τῆς ἄρχης: the beginning
 (/per) τῶν...ὁμοίων: pf. pass. ὁμάω, i.e.consequences, see c4
3 ἐκεῖνος: i.e. τῆς ἄρχης
βουλοί(ο): 2s pres. mid. opt.
τῶν ὄντων: of the things which are
4 ἐκεῖνοι: to those (there is)…; referring to the οἱ ἀντιλογικοί, a dat. of possession with missing linking verb
οὐδὲ εἷς...οὐδὲ (εἰς): not even one account and not even (one) concern
5 ἰκανο...ἀρέσκειν: for because of wisdom they (are) capable, (although) confusing everything together, nevertheless to be able to be pleased with themselves; ἰκανοί is a predicate, add a linking verb; ἀντιλογικοί think that they are wise but are not ὑπό...: because of...; gen. of cause ὁμοὶ...κυκαίντες: although...; pple is concessive in sense
6 αὐτοῖς: ἀυτοῖς ; reflexive
εἰ: 2s pres. εἰ
tῶν...ὁμοιων: among...; partitive gen.
102a1 οἷομαι: οἷομαι
ὡς...λέγω: just as...
3 Δία: Zeus; acc. sg.
θαυμαστός ὡς ἐναργῶς: how marvelously clearly...’ once, ‘(it is) marvelous how clearly’ the neut. predicate θαυμαστόν has assimilated to become an adv. before ὡς
4 μοί δοκεῖ: ἐκεῖνος is subject
tῶ...νοι ἔχοντι: to one having even little sense; dat. indirect object with ἔχειν
6 πάνυ μὲν οὖν: quite certainly indeed; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
7 τοῖς...παροῦσιν: dat. pl. pple πάρ-ειμι
ΦΑΙΔΩΝ 102a

Ε. καὶ γὰρ ἧμῖν τοῖς ἀπούσι, νῦν δὲ ἀκούονσιν. ἀλλὰ τίνα δὴ ἤν τὰ μετὰ ταύτα λεχέντα;

ΦΑΙΔ. ὡς μὲν ἐγὼ σομαι, ἐπεὶ αὐτῷ ταύτα συνεχωρήθη, καὶ ὁμολογεῖτο εἶναι τι ἔκαστον τῶν εἰδῶν καὶ τοῦτων τάλλα μεταλαμβάνοντα αὐτῶν τούτων τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν ἵσχεν, τὸ δὴ μετὰ ταύτα ἡρώτα, εἰ δὴ, ἢ δὲ ὅσ, ταύτα οὕτως λέγεις, ἢρ' οὐχ, ὅταν Σιμμίαν Ἵωκράτους φῆς μεῖζῳ εἶναι, Φαίδωνος δὲ ἐλάττω, λέγεις τὸτ' εἶναι ἐν τῷ Σιμμία ἀμφότερα, καὶ μέγεθος καὶ σμικρότητα;

ἐγὼγε. ἀλλὰ γὰρ, ἢ δὲ ὅσ, ὁμολογεῖς τὸ τῶν Σιμμίαν ὑπερέχειν Ὡκράτους οὐχ ὅσ τοῖς ῥήμασι λέγεται οὕτω καὶ τὸ ἀληθὲς ἔχειν; οὐ γὰρ που πεφυκέναι Σιμμίαν ὑπερέχειν τούτω, τῷ c

αμφότερος, -α, -ον: each of two, both, 5
ἐτ-εμι: to be away, absent, distant, 1
εἴδως, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἐπωνυμία, ἤ: a nickname, surname, 5
ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 10
ἴσω: to have, hold back, check, restrain, 3
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, height, 17
μεῖζων, μείζων: larger, greater, 26

μετα-λαμβάνω: take a share of, partake in 2
ῥήμα, -ατος, τό: word, phrase, saying, 1
σμικρότητις, -τοτος, ἢ: smallness, 10
συν-χωρέω: agree, yield, come together, 13
ὑπερ-ἐχο: exceed, hold over or above (gen) 8
φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14

8 καὶ γὰρ: and in fact...
τοῖς ἀπούσι...ἀκούονοιν: pres. participles ἀπ-εμι, ἀκούω
9 τα...Λεχέντα: aor. pass. pple λέγω
10 ὡς: as ...; parenthetical
συνεχωρήθη: 3s aor. pass. συνχωρέω
b1 εἶναι τι...εἴδον: that each of the forms is something; i.e. exist
τούτων: partitive gen. of the pple
b2 καὶ...τάλλα: and other things...; τά ἄλλα, acc. subject of ἵσχεν
αὐτῶν τούτων: from...; gen. of source i.e. from τῶν εἰδῶν
3 ἤρωτα: ἤρωτα-ε, 3s impf. ἐρωτάω
Socrates is subject
τὸ δὴ μετὰ ταύτα: the very thing after these
ἡ δὲ ὅς: see note on pg. 9
4 Σωκράτους: gen. of comparison
μεῖζω: μεῖζον(α), acc. sg. predicate

Φαίδωνος: gen. of comparison
5 ἐλάττω: ἐλάττω(α), acc. sg. predicate
6 μέγεθος: greatness; i.e. magnitude
8 ἀλλὰ γὰρ: and yet...; GP 102
τὸ τῶν Σιμμίαν ὑπερέχειν Ὡκράτους: in respect to Simmias’ exceeding Socrates; this articular inf. is an acc.of respect
οὐχ ὡς...λέγεται οὕτω...ἔχειν: that the truth in fact is not thus as it is said with (these) words; τὸ ἀλήθες is acc. subject, καὶ is adverbial, ἔχειν + οὕτως is ‘is thus’ (see p. 7), and οὕτως and ὃς are correlatives. τοῖς. ῥήμασι refers to Simmias’ overcoming Socrates

c1 οὐ γὰρ...(ὁμολογεῖς) πεφυκέναι...
ὑπερέχειν: for I suppose (you agree that) Simmias is not disposed by nature to exceed
τούτω: because of this; dat. of cause.
τῷ...έναι: (namely) because of...
Final Argument

Συμμίαν εἶναι, ἀλλὰ τῷ μεγέθει ὁ τυγχάνει ἔχων· οὐδ’ αὖ Ἀσκρατόους ὑπερέχειν ὅτι Ἀσκράτης ὁ Ἀσκράτης ἐστίν, ἀλλ’ ὅτι σμικρότητα ἔχει ὁ Ἀσκράτης πρὸς τὸ ἐκείνου μέγεθος; ἀληθῆ.

οὐδὲ γε αὖ ὑπὸ Φαίδωνος ὑπερέχεσθαι τῷ ὅτι Φαίδων ὁ Φαίδων ἐστίν, ἀλλ’ ὅτι μέγεθος ἔχει ὁ Φαίδων πρὸς τὴν Συμμίου σμικρότητα;

ἔσος οὖσιν ἔγεθος,

Σιμμίαν (Σ) τυγχάνει ὑπέρεχων, τῷ δὲ τὸ μέγεθος τῆς σμικρότητος παρέχων ὑπερέχων. καὶ ἀμα μειδιάσας, ἔοικα,

2 τῷ…ἐνναι: (namely) because of...; dat. of cause, in apposition to τοῦτῳ τῷ μεγέθει: i.e. greatness, dat. of cause τυγχάνει: + pple, see p. 20
3 (Συμμίαν) ὑπερέχειν: that...; supply acc. subject δὴ: because...
4 πρὸς: in relation to...in comparison to...
6 οὐδὲ γε: yes, but...not; (GP 156) compare 94a6
7 τῷ: because of this; demonstrative, dat. of (Συμμίαν) ὑπερέχεσθαι: (you agree) that Simmias is...; add acc. subject; ind. disc. governed by ὑπολογεῖν in b8
8 τῷ: because of this; demonstrative, cause δὴ: (namely) because...
9 ἔστι: are the case; i.e. are true
10 ἐπωνυμίαν: in (respect) to...; acc. respect ἔχει: is able
11 ὢν: pple εἰμί ἀμφοτέρως: i.e. Phaedo and Socrates τοῦ μὲν...τῷ δὲ: one...the other...; Phaedo and Socrates respectively; lines c11-d2 can be interpreted a number of ways
d1 τοῦ μὲν...μεγέθει...ὑπέχων: submitting his smallness to the largeness of one (i.e. Phaedo) to exceed; inf. of purpose (S 2008)
2 τῷ δὲ...ὑπερέχων: and providing to the other largeness exceeding his (i.e. Socrates’) smallness; neut. pple ὑπερέχω μειδιάσας: beginning to smile; inceptive aor., nom. sg. pple, compare 64a10, 101b3 ἔοικα: I seem, I look (as if) + inf.
εφη, καὶ συγγραφικῶς ἔρειν, ἀλλ’ οὖν ἔχει γε που ὡς λέγω. συνέφη.

λέγω δὴ τοῦτ’ ἑνεκα, βουλόμενος δόξαι σοι ὑπὲρ ἐμοί. ἐμὸν γὰρ φαίνεται οὐ μόνον αὐτὸ τὸ μέγεθος οὐδέποτε ἐθέλεν ἁμα μέγα καὶ σμικρὸν εἶναι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ ἐν ἦμιν μέγεθος οὐδέποτε προσδέχεσθαι τὸ σμικρὸν οὐδ’ ἐθέλειν ὑπέρέχεσθαι, ἀλλὰ δυνὸν τὸ ἔτερον, ἢ φεύγει καὶ ὑπεκχωρεῖν ὅταν αὐτῷ προσή τὸ ἐναντίον, τὸ σμικρὸν, ἢ προσελθόντος ἐκείνου ε ἀπολωλέναι: ὑπομένον δὲ καὶ δεξάμενον τὴν σμικρότητα οὐκ ἐθέλειν εἶναι ἔτερον ἢ ὑπὲρ ἦν. ὁσπερ ἐγὼ δεξαμενὸς καὶ ὑπομείνας τὴν σμικρότητα, καὶ ἔτι ὃν ὁσπερ εἰμί, οὕτος ὁ αὐτὸς σμικρὸς εἰμί: ἐκείνο δὲ οὐ τετολμηκεν μέγα δὲν

έθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἐνέκα: for (the sake of), because of, (gen.) 13
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, magnitude, height, 17
οὐδέποτε: not ever, never, 11
προσ-δέχομαι: to receive to, accept, admit, 1
προσ-έρχομαι: to come or go to, approach, 4
προσ-ήμι: send to, let come to, let approach 2
σμικρός, -ά, -ών: small, little, 19

2 ἐρείν: to be about to speak; fut. inf.
3 καὶ συγγραφικῶς: very much like a book; i.e. with great detail, καὶ acts as an intensive (S 2882, GP 319)
ἀλλὰ(ά) οὖν...γε: well, in all events...; γε emphasizes the preceding word; GP 443, S 2957, compare 100a3

ἐχει (οὐτως): it is (thus)
4 συνέφη: impf.; Cebes is subject
5 δὴ: of course; or ‘accordingly’ S 2841
δόξα: aor. inf. δοκέω
ὀπέρ: just as...; ‘the very thing (seemed good’)
6 οὐ μόνον...ἀλλὰ καὶ: not only...but also
ἐθέλειν: to tend, to strive, to be able; + inf. the meaning here is similar to δύναμαι; this verb is often used with inanimate objects
8 ἐθέλειν: is it able, does it tend; see l 6
9 δυοίν: dual partitive gen

σμικρότητας, -τητος, ἢ: smallness, 10
συγ-γραφικός, -ή, -όν: like a book, bookish 1
σῦμ-φημ: to agree, approve, 3
tολμάω: to dare, undertake, endure, 2
ὑπ-εκ-χορέω: to withdraw, move away, 4
ὑπέρ-ἐχω: to hold over or above, 8
ὑπο-μένω: to abide, endure, stay firm, 8
φεύγω: to flee, escape; defend in court, 10

τὸ ἔτερον: one
αὐτῷ: to it; i.e. to the ἐτερον, dat. of compound verb
ἐπὶ προσῆ: 3s pres. subj. προσέρχομαι in an indefinite temporal clause
προσελθόντος ἐκείνου: gen. abs., i.e. smallness

2 ἀπολαλέναι: pf. inf. ἀπόλλυμι, τὸ μέγεθος is the acc. subject
ὑπομένου δὲ: but abiding; i.e. τὸ μέγεθος
3 ἐθέλειν: is able, tends; see l 6
ἡν: 3s impf. εἰμί
ὃσπερ: in just this way
4 ὑπομείνας: transitive, nom. sg. aor. pple
ὁν: nom. sg. pple εἰμί
5 ἐκείνο: i.e. τὸ μέγεθος
οὐ τετολμηκεν: has not endured; pf. act.
μέγα δὲν: neuter acc. sg. pple εἰμί
σμικρὸν εἶναι. ὡς δ' αὐτῶς καὶ τὸ σμικρὸν τὸ ἐν ἡμῖν οὐκ ἑδέλει ποτὲ μέγα γίγνεσθαι οὐδὲ εἶναι, οὐδ' ἄλλο οὐδὲν τῶν ἐναντίων, ἐτι δὲ ὅπερ ἦν, ἀμα τούναντίον γίγνεσθαι τε καὶ εἶναι, ἀλλ' ἦτοι ἀπέρχεται ἥ ἀπολλυται ἐν τούτῳ τῷ παθήματι.

παντάπασιν, ἔφη ὁ Κέβης, οὕτω φαίνεται μοι.

καὶ τις εἶπε τῶν παρόντων ἀκούσας—ὅστις δ' ἦν, οὐ σαφῶς μέμημαι—πρὸς θεῶν, οὐκ ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν ἡμῖν λόγοις αὐτὸ τὸ ἐναντίον τῶν νυν λεγομένων ὁμολογεῖτο, ἐκ τοῦ ἑλάττων τὸ μείζον γίγνεσθαι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ μείζονος τὸ ἑλάττων, καὶ ἀτεχνῶς αὐτὴ εἶναι ἡ γένεσις τοῖς ἐναντίοις, ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων; νῦν δὲ μοι δοκεῖ λέγεσθαι ὧτι τοῦτο οὐκ ἂν ποτὲ γένοιτο.

---

6 ὡς δ(ἐ) αὐτῶς καὶ: and in the same way also; i.e. ὡς αὐτῶς
7 ἑδέλει: tends, is able, strives + inf. the meaning here is similar to that of δύναμιν ἄλλο οὐδὲν...ἐναντίων (ἐδέλει...εἶναι): nom. subj. supply verbs for parallelism
10 ἦτοι: now surely, truly, 4
15 μιμνήσκω: to remind, recall, recollect, 6
20 νῦν: just now, here now; as it is, 2
22 πάθημα, -ατος, τό: experience, suffering, 4
23 παντάπασι: all in all, absolutely 15
24 πρόσθεν: before, 10
28 σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16
30 σμικρός, -άς, -όν: small, little, 19
35 μέμημαι: pf. μιμνήσκω, present sense πρὸς θεῶν: By the gods! an exclamation ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν...λόγοις: in the previous conversation ἡμῖν: for us; dat. of interest οὐκ...ὁμολογεῖτο: was not...agreed upon? anticipating a yes response
37 (ὁμολογεῖτο) γίγνεσθαι...εἶναι: (was agreed) to...; supply verb from above
42 ἡ γένεσις τοῖς ἐναντίοις: coming-to-be for the opposites; dat. of possession τοῖς ἐναντίοις: past; pf. pple πέροχαι
47 ἂν...γένοιτο: could...; potential opt.
καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης παραβαλῶν τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ ἄκουσας, ἀνδρικῶς, ἐφή, ἀπεμνημόνευκας, οὐ μέντοι ἐννοεῖς τὸ διαφέρον τοῦ τε νῦν λεγομένου καὶ τοῦ τότε. τότε μὲν γὰρ ἐλέγετο ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου πράγματος τὸ ἐναντίον πράγμα γίγνεσθαι, νῦν δὲ, ὅτι αὐτὸ τὸ ἐναντίον έαυτῷ ἐναντίον οὐκ ἂν ποτε γένοιτο, οὔτε τὸ ἐν ἡμῖν οὔτε τὸ ἐν τῇ φύσει. τότε μὲν γὰρ, ὥ φιλε, περὶ τῶν ἔχοντων τὰ ἐναντία ἐλέγομεν, ἐπονομάζουσε αὐτὰ τῇ ἐκείσιν ἐπωνυμίᾳ, νῦν δὲ περὶ ἐκείνων αὐτῶν ὁ ἐνόντων ἔχει τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν τὰ ὅνομαζόμενα: αὐτὰ δ’ ἐκείνα οὐκ ἂν ποτε φαμεν ἐθελῆσαι γένεσιν ἀλλήλων δέξασθαι. καὶ ἁμα βλέψας πρὸς τὸν Κέβητα ἐπεν, ἄρα μῆ που, ὦ Κέβης, ἐφη, καὶ σὲ τι τοῦτων ἐτάραξεν ὃν ὦ δε ἐπεν;

ἀνδρικῶς: like a man, in a manly way, 1
ἀπο-μνημονεύω: recount, recall, 1
βλέπω: to look at, see, 3
gένεσις, -εως, ἡ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
dια-φέρω: to carry over; differ, surpass, 8
ev-eimai: to be in or within, 8
ev-noe: to have in mind, notice, consider, 18
ey-ονομάζω: to name after, 3

b1ἀνδρικῶς...ἀπεμνημόνευκας: 2s pf.
tο διαφέρον: the difference; 'the differing thing'
tο το τε νῦν λεγομένου καὶ τοῦ πότε (λεγομένου): between...; gen. of comparison with διαφέρον
ἐαυτῷ: to itself; dat. of special adjective, the following ἐναντίον, a predicate
ἄν...γένοιτο: could become; potential opt.
οὔτε τὸ ἐν ἡμῖν...φύσει: either that in us or that in nature; referring to τὸ ἐναντίον
τὸν ἔχοντων τὰ ἐναντία: things possessing the opposites
τῇ...ἐπωνυμίᾳ: by...; dat. of means
νῦν δὲ τερπ...ἐνόντων...ἀνομάζομεν: but now (we are talking) about those very

ἐπωνυμίᾳ, ἡ: a nickname, surname, 5
κεφαλή, ἡ: the head, 6
ὁνομάζω: to name, call by name, 6
παρα-βάλλω: to cast or put to one side, 1
πράγμα, -ατος τὸ: deed, act; matter, affair 18
tαράττω: to trouble, stir, agitate, 6
φιλος-η-ου: dear, friendly; noun friend, kin 8
φύσις, -εως, ἡ: nature, character; form, 11

things, of which, being in (them), the things named have the name; pple ἐν-ειμι
καὶ αὐτὰ δὲ ἐκείνα...δέξασθαι: we say that those very things would not ever tend to accept a coming-to-be from one another;
ἄν...ἐθελῆσαι, "would tend," aor, inf., in is equivalent to a potential opt. in direct disc. (see 102d6 for meaning), ἀλλήλων is a gen. of source
καὶ σὲ: you also, you too
tι τοῦτων: nom. subj.
ἄν... which; ἃ, acc. pl. relative pronoun attracted into the gen. of the antecedent τοῦτων; ὦ δε refers to Socrates
οὐδὲ αὖ, ἐφη ὁ Κέβης, οὖτως ἔχω· καίτοι οὖτι λέγω ὡς οὐ πολλά με ταράττει.

συνωμολογήκαμεν ἄρα, ἣ δ’ ὦς, ἀπλῶς τοῦτο, μηδέποτε ἐναντίον ἑαυτῷ τὸ ἑναντίον ἑσεθαί.

παντάπασιν, ἐφη.

ἐτί δὴ μοι καὶ τόδε σκέψαι, ἐφη, εἰ ἄρα συνωμολογήσεις.

θερμῶν τι καλεῖς καὶ ψυχρῶν;

ἔγωγε.

ἀρ’ ὅπερ χιόνα καὶ πῦρ;

μὰ Δί ἵνα ἐγώγε.

ἄλλ’ ἐτερόν τι πυρὸς τὸ θερμῶν καὶ ἐτερόν τι χιόνος τὸ ψυχρῶν;

ἀπλῶς: singly, plainly, absolutely, 2
Zeús, ὁ: Zeus, 11
θερμῶς, -ῆ, -όν: hot, warm; subst. heat, 11
καίτοι: and yet, and indeed, and further, 8
μά: by...(in oaths, ), 3
μηδέποτε: not ever, never, 8
οὖ-τις, οὖ-τι: no one, not a thing, nothing, 1

5 αὖ: again; i.e. not as before
οὖτως ἔχω: see p. 7
οὖτι: not at all; inner acc.
6 ὡς: that…; neut. pl. πολλά is subject
7 συνωμολογήκαμεν: pf.
ἡ δ’ ὦς: see note on pg. 9
μηδέποτε...ἔσεθα: that…; in apposition to τοῦτο, fut. inf. εἰμί
10 ἐτί δὴ: still then…; δὴ is inferential
μου: please; ‘for me,’ an ethical dative (S

παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
πῦρ, πυρός, τὸ: fire, 14
σκέπτομαι: look at, examine, consider, 9
συν-ομολογέω: to agree with, say the same, 4
ταράττω: to trouble, stir, agitate, 6
χιῶν, χιόνος, ἥ: snow, 7
ψυχρός, -ά, -όν: cold, chill, frigid, 10

486)
σκέπα: aor. mid. sg. imperative
11 καλεῖς: you call (x) (y); governs a double acc.
13 ἄρ(α) ὅπερ (καλεῖς): the very thing which (you call) …? or ‘just as…’ supply verb
1486)
d1 Δί(α): Zeus; acc. sg.
2 πυρός, χιόντος: from…. both are gen. of comparison following ἑτερον, ‘different’
ναί.

ἀλλὰ τόδε γ’ οἷμαι δοκεῖ σοι, οὐδέποτε χιόνα γ’ οὖσαν δεξαμένην τὸ θερμὸν, ἀσπερ ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν ἔλεγομεν, ἐτι ἐσεσθαι ὧπερ ἦν, χιόνα καὶ θερμὸν, ἀλλὰ προσιόντος τοῦ θερμοῦ ἢ υπεκχωρήσεως αὐτῷ ἢ ἀπολείσθαι.

πάνυ γε.

καὶ τὸ πῦρ γε αὐτό προσιόντος τοῦ ψυχροῦ αὐτῷ ἢ υπεξιέναι ἢ ἀπολείσθαι, οὐ μέντοι ποτὲ τολμήσειν δεξάμενον τὴν ψυχρότητα ἐτι ἐίναι ὧπερ ἦν, πῦρ καὶ ψυχρόν.

ἀληθῆ, ἑφθανεῖ, λέγεις.

ἔστην ἡ ἡ δ’ ὁς, περὶ ἐνία τῶν τοιούτων, ὡστε μὴ μόνον αὐτὸ τὸ εἴδος ἄξιοῦσθαι τοῦ αὐτοῦ ὀνόματος εἰς τὸν

---

άξιόω: to think worthy of, deem right (gen) 3
εἴδος, -eos, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
οἷμαι, -ai, -a: some, 7
θερμὸς, -ῆς, -ῶν: hot, warm; subst. heat, 11
ναί: yes, yea, 15
δόμοι, -atos, τό: name, 7
οὐδέποτε: not ever, never, 11
προσ-ἐρχομαι: to come or go to, approach, 4

5 ἀλλὰ...γε: but this...; or ‘well,’ γε emphasizes the preceding noun
οἷμαι: οἷμαι, parenthetical
οὐδέποτε...θερμῶν: (namely) that snow, (while) being (snow), (after) accepting heat—just as we said in the previous conversation —will not longer be the very thing it was; γε + pple suggests that the main clause is valid only insofar as the participle is value (GP 143)
7 χιόνα καὶ θερμῶν: in apposition
προσιόντος...θερμῶν: gen. abs., pple προσέρχομαι
8 ὑπεκχωρήσειν, ἀπολείσθαι: χιόνα is acc. subject; both fut. infs. ἀπόλλυμι
9 πάνυ γε: quite so, quite indeed

πρόσθεν: before, 10
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 14
τολμάω: to dare, undertake, endure, 2
ὑπ-ἐκ-χωρέω: to withdraw, 4
ὑπ-ἐξ-ἐρχομαι: to withdraw gradually, 2
χιῶν, χιόνος, ἢ: snow, 7
ψυχρός, -άς, -όν: cold, chill, frigid, 10
ψυχρότης, ὁ: coldness, cold, 1

10 καὶ...γε: and...; always emphasizing the intervening words
προσιόντος...ψυχροῦ: gen. abs.
αὐτῶ: dat. of compound in the gen. abs.
11 ὑπεξιέναι...τολμήσειν...ἐνναί: supply verb δοκεῖ σοι and acc. subj. τὸ πῦρ from a bove; fut. ὑπεξέρχομαι
δεξάμενον: (after) accepting...; modifies missing τὸ πῦρ, parallel to lines 5-7
e2 ἔστην ἡ...: it is the case then...
ὡστε...: so that...; acc. + inf., result clause
μὴ μόνον...ἀλλὰ καὶ: not only...but also
3 ἄξιοῦσθαι: is thought worthy of; or ‘is deemed worthy of...’ + gen.
αὐτῶ: reflexive (ἐστιν...)
eἰς τὸν ἂν χρόνον: for everylasting time

---

ΦΑΙΔΩΝ 103d

173
Socrates will frequently say, Another philosophical vocabulary, 4, δὲ τὴν ἑκείνοιν μορφὴν ἀεὶ, ὅτανπερ ἥ. ἐτί δὲ ἐν τῶδε ἰσως ἔσται σαφέστερον ὁ λέγω· τὸ γὰρ περιττὸν ἀεὶ ποιν ἐμντου τοῦ ὀνόματος τυγχάνειν ὅπερ νῦν λέγομεν· ἥ οὐ; πάνυ γε.

ἀρα μὸνον τῶν ὄντων—τοῦτο γὰρ ἑρωτῶ—ἡ καὶ ἀλλο

5 τὶ δ ἐστι μὲν οὐκ ὅπερ τὸ περιττόν, ὃμως δὲ δεὶ αὐτὸ μετὰ τοῦ ἔαυτοῦ ὀνόματος καὶ τοῦτο καλεῖν ἀεὶ διὰ τὸ οὕτω πεφυκέναι ὡσε τοῦ περιττοῦ μηδέποτε ἀπολειπέσθαι; λέγω δὲ αὐτὸ ἐλαι οἶνον καὶ ἡ τριάς πέπονθε καὶ ἀλλα πολλὰ.

δότανπερ: whenever, 2

104 περιττὸς—ἡ—ὄν: odd, remarkable, 15

προσ-αγορευτέας, -α, -α: to be called, 1

σαφῆς, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16

τριάς, τριάδος: three, triad, 7

φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14

4 ἀλλὰ καὶ: but also...

ἐπό-λειπω: leave behind, abandon, forsake, 7

ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 10

 Decrypt: perhaps, probably; equally, likely, 19

μηδέ-ποτε: not ever, never, 8

οὐδε-ποτε: never, never, 8

μορφή, ἡ: form, shape, 2

δὲ: and furthermore, and in addition

ἡ: it exists

ἂν: pres. subj. eιμι in an indefinite temporal clause

ἐπὶ δὲ: and furthermore, and in addition

ἐν τῶδε: in the following; ‘in this here’

6 ἔσται: it...; impersonal, fut. eιμι

7 τυγχάνειν: + partitive gen., see p. 20

8 πάνυ γε: quite so, quite indeed; affirmative

9 μόνον τῶν ὄντων (δὲ...όνοματος)

τυγχάνειν: (is it necessary that) this alone of the things which are (always attains this name)...; supply clause from above

καὶ...: (is there) also...

104a1 ὅπερ (ἐστὶν)...: the very thing which

...(is); add linking verb

καὶ: to call it this also; double acc., αὐτό refers to ἀλλο τι, ότοδο

τοῦ περιττοῦ: from...; gen. of separation

οἶνον: the sort which...

πέπονθε: 3s pf. πάσχω

5 σκόπειν: σκόπε-ει; sg. imperative

6 περιττοῦ: they must be

7 ἀτε: ἀτε-τε; sg. imperative

8...ὀνοματι: by...; dat. of means

ἀτε: ἀτε-τε; sg. imperative

9 τῷ: τῷ...ὀνοματι: τοῦ...περιττοῦ: by...; means

Philosophical Vocabulary: τὸ περιττὸν the odd (oddness) τὸ ἀρτιν the even (evenness)

Another everyday word that Plato employs in a technical sense is δέχομαι (‘accept,’ ‘admit’). Socrates will frequently say, for example, that three accepts, δέχεται, the form of the odd but does not accept, δέχεται, the even. This usage starts in 102d8 and continues in what follows.
οὐχ ὀπερ τῆς τριάδος; ἀλλ' ὀμως οὖτως πέφυκε καὶ ἡ τριάς καὶ ἡ πεμπτάς καὶ ὁ ἰμμωσ τοῦ ἀριθμοῦ ἄπας, ὡστε οὐκ ἂν ὀπερ τὸ περιττὸν ἂε ἐκαστὸς αὐτῶν ἐστὶ περιττός· καὶ αὖ τὰ δῦο καὶ τὰ τέτταρα καὶ ἄπας ὁ ἐτερος αὐτὸς τοῦ ἀριθμοῦ οὐκ ἂν ὀπερ τὸ ἄριστον ὀμως ἐκαστὸς αὐτῶν ἄρτιός ἐστιν ἂεί· συγχωρεῖς ἡ οὐ; πῶς γὰρ οὐκ; ἐφῇ.

ὁ τοινυν, ἐφῃ, βούλομαι δηλώσαι, ἄθρει. ἔστων δὲ τόδε, ὅτι φαίνεται οὐ μόνον ἐκεῖνα τὰ ἐναντία ἄλλως οὐ δεχόμενα, ἀλλά καὶ ὅσα οὐκ ὄντ' ἄλληλοις ἐναντία ἔχει ἂεὶ τάναντια, οὐδὲ ταύτα έοικε δεχομένοις ἐκείνην τῷ ἰδέαν ὃ ἂν τῇ ἐν αὐτῶς οὔῃ ἐναντία ἦ, ἀλλ' ἐπισύνης αὐτῆς ἦτοι

ἀθρέω: to gaze at, observe, 1
ἀπασ, ἀπασα, ἀπαν: every, quite all, 14
ἀριθμος, ὁ: number, amount, quantity, 3
ἀρτιος, -α, -ον: even; exactly fitted, proper, 14
δηλω: to make clear, show, reveal, 3
ἐπ-έρχομαι: to come upon, approach, 8
ἐμισω, -εια, -υ: half, 5
ἔτος: now surely, truly, 4
ἰδεα, ἡ: idea, character; appearance, form, 8

7 ὄντος οὐχ ὀπερ τῆς τριάδος: (although) not being what three is; one expects ὀπερ ἐστι ἡ τριάς; nom. is attracted into the gen. πέφυκε: is naturely; pf. φύω
οὐτως...οὕτως: ...that; correlatives
b1 οὐκ ὄντως ὀπερ (ἐστι) τὸ περιττόν: although not being...; concessive; see a7 above
2 τὰ δύο, τὰ τέτταρα: two, four; as often, do not translate with the article
3 οὐκ ὄντως ὀπερ (ἐστι) τὸ ἄρτιον: see b1
5 πῶς γὰρ οὖ: how could (I) not?; ‘yes for how not?’ γὰρ offer assent
6 δ: (that) which...; missing antecedent is object of ἄθρει
ἄθρει: ἄθρε-ε, sg. imperative
7 ὅτι: (namely) that...
οὐ μόνον...ἀλλὰ καὶ: not only...but also

8 δεχόμενα: accepting, admitting, άλληλα is an object
οὐκ δυτι(α)...ἐναντία: although...; pple εἰμι in concessive in sense
ἔχει: i.e. contain
τάναντια: τα ἐναντία
9 οὐδὲ...τὴν ἰδέαν: nor are these like (those) accepting that form
ἡ ἄν...ἐναντία ἦ: whichever is...; ἄν + 3s subj. εἰμι in an indefinite relative clause
τῇ...οὕθη: i.e. τῇ ἰδέα; pple. εἰμι
10 ἐπισύνης αὐτῆς: (when) it is approaching; gen. abs.
ἣτοι...: either, you know,...or...; ήτοι opens a disjunction where the first choice is more probable (GP 553)
c ἀπολλύμενα ἡ ὑπεκχωροῦντα. ἡ οὖ φήσομεν τὰ τρία καὶ ἀπολείσθαι πρότερον καὶ ἄλλο ὅτι οὖν πείσεσθαι, πρὶν ὑπομέναι ἐτί τρία ὅτα ἀρτία γενέσθαι;

πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἐφη ὁ Κέβης.

5 οὖδὲ μὴν, ἢ δὲ ὅσ, ἐναντίον γε ἐστι δυάς τριάδι.

οὐ γὰρ οὖν.

οὐκ ἂρα μόνον τὰ εἴδη τὰ ἑναντία οὐχ ὑπομένει ἐπιόντα ἄλληλα, ἀλλά καὶ άλλ᾽ ἀττά τὰ ἑναντία οὐχ ὑπομένει ἐπιόντα.

10 ἀληθεύομεν, ἐφη, λέγεις.

βούλει οὖν, ἢ δ᾽ ὅσ, εἰάν οἰοί τ᾽ ὀμὲν, ὀρισώμεθα ὑποία ταύτα ἑστιν;

---

ἀπο-λέιπω: leave behind, abandon, forsake, 7
ἀρτίος, -α, -ον: even; exactly fitted, proper, 14
εἰδος, -ης, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἐπ-ἐρχομαι: to come upon, approach, 8
dυάς, δυάδος, ἡ: two; pair, dyad, 3
ὀποίος, -α, -ον: of what sort or kind, 2

1 οὖ φήσομεν: or will we not agree that…;

καλ'...καλ': both…and
2 ἀπολείσθαι: fut. ἀπόλλυμι
πρότερον: adverbial acc.
πείσεσθαι: fut. πάσχειν
ὑπομέναι...γενέσθαι: abide to become;; aor. inf. ὑπομένω + complementary inf.
3 ἐπὶ τριά διόντα: while…; circumstantial pple
4 πάνυ μὲν οὖν: quite certainly indeed; μὲν οὖν is a strong assent
5 οὖδὲ μὴν: and certainly…not
6 οὖ δ᾽ ὅσ: see note on p. 9
ἐναντίον γε: the predicate governs a dat. of special adj., δύσει is subject
6 οὖ γὰρ οὖν: for in fact it is not; (S 2958)

---

δρίζω: to define, mark out, limit, 3
δοσιο-οῦν, ἠτιοουν, δτι-οῦν: whosoever, 11
τριάς, τριάδος, ἡ: three, triad, 7
ὑ-εκ-χορέω: to withdraw, 4
ὑπο-μένω: to abide, stay firm; endure, 8

7 οὐκ...μόνον...ἄλλα καὶ: not only…but also τὰ εἴδη τὰ ἑναντία: opposite forms ὑπομενεὶ ἐπιόντα: abide…; ὑπομένω
governs a complementary pple here or, as in c2, a complementary inf.; ἐπέρχομαι
tὰ ἑναντία: acc. object, ἄλλ(α) ἄττα is subject (ἀττα is neuter pl. of τις)

11 βούλει...ὁρισώμεθα: do you wish to define; 2s mid. βούλομαι often accompanies a deliberative subj., here aor., conflating two questions: ‘what do you want?’ and ‘are we to define…?’; see 70b6, 79a6

οἶος τε ὄμεν: οἶος τε εἰμι, ‘I am the sort to’ is a common idiom for ‘I am able’; here with 1p pres. subj. εἰμι
πάνυ γε.

ἀρ’ οὖν, ἔφη, ὁ Κέβης, τάδε εἶ ἂν, ἃ στὶ ἂν κατάσχῃ  
μὴ μόνον ἀναγκάζει τὴν αὐτοῦ ἰδέαν αὐτὸ ἰσχεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ  
ἐναντίον αὐτῶ ἄει τινος;

πῶς λέγεις;

ἀσπερ ἄρτι ἐλέγομεν. οἴσθα γὰρ δῆπον ὅτι ἃ ἂν ἡ τῶν  
τριῶν ἰδέα κατάσχῃ, ἀνάγκη αὐτοῖς οὐ μόνον τρισὶν ἐἶναι  
ἀλλὰ καὶ περιττοῖς.

πάνυ γε.

ἐπὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον δή, φαμέν, ἡ ἑναντία ἰδέα ἐκείνη τῇ  
μορφῇ ἢ ἂν τοῦτο ἀπεργάζηται οὐδέποτ’ ἂν ἔλθοι.

οὐ γάρ.

eἰργάζετο δὲ γε ἢ περιττή;
ναί.
ἐναντία δὲ ταύτη ἡ τοῦ ἁρτίου;

ναί.

e ἐπὶ τὰ τρία ἄρα ἡ τοῦ ἁρτίου ἰδέα οὐδέποτε ἤξει.
οὐ δῆτα.
ἀμοιρά δὴ τοῦ ἁρτίου τὰ τρία.
ἀμοιρά.

5 ἀνάρτιος ἄρα ἡ τριάς.

ναί.

ὁ τοίνυν ἔλεγον ὁρίσασθαι, ποῖα οὐκ ἐναντία τινὶ ὑντα ὁμως οὐ δέχεται αὐτὸ, τὸ ἐναντίον—οἷον νῦν ἡ τριάς τῷ ἁρτίῳ οὐκ οὔσα ἐναντία οὐδὲν τι μᾶλλον αὐτὸ δέχεται, τὸ

---

十九大：无分有份

ἁ-μοιρος, -ου: without a share in (gen.), 3
ἁν-ἁρτιος, -ου: uneven, 4
ἁρτιος, -α, -ου: even; exactly fitted, proper, 14
δῆτα: certainly, to be sure, of course, 5
ἡκω: to have come, be present, 14
ἠδέα, ἡ: idea, character; appearance, form, 8

14 ἐναντία δὲ ταύτη (μορφῇ) ἡ τοῦ ἁρτίου
(ἰδέα ἐστι): supply a linking verb and fem. nouns understood from d9-10
εἰ ἐπὶ...: to...
ἡξε: fut. ἡκω 3
ἀμοιρα ἐστί: predicate, supply a linking verb; δη is inferential: ‘then’
7 δ...ἔλεγον ὁρίσασθαι: as for what I said to define; ‘in respect to (that) which…’ acc. of respect, see 104c12 (βουλι...ὁρισόμεθα ὁποῖα ταύτα ἐστιν;)
ποία: what things…; subject of 3s verb
ἐναντία τινὶ δυνα: predicate and pple εἰμί

ναί: yes, yea, 15
ὁμως: nevertheless, however, yet, 13
ὁρίζω: to define, mark out, limit, 3
οὐδέποτε: not ever, never, 11
τρεῖς, τρία: three, 9
τριάς, τριάδος, ἡ: three, triad, 7
ναί: yes, yea, 15
τινὶ: to something; indefinite
8 δέχεται: see box on p. 174
τὸ ἐναντίον: in apposition to αὐτό, the object of δέχεται
οἷον: for example; ‘in respect to such,’ acc. of respect
τῷ ἁρτίῳ...οὔσα ἐναντία: although…; the pple is concessive in sense
9 οὐδὲν τι μᾶλλον: not at all; acc. of extent by degree
αὐτό: i.e. τὸ ἁρτίον

---

178
γὰρ ἐναντίον αὖ ἀυτῷ ἐπιφέρει, καὶ ἡ δύνας τῷ περίττῳ καὶ
tὸ πῦρ τῷ πυρῷ καὶ ἄλλα πάμπολλα-ἀλλ' ὅρα δὴ εἰ
οὕτως ὀρίζῃ, μὴ μονὸν τὸ ἐναντίον τὸ ἐναντίον μὴ δέχεσθαι,
ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκεῖνο, δὲ ἂν ἐπιφέρη τι ἐναντίον ἐκεῖνῳ, ἐξ' ὦτι
ἀν αὐτὸ ἢ, αὐτῷ τὸ ἐπιφέρον τὴν τοῦ ἐπιφερομένου ἐναντιότητα
μηδέποτε δέξασθαι. πάλιν δὲ ἀναμμηνήσκοι οὐ
gὰρ χείρον πολλάκις ἀκούειν. τὰ πέντε τὴν τοῦ ἀρτίου
οὐ δέξαται, οὐδὲ τὰ δέκα τὴν τοῦ περίττου, τὸ διπλάσιον.
tοῦτο μὲν οὖν καὶ αὐτὸ ἄλλω ἐναντίον, ὄμως δὲ τὴν
tοῦ περίττου οὐ δέξαται· οὐδὲ δὴ τὸ ἡμόλυκον οὐδὲ τὰλλα
τὰ τοιαῦτα, τὸ ἡμίον, τὴν τοῦ ὅλου, καὶ τριτήμοριον αὐ
cαὶ πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα, ἐπερ ἐπη τε καὶ συνδοκεῖ σοι οὕτως.

干部职工: remind, recall (acc. gen.)
ἀρτίος, -αρτίους: even; exactly fitted, proper
δέκα: ten
διπλάσιος, -αρτίους: double, two-fold
δύνας, δυνάμεις: two; pair, dyad
ἐναντιότητα: opposite (ness) contrariety
ἐπι-φέροι: to carry up; attack, rush on
ἐπιμοιάζει: to follow, accompany, escort
ἡμι-διπλάς, -ημι-διπλάς: one and a half
ἡμίσες, -εία, -υ: one-half
μηδέποτε: not ever, never
ὅμως: nevertheless, however, yet
ὀρίζω: to define, mark out, limit
πάμ-πολλα, -πολλάς, -πολλὴ: very many
πέντε: five
περίττος: odd, remarkable
πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently
πῦρ, πυρός: fire
συν-διπλάζει: to seem good also
τριτ-ημιοριος, -οντος: a third part, a third
χείρων, -οντος, -ουτος: worse, inferior, 5
gρυός, -άρχει, -όντος, -οντος: cold, chill, frigid

οὐ χείρον (ἐστίν): we may as well; litotes,
"it is not bad" + inf.

τὴν (ἰδέαν): the character

τὸ διπλάσιον: in apposition to τὰ δέκα

τὸῦτο... (ἐστὶν)... ἄλλο ἐναντίον: then, this (the double) is itself also opposite to
something else; τὸῦτο refers to διπλάσιον
tὴν (ἰδέαν): the character

οὐδὲ δὲ...: then neither one-and-a-half nor
other such things, the half, (accept)
the (character) of the whole and again one-
third and all such other things; i.e. mixed
fractions

ἐπιμοιάζει: you follow (me); i.e. you understand
me; ἐπιμαινομαι, 2s pres. mid. ἐπιμαινομαι
πάνυ σφόδρα καὶ συνδοκεῖ, ἔφη, καὶ ἔπομαι.

5 ἐπὴ δὴ μοι, ἔφη, ἐξ ἀρχῆς λέγε. καὶ μὴ μοι ὃ ἂν ἐρωτῶ ἀποκρίνου, ἄλλα μιμούμενος ἔμε. λέγω δὴ παρ᾽ ἦν τὸ πρῶτον ἐλεγον ἀπόκρισιν, τὴν ἀσφαλῆ ἔκεινην, ἐκ τῶν νῦν λεγομένων ἀλλην ὁρῶν ἀσφάλειαν. εἰ γὰρ ἔρωτοι με ὃ ἂν τί ἐν τῷ σῶματι ἐγγένηται θερμὸν ἔσται, οὐ τὴν ἀσφαλῆ σοι ἐρῶ ἀπόκρισιν ἔκεινην τὴν ἀμαθῆ, ὃτι ὃ ἂν θερμότης, ἄλλα κομψοτέραν ἐκ τῶν νῦν, ὅτι ὃ ἂν πῦρ′ οὐδὲ ἐν ἔρη ὃ ἂν σῶματι τί ἐγγένηται νοσήσει, οὐκ ἐρῶ ὅτι ὃ ἂν νόσος, ἄλλο ὃ ἂν πυρετὸς· οὐδὲ ὃ ἂν ἀριθμῷ τί ἐγγένηται περιττῶς ἔσται, οὐκ ἐρῶ ὃ ἂν περιττότης, ἄλλο ὃ ἂν μονᾶς, καὶ ἄλλα οὔτως. ἄλλα ὁρὰ εἰ ἤδη ἰκάνως οἶσθ᾽ ὅτι βούλομαι.

4 ἐπομαι: i.e. understand

5 ἐπομαι: to answer, reply, 13

6 ἄμαθῆς, ὑπερβάλλω: to answer, reply, 4

7 ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning; rule, office, 8

8 ἂν...ἀρχηγεῖναι...ἐσται: what (τι), in whichever (part) in the body (it) comes to be, will be hot; confusing word order: indirect question (τι...θερμὸν ἔσται) with an indefinite relative modifying τι

9 ἐν...ἐπομαι: to answer, reply, 13

10 ἀμαθῆς, -ης: unlearned, ignorant, stupid, 1

11 ἀρχηγεῖν: to answer, reply, 4

12 ἀρχή, ἡ: a beginning; rule, office, 8

13 ἄμαθῆς, ὅτι ἂν θερμότης, ἄλλα κομψοτέραν ἐκ τῶν νῦν, ὅτι ὃ ἂν πῦρ′ οὐδὲ ἐν ἔρη ὃ ἂν σῶματι τί ἐγγένηται νοσήσει, οὐκ ἐρῶ ὅτι ὃ ἂν νόσος, ἄλλο ὃ ἂν πυρετὸς· οὐδὲ ὃ ἂν ἀριθμῷ τί ἐγγένηται περιττῶς ἔσται, οὐκ ἐρῶ ὃ ἂν περιττότης, ἄλλο ὃ ἂν μονᾶς, καὶ ἄλλα οὔτως. ἄλλα ὁρὰ εἰ ἤδη ἰκάνως οἶσθ᾽ ὅτι βούλομαι.

14 ἐπομαι: i.e. understand

15 ἀρχηγεῖν: to answer, reply, 4

16 ἀμαθῆς, ὅτι ἂν θερμότης, ἄλλα κομψοτέραν ἐκ τῶν νῦν, ὅτι ὃ ἂν πῦρ′ οὐδὲ ἐν ἔρη ὃ ἂν σῶματι τί ἐγγένηται νοσήσει, οὐκ ἐρῶ ὅτι ὃ ἂν νόσος, ἄλλο ὃ ἂν πυρετὸς· οὐδὲ ὃ ἂν ἀριθμῷ τί ἐγγένηται περιττῶς ἔσται, οὐκ ἐρῶ ὃ ἂν περιττότης, ἄλλο ὃ ἂν μονᾶς, καὶ ἄλλα οὔτως. ἄλλα ὁρὰ εἰ ἤδη ἰκάνως οἶσθ᾽ ὅτι βούλομαι.

180
ἀλλὰ πάνυ ἰκανῶς, ἐφη.

ἀποκρίνου δὴ, ἦ δ᾽ ὦς, ὧ δὲν τί ἐγγένηται σώματι ζῶν ἐσται;

ὡ ὀν ψυχή, ἐφη.

οὐκοῦν ἄρει τούτῳ οὕτως ἔχει;

πῶς γὰρ οὐχὶ; ἦ δ᾽ ὦς.

ψυχῇ ἄρα ὅτι ἄν αὐτῇ κατάσχῃ, ἂν ἥκει ἐπ᾽ ἐκείνῳ φέρουσα ζωήν;

ἡκεὶ μέντοι, ἐφη.

πότερον δ᾽ ἐστι τὶ ζωῆ ἐναντίον ἦ οὐδὲν;

ἔστιν, ἐφη.

τί;

θάνατος.

ἀποκρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 13
ἐγ-γίγνομαι: to be inborn, innate; impers. to be possible, 6

8 ἀλλὰ πάνυ ἰκανῶς: well, quite... (GP 19)
9 ἀποκρίνε(σ)ο: 2s mid. imperative
δή: just, now

ἢ δ᾽ ὦς: see note on pg. 9

ὡ ὀν...ἐγγένηται...ἐσται: what (τί), in whichever (part) in the body (it) comes to be, will be living; confusing word order: indirect question (τί...ζῶν ἐσται) with an indefinite relative modifying τί; see c9

11 ὧ ὀν ψυχῇ (ἐγγένητα): in whichever the

ζωῆ, ἦ: living, way of life, 5

ἑκω: to have come, be present, 14
κατ-ἔχω: to hold fast, possess, grasp, 5

soul comes to be
d1 οὕτως ἔχει: see p. 7
2 πῶς γὰρ οὐχὶ: how could (it) not?; ‘yes for how not?’ γὰρ offers assent
3 ὧ τὶ ἄν...κατάσχη: whatever (the soul itself) possesses; aor. subj. κατέχω ἐπὶ ἐκείνῳ: to that one; neut. sg. referring to ὧ τὶ...κατάσχη
5 μέντοι: certainly; affirmative
6 ζωῆ: dat. sg. with special adj. ἐναντίον
10 ὁὐκοῦν ψυχή τὸ ἑναντίον ὁι αὐτῇ ἐπιφέρει ἀεὶ οὐ μὴ ποτὲ δέχηται, ὡς ἐκ τῶν πρόσθεν ὠμολογηταί;
καὶ μάλα σφόδρα, ἐφη ὁ Κέβης.
τὶ οὖν; τὸ μὴ δεχόμενον τὴν τοῦ ἄρτιον ἰδέαν τὶ νυνὶ ὧνομάζομεν;

15 ἀνάρτιον, ἐφη.
τὸ δὲ δίκαιον μὴ δεχόμενον καὶ ὁ ἄν μονικόν μὴ δέχηται;

16 ἐδὲ ὡς ἤ τὸ καλοῦμεν; ἐδὲ ἄν τὸν καλοῦμεν ἵνα δέχηται τι καλοῦμεν;

5 οὖ.
ἀδάνατον ἀρα ψυχή.

---

ἀ-δικος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust, 6
ἀ-μουσος, -ον: unmusical, unrefined, rude, 1
ἀν-ἄρτιος, -ον: uneven, not even, 4
ἄρτιος, -α, -ον: even; exactly fitted, proper, 14
δικαιος, -α, -ον: just, right(eous), fair, 13
ἐπι-φέρω: to carry upon; attack, rush on, 6
ἴδεα, ἡ: idea, character; appearance, form, 8
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
μουσικός -η -ον: musical, educated, cultured, 1
νυν-δη: just now, 15
ὀνομάζω: to name, call by name, 6
πρόσθεν: before, 10
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, 18

τί: what...?; interrogative, also acc. obj.
δ...δέχομεν: the thing not accepting...; supply τὶ νυνὶ ὧνομάζομεν
δ...δέχηται: whatever...; ‘the thing which...’
indefinite relative clause (ἀν + subj); add τὶ νυνὶ ὧνομάζομεν
ε! (τὸ) ἐκυσοῦν...τὸ δ ἄδικον: δὲ is simply a conjunction ‘and’ joining the two answers
ἐδὲ: well then; a particle based on the 3p opt. form of εἰμί
ἀ...τὶ καλοῦμεν: and what will we...?;
καλοῦμεν is future and governs a double acc.
ψυχή: subject, supply linking verb
ἀθάνατον.

elev, ἐφή· τούτῳ μὲν δὴ ἀποδεδείχθαι φώμεν; ἡ πῶς δοκεῖ; καὶ μάλα γε ἰκανός, ὁ Σώκρατες.

τι δήν, ἡ δὲ ὅσ, ὁ Κέβης; εἰ τῷ ἀναρτίῳ ἀναγκαῖον ἦν ἀνωλέθρῳ εἶναι, ἀλλο τι τὰ τρία ἦ ἀνωλέθρᾳ ἂν ἦν;

πῶς γὰρ οὖ;

οὐκοῦν εἰ καὶ τὸ ἀθέρμον ἀναγκαῖον ἦν ἀνωλέθρου εἶναι, ὁπότε τις ἐπὶ χιώνα θερμὸν ἐπάγοι, ὑπεξῆεὶ ἂν ἢ χιών οὖσα σῶς καὶ ἀτηκτος; οὐ γὰρ ἂν ἀπώλετο γε, οὐδ᾽ αὖ ὑπομένουσα ἐδέξατο ἄν τὴν θερμότητα.

ἀληθῆ, ἐφη, λέγεις.

ὡς δ᾽ αὐτῶς οἷοὶ κἂν εἰ τὸ ἄηικτον ἀνωλέθρον ἦν, ὁπότε ἐπὶ τὸ πῦρ ψυχρόν τι ἐπῆ, οὐποτ᾽ ἂν ἀπεσβέννυτο

---

ἀ-θέρμος, -ον: without heat, without warmth 1
ἀν-ἀρτικός, -ον: uneven, odd, 4
ἀν-ώλεθρος, -ας, -ον: indestructible, 12
ἀπο-δείκνυμι: demonstrate, prove 11
ἀπο-ομένυμι: to extinguish, quench, 1
ἀ-τηκτος, -ον: unmelted, 1
αὐτός: in the same manner, just as, as it is, 2
ἀ-ψυκτος, -ον: not able to be cooled, 1
ἐπ-ἄγω: to bring to, 1
ἐπ-ἐρχομαι: to come upon, approach, 8
θερμός, -ῆς, -ον: hot, warm; subst. heat, 11

θερμότης, -τητος, ἡ: heat, 3
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
ὁπότε: when, by what time, 6
οὐ-τοτε: never, 1
πῦρ, πυρὸς, τό: fire, 14
σῶς, ὁ, ἡ: whole, sound, safe and sound, 6
τρίς, τρία: three, 9
ὑπε-εξ-ἐρχομαι: to withdraw gradually, 2
ὑπο-μένω: to abide, stay firm; endure, 8
χιών, χιῶνος, ἡ: snow, 7
ψυχρός, -άς, -ον: cold, chill, frigid, 10

8 ἔλευ: well then
ἀποδεικνύομαι: pf. pass. inf.
φώμεν: are we to say...?; deliberative subj.
καί...γε: and...; καί...γε emphasizes the intervening word
10 εἰ... ἢν... ἢν...: if... it were..., it would be...;
present contrafactual condition (εἰ + impf., impf.)
106a1 ἄλλο τι... ἢ: anything other... than πῶς γὰρ οὖχ: how could (it) not?
‘yes for how not?’ γὰρ offers assent
3 εἰ... ἀναγκαῖον ἢν... ἢν ὑπεξῆ...: if it were..., would...; present contrafactual, εἰ, ἢν ὑπεξερχομαι
καί: actually, in fact; adverbial
4 ὁπότε... ἐπέγυοι: whenever...; opt. ἐπάγω
8 ὁντις, -ητος, ἡ: heat, 3
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
ὁπότε: when, by what time, 6
οὐ-τοτε: never, 1
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 14
σῶς, ὁ, ἡ: whole, sound, safe and sound, 6
τρίς, τρία: three, 9
ὑπε-εξ-ἐρχομαι: to withdraw gradually, 2
ὑπο-μένω: to abide, stay firm; endure, 8
χιών, χιῶνος, ἡ: snow, 7
ψυχρός, -άς, -ον: cold, chill, frigid, 10

replaces ἄν+ subj. in an indefinite temporal clause in secondary sequence
οὖσα: fem. sg. pple εἰμι
5 ἄν ἀπωλέω: could have...; ἄν + aor. is past (unrealized) potential, ἀπόλλυμι; ἡ χιών is the subject;
soon... ἄν: could have...; ἄν + aor. mid. is also past (unrealized) potential
8 ὥσ ἢ (β) αὐτῶς: and in the same way; i.e. ὡς ἀοτρώς
οἶμαι: οἴομαι
κἂν εἰ... ἢν... ἄπεσβεννυτο: even if...;
καί ἄν: another present contrafactual condition, the initial ἄν anticipates the second and should be left untranslated
9 ἐπεί: impf. ἐπέρχομαι
10 οὐδ’ ἀπώλλυτο, ἀλλὰ σών ἂν ἀπελθόν ὄχετο.

b ἀνάγκη, ἕφη.

οὐκοῖν καὶ ὥδε, ἕφη, ἀνάγκη περὶ τοῦ ἀθανάτου εἰπεῖν; εἰ μὲν τὸ ἀθανάτον καὶ ἀνόλεθρον ἄστιν, ἀδύνατον ἐστιν, ὡσπερ πᾶσαν θάνατον ἐπὶ αὐτὴν ἢ, ἀπόλυσθαι: τὸν μὲν γὰρ ἐκ τῶν προειρημένων οὐ δέχεται οὐδ’ ἐσται τεθηκών, ὡσπερ τὰ τρία οὐκ ἐσται, ἐφαμεν, ἄρτιον, οὐδὲ γ’ αὐτὸ τὸ περιττὸν, οὐδὲ δὴ πῦρ ψυχρῶν, οὐδὲ γε ὡς ἐν τῷ πυρὶ θερμότης. ἅλαλα τί κωλύει, φαίν ἂν τις, ἄρτιον μὲν τὸ περιττὸν μὴ γίγνεσθαι ἐπιόντος τοῦ ἄρτιον, ἔστιν; ἀπολομένου δὲ αὐτοῦ ἄντ’ ἐκείνου ἄρτιον γεγονέναι; τῷ ταύτα λέγοντι οὐκ ἕχομεν διαμαχαίσθαι ὅτι οὐκ

10 (άν) ἀπώλλυτο: still part of the apodosis of the contrafactual, impf. ἀπόλλυμι άν…ὄχετο: would…; still part of the apodosis of a contrafactual, impf. ὀχομαι, a verb that governs a complementary pple (S 2099)

ἀπελθόν: neuter sg. aor. pple ἀπ—έρχομαι

1 (καὶ) ἀνάγκη (ἐστί): (it is) necessary

2 καὶ: also, too; adverbial, also in b3

ἀδύνατο (ἐστι): (it is impossible ψυχή: for…; dat. of interest

3 ἢ: 3s pres. subj. ἔρχομαι + ἢ in an indefinite temporal clause

4 μὲν γὰρ δὴ: for…certainly in fact; μὲν δὴ expresses positive certainty (S 2900)

5 προειρημένον: pf. pass. pple προλέγω δέχεται: fut., see box on p. 174

ἔσται: fut. εἰμί

τεθηκών: fem. pf. pple ἀποθηκέο

ἄρτιον: neut. pred. with masc./fem. subject

κωλύω: to hinder or prevent, 5

ὀχομαι: to go, go off, depart, 14

περιττός——: odd, remarkable, 15

προ—λέγω: to say or mention beforehand, 4

πῦρ, πυρός, τὸ: fire, 14

σῶς, ὅ, ἢ: safe and sound, safe, sound, 6

τρεῖς, τρία: three, 9

ψυχρός, —α, —όν: cold, chill, frigid, 10

ὁδε: in this way, so, thus, 4

6 οὐδὲ γε: and neither …; introducing a negative counterpart (GP 156); γε may be marking the ellipsis of a verb (S 2828)

7 τὸ περιττὸν (ἐσται ἄρτιον) add verb οὐδὲ δὴ: nor then…; inferential, add ἐστίν οὐδὲ γε: nor…; introducing a negative counterpart (GP 156); γε may be marking the ellipsis of a verb (S 2828)

8 φαίν ἂν τις: one might say; potential opt.

9 μὴ γίγνεσθαι: from not becoming…; ‘that…not become…’

ἐπιόντος—ἄρτιον: gen. abs. ἐπέρχομαι, i.e. the doubling of an odd number

10 ἀπολομένου αὐτοῦ: gen. abs.; ~περιττὸν ἄρτι(λ) ἐκεῖνον: in place of that; ~περιττὸν γεγονέναι: pf. inf. γίγνομαι

2 τῷ…λέγοντι: with the one…; the verb μάχομαι governs a dat. of association ἄν ἔχομεν: we would be able; potential opt.
ἀπόλλυται: τὸ γὰρ ἀνάρτιον οὐκ ἀνώλεθρόν ἐστιν· ἐπεὶ εἰ τὸῦτο ὄμολόγητο ἡμῖν, ῥαδίως ἂν διεμαχόμεθα ὅτι ἐπελθόντος τοῦ ἀρτίου τὸ περιττὸν καὶ τὰ τρία οἴχεται ἅπιοντα· καὶ περὶ πυρὸς καὶ θερμοῦ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων σύνως ἂν διεμαχόμεθα. ἦ οὖ;

πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

οὐκοῦν καὶ νῦν περὶ τοῦ ἀθανάτου, εἰ μὲν ἡμῖν ὄμολογεῖται καὶ ἀνώλεθρον εἶναι, ψυχὴ ἂν εἰ πρὸς τῷ ἀθανάτος εἶναι καὶ ἀνώλεθρος· εἰ δὲ μὴ, ἄλλον ἂν δεόι λόγου.

ἀλλὰ οὐδὲν δει, ἔφη, τούτου γε ἐνεκα: σχολὴ γὰρ ἂν τι ἄλλο φθορὰν μὴ δέχοιτο, εἰ τὸ γε ἀθανάτον αίδιον ὅν φθορὰν δέξεται.
ο δέ γε θεὸς οἶμαι, ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης, καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ τῆς δοσις εἴδος καὶ εἰ τι ἄλλο ἀθάνατον ἐστιν, παρὰ πάντων ἄν ὀμολογηθεῖν μηδέποτε ἀπόλλυσθαι.

παρὰ πάντων μέντοι νὴ Δίς, ἔφη, ἀνθρώπων τε γε καὶ ἐτί μᾶλλον, ὡς ἐγώμαι, παρὰ θεῶν.

ε ὅποτε δὴ τὸ ἀθάνατον καὶ ἀδιάφθορόν ἐστιν, ἄλλο τι ψυχὴ ἢ, εἰ ἀθάνατος τυγχάνει οὐσα, καὶ ἀνώλεθρος ἄν εἴη;

πολλῇ ἀνάγκῃ.

ἐπίσκοπος ἄρα θανάτου ἐπὶ τὸν ἀνθρωπὸν τὸ μὲν θυτῶν, ὡς ἔνοιευ, αὐτοῦ ἀποθηκέουσει, τὸ δὲ ἀθάνατον σῶν καὶ ἀδιάφθορον οἴχεται ἀπιόν, ὑπεκχωρήσαν τῷ θανάτῳ.
φαίνεται.

παντὸς μᾶλλον ἄρα, ἔφη, ὁ Κέβης, ψυχῇ ἀθάνατον καὶ ἀνώλεθρον, καὶ τῷ ὄντι ἐσονταὶ ἦμῶν αἱ ψυχαὶ ἐν Ἀιδοῦ.

οὐκον ἔγωγε, ὁ Σώκρατες, ἔφη, ἔχω παρὰ ταῦτα ἄλλο τι λέγειν οὐδὲ πη ἀποστεῖν τοῖς λόγοις. ἀλλ' εἰ δὴ τι Σιμμίας ὀδε ἦ τις ἄλλος ἔχει λέγειν, εἰ ἔχει μὴ κατασιγγῆ-σαι ὡς οὐκ οἶδα εἰς ὄντων τις ἄλλον καρδὸν ἀναβάλλοιτο ἦ τὸν νῦν παρόντα, περὶ τῶν τοιοῦτων βουλόμενον ἢ τι εἰπεῖν ἢ ἀκοῦσαι.

ἀλλὰ μήν, ἦ δ' ὡς ὁ Σιμμίας, οὐδ' αὐτὸς ἔχω ἔτι ὄπη ἀπιστῶ ἣ κε ὑπὸ τῶν λεγομένων· ὑπὸ μέντοι τοῦ μεγέθους περὶ ὧν οἱ λόγοι εἰσίν, καὶ τὴν ἀνθρωπίνην ἀσθένειαν ἀτιμάζων, b

9 παντὸς: than anything; gen. of comparison
107a1 τῷ ὄντι: actually, really; the pple is used as an adverbial ἐσονταί: 3p pres. dep. εἰμί ἐν Ἀιδοῦ: in (the house) of Hades
2 ἔχω: I am able παρὰ: contrary to..., against...
4 ὃς: here; as if he is pointing to Simmias ἔχει: see p. 7
5 ὡς: as, since εἰς ὄντων...ἄλλον καρδὸν: to what other...

ἀ-τιμάζω: to dishonor, insult, slight, 4 καιρός, ὁ: time, (right) moment, 1 κατα-σιγάω: to remain silent, 1 μέγεθος-εος, τό: size, magnitude, height, 17 ὄπη: in what way, how, where, 11 οὐκ-οὐν: certainly not, not in fact, 2 πη: in some way, somehow, 4

ἀναβάλλοιτο (ἄν): he might put (it) off; a potential opt. without ἄν (S 1821, 1822) τῶν νῦν παρόντα (καρδὸν): i.e. the present ἀλλὰ μήν: well, certainly; in assent GP 343 ὡς ὁ Σιμμίας: Simmias here, this Simmias; ὡς is a demonstrative ἔχω: I know ὑπὸ τοῦ μεγέθους...: because of...; gen. of cause ἀτιμάζων: having a poor opinion of...
ἀναγκάζομαι ἀπιστίαν ἐτί ἔχειν παρ᾽ ἐμαυτῷ περὶ τῶν εἰρημένων.

οὐ μόνον γ’, ἐφη, ὡ Σιμμία, ὥ Σωκράτης, ἀλλὰ ταῦτα τε εὖ λέγει καὶ τὰς γε ὑποθέσεις τὰς πρῶτας, καὶ εἰ πισταὶ ύμῖν εἰσιν, ὄμως ἐπισκεπτέαι σαφέστερον καὶ ἐάν αὐτὰς ἱκανῶς διέλητε, ὡς ἐγώμαι, ἀκολουθήσετε τῷ λόγῳ, καθ᾽ ὃσον δυνατὸν μάλιστ’ ἀνθρώπω ἐπακολουθήσαί κἀν τοῦτο αὐτῷ σαφές γένηται, οὐδὲν ζητήσετε περαιτέρω.

αληθῆ, ἐφη, λέγεις.

ἀλλὰ τόδε γ’, ἐφη, ὡ ἀνδρές, δίκαιον διανοηθῆναι, ὅτι, εἴπερ ἡ ψυχὴ ἀθάνατος, ἐπιμελείας δὴ δεῖται οὐχ ὑπὲρ τοῦ χρόνου τούτου μόνον ἐν ὦ καλοῦμεν τὸ ζῆν, ἀλλ᾽ ὑπὲρ τοῦ

2 παρ(α) ἐμαυτῷ: in my mind (S 1692.b) εἰρημένων: pf. pass. pple λέγω (stem ερ) 4 οὐ μόνον γ(ε)… ἀλλὰ: Yes, no only (this) but (also)…; 5 τὰς ὑποθέσεις… πρῶτας: parallel to ταῦτα (note τε…καὶ), object of λέγεις καὶ εἴ: even if…; condition is concessive εἰσίν: 3p εἰμί; 6 ἐπισκεπτέαι (ἐσιν): they must be examined; ‘are to be examined,’ this verbal adj. + εἰμί, here understood, expresses obligation; the missing subject is αἱ ὑποθέσεις 6 σαφέστερον: comparative adv. ἐάν… διέλητε, ἀκολουθήσετε: if you analyze…, you will…; ‘distinguish’ a fut. more vivid condition (εἰ ἔν + subj., fut.), διέλητε is 2s aor. subj. of διανοήσα (ἔλ) 7 ἐγὼμαι: ἐγὼ οἶμαι ἐπι-σκέπτεσ-α: one must examine, inspect 1 ζητέω: to seek, look for, investigate, 9 δύνατον: nevertheless, however, yet, 13 περαιτέρω: further, (comp. of πέρα) 1 πιστός, -ή, -όν: trustworthy; credible 2 σαφής, -ές: clear, distinct; certain, reliable, 16 ὑπὲρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); over, beyond (acc.), 6 ὑπο-θέσις, -εως, -η: proposal, hypothesis, 6 κατ(α) ὁσον δυνατον (ἔστι): inasmuch as ἀνθρώπως: for…; dat. of interest ἐπακολουθήσα: aor. inf. καν… γένηται, ζητήσετε: and if…; καὶ ἐάν, a fut. more vivid condition (εἰ ἔν + subj., fut.) 11 ἀλλὰ… γε: but…; or ‘well,’ γε emphasizes the preceding noun δικαιον (ἔστι): it is right διανοηθῆναι: aor. pass. dep. inf. c1 δεῖται: needs…; + partitive gen., 3s pres. δεύμαι δὴ: then, accordingly; inferential οὐχ… μόνον… ἀλλ(α): not only… but (also) ὑπὲρ: for…; i.e. ‘concerning’ (S 1697.1b) 2 εν ζῆν: in which (time) τὸ ζῆν: articular inf. ζῶ ὑπὲρ παντός: for all (time); see c1
παντός, καὶ ὁ κύδνυνος νῦν δὴ καὶ δόξειν ἄν δεινὸς εἶναι, εἰ τις αὐτῆς ἀμελήσει. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ἢν ὁ θάνατος τοῦ παντός ἀπαλλαγὴ, ἐρμαυνὸν ἄν ἢν τοῖς κακοῖς ἀποθανοῦσι τοῦ τε σώματος ἀμὴ ἀπηλλάχθαι καὶ τῆς αὐτῶν κακίας μετὰ τῆς ψυχῆς. νῦν δὲ ἐπειδὴ ἄθανατος φαίνεται οὔσα, οὐδεμία ἂν εἴη αὐτῆς ἀλλή ἀποφυγῇ κακῶν οὐδὲ σωτηρία πλὴν τοῦ ὡς d βελτιστῆν τε καὶ φρονιμωτάτην γενέσθαι. οὐδὲν γὰρ ἄλλο ἔχουσα εἰς Ἄιδον ἢ ψυχῆ ἐρχεται πλὴν τῆς παιδείας τε καὶ τροφῆς, ἃ δὴ καὶ μέγιστα λέγεται ὦφελειν ἢ βλάπτειν τὸν τελευτῆσαι ἐνδήσι ἢ ἀρχῆ ἡς ἐκείσι πορείας. λέγεται δὲ οὔτως, ὃς ἡρ τελευτῆσαι ἐκαστον ὁ ἐκάστου δαίμων, ὁσπερ ζῶντα εἰλήκει, οὕτως ἄγεω ἐπιχειρεῖ εἰς δὴ των

| ἄγω: | to lead, bring, carry, convey, 12 |
| Ἄιδης, -ου ὁ: | Hades, 15 |
| ἀμελέω: | to have no care for, neglect, 5 |
| ἀπ-ἀλλαγή, ἡ: | escape; release, departure, 7 |
| ἀπ-ἀλλάττω: | escape, release; set free, 15 |
| ἀπο-φυγῆ, ἡ: | escape; refuge, 1 |
| ἀρχῆ, ἡ: | a beginning; rule, office, 8 |
| βέλτιστος, -ην, -ου: | best, 14 |
| βλάπτω: | to harm, hurt, 1 |
| δαιμῶν, -ουσι: | a divine being or spirit, 3 |
| δεινός, ην, -ου: | terrible; wondrous, clever, 6 |
| ἐκ-αἰ: | thither, to that place, 10 |
| ἐπι-χειρεῖ: | put one's hand on, attempt, try, 8 |
| ἔρμαυνον, τὸ: | a god-send, gift of the gods, |
| 4 νῦν δὴ: | now already; 'just now, i.e. if it were true now that the soul is immortal |
| καὶ: | actually; adverbial καὶ, potential opt. |
| 5 ἀμελήσει: | will care...; a fut. replaces opt. in future less vivid to express heightened emotion (emotional future less vivid) |
| εἰ...ήν...ἄν ἢν: | if...were...would be...; pres. contrafactual (ei impf., impf.), εἰ | |
| τοῦ παντός: | from...; gen. of separation |
| 6 ἄν ἢν: | it would be; impersonal |
| τοῖς κακοῖς (ἀνθρώποις): | dat. interest |
| ἀποθάνονος: | aor. pple |
| τοῦ σώματος: | from...; separation |
| 7 ἀπηλλάχθα: | aor. pass. inf. |
| τῆς...κακίας: | from...; separation, parallel to σώματος |

stroke of luck, 1

eὐθὺς: right away, straight, directly, at once, 9

κακία, ἡ: wickedness, flaw, cowardice, 6

κύδνυνος, ὁ: risk, danger, venture, 2

λαγχάνω: to obtain by lot; be the tutelary deity over, preside over, 1

μέγιστος, -ην, -ου: very big, greatest, most, 6

παιδεία, ἡ: education, culture, learning, 1

πλήν: except, but (+ gen.), 7

πορεία, ἡ: journey; way, march, 3

σωτηρία, ἡ: deliverance, salvation, 1

τροφῆ, ἡ: rearing, upbringing; food, 4

φρονίμος, -ουν: sensible, wise, prudent, 8

ὡφελέω: to help, to be of use, benefit, 1

8 νῦν δ(ε): but as it is...; as often following a contrafactual condition

φαίνεται οὖσα: appears to; + pple

ἀν εἰ: would.; potential opt. εἰ | |

d1 αὐτῇ: for it; i.e. soul, dat. of interest |

κακῶν: from...; separation |

ὡς...: as...as possible; + superlative |

3 εἰς Ἄιδον: into Hades' (house)

ἀ δὴ: which very things...; with sg. verb |

4 καὶ: quite; an intensive modifying an adv. |

μέγιστα: superlative adv. |

τὸν τελευτῆσαι: the one having died |

6 ὡς: that...

7 εἰλῆχε: plpf. λαγχάνω |

ζῶντα: that one (while) being alive |

δὴ των: a certain (fixed); intensive δὴ |
τόπον, οὗ δεῖ τοὺς συλλεγέντας διαδικασασμένους εἰς Ἀιδοῦν
πορεύεσθαι μετὰ ἡγεμόνος ἐκείνου ὧν ἐπὶ προστέτακται τοὺς
ἐνθέντε ἐκεῖσε πορεύσαι: τυχόντας δὲ ἐκεῖ ὧν ἐν τυχεῖν
καὶ μείναντας ὃν χρή χρόνον ἄλλος δεύρο πάλιν ἡγεμών
κομίζει ἐν πολλαῖς χρόνον καὶ μακραῖς περιόδοις. ἔστι δὲ
ἀρα ἡ πορεία οὗ ὡς ὁ Δισχύλου Τήλεφος λέγει: ἐκείνος
μὲν γὰρ ἀπλῆν οἰμῶν φησιν εἰς Ἀιδοῦν φέρειν, ἡ δ᾽ οὗτε
ἀπλῆ οὔτε μία φαίνεται μοι εἶναι. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἄν ἡγεμόνων
ἐδεί οὐ γάρ τις ἄν διαμάρτοι ὀδυμόσε μᾶς ὀδοὺ
οὖσης. νῦν δὲ ἐοικε σχίεσις τε καὶ τρόπους πολλὰς ἐχειν:
ἀπὸ τῶν θυσιῶν τε καὶ νομίμων τῶν ἐνθάδε τεκμαρόμενοι
λέγω. ἡ μὲν οὖν κοσμία τε καὶ φρόνιμος ψυχή ἐπεται τε

107d
Myth of the Afterlife

Ἀιδῆς, -ου ὃ: Hades, 15
Ἀισχύλος, ὃ: Aeschylus (the playwright) 1
ἀπλος, ὅ, ὧν: single, simple, plain, 3
διά-δικαζω: give judgment in a case, decide 2
δια-αμαρτάω: to go astray, miss entirely, 1
ἐκαί: there, in that place, 17
ἐν-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
ἐν-θένδε: hence, from here, 3
ἐπομα: to follow, accompany, escort, 9
ἡγεμῶν, ὁ: guide, leader, commander, 5
θυσία, ἡ: sacrifice, offering, rite, 2
κομίζω: to carry, convey; travel, journey, 2
κόσμιος, -ης, -ου: well-ordered, regular, 4
μακρός, ᾃ, ὧν: long, far, distant, large, 4
μένω: to stay, remain, 8
νόμιμος, -ης, -ου: customary, lawful, 2
ὀδός, ὃ, ὧν: road, way, path, journey, 1
οἶμος, ὃ, ὧν: way, road, path, 1
οὐδαμό-σε: to no place, to nowhere, 2
περί-οδος, ὃ: cycle or period of time, circuit 1
πορεία, ἡ: journey; way, march, 3
πορεύονται to conduct; mid. travel, journey, 7
προσ-τάττον: to order, assign, appoint (dat) 5
συλ-λέγω: to collect, gather, 4
σχίεσις, -έως, ἡ: parting, cleavage, 4
τεκμαρόμαι: to judge by signs, conjecture, 1
Τήλεφος, ὃ: Telephus, (a lost tragedy) 1
τρί-οδος, ὁ: crossroads, meeting of roads, 1
φρόνιμος, -ου: sensible, wise, prudent, 8

3 μείναντας: aor pple, μένων
ὸν...χρόνον: for which time...; acc. duration
5 ὡς: just as...

108a1 φησιν: says; 3s pres.
φέρειν: leads...; i.e. the path bears to...
ἡ δ(ὲ): and it...; i.e. the path, ἡ οἶμος
ἀν...ἐδει: there would be a need for...; ἀν +
impf. expresses present (unrealized)
potential; governing a partitive gen.
3 διαμάρτοι: could...; 3s aor. potential opt.
μιᾶς...οὖσης: if...; gen. abs., conditional
4 σχίεσις: i.e. forks in the road
5 νομίμων...ἐνθάδε: ceremonies here
ἐπεται: follows (the guide)
καὶ οὖν ἀγνοεῖ τὰ παρόντα: ἥ ἐπιθυμητικὸς τοῦ σώματος ἔχουσα, ὅπερ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν ἐλπὶν, περὶ ἐκείνῳ πολὺν χρόνον ἐπιτημένη καὶ περὶ τὸν ὁρατὸν τόπον, πολλὰ ἀντιτείνασα καὶ πολλὰ παθοῦσα, βία καὶ μόγις ὑπὸ τοῦ προστεταγμένου δαίμονος οἰχεῖται ἀγομένῃ. ἀφικομένῃ δὲ ὃθιπερ αἱ ἄλλαι, τὴν μὲν ἀκάθαρτον καὶ τι πεποιηκώς τοιοῦτον, ἡ φόνων ἀδίκων ἡμμένην ἤ ἄλλ' ἀττα τοιαύτα εἰργασμένην, ἃ τούτων ἀδελφά τε καὶ ἄδελφῶν ψυχῶν ἔργα τυγχάνει οὖν, ταύτην μὲν ἄπασθε φένγει τε καὶ ὑπεκτρέπεται καὶ οὔτε συνεποροπόστε οὔτε ἡμέων ἐθέλει γάνεθαι, αὐτῇ δὲ πλανάται ἐν πάσῃ ἐξομένῃ ἀπορία ἐως ἄν ἤ τινς ἁρχόντων ἦν ἀνάγκης φέρεται εἰς τὴν ἐργον, τό: work, labor, deed, act, 5 ἐρως: until, as long as, 15 ἡμεῦνων, ὁ: leader, commander, guide, 5 μόγις: with difficulty, scarcely, hardly, 1 ὁδι-περ: where, the very place where, 1 οIKE: to go, go off, depart, 14 ὑπατός, ἡ, -όν: visible, to be seen, 17 πλανάκι: make wander; mid. wander, 4 προσ-τάτω: to order, assign, appoint, 5 πτοης: to flutter, excite, terrify, scare, 1 συν-ἐμπορος ὁ: fellow-traveller, companion 2 ὑπ-ἐκ-τρέπτω: to turn aside from + acc., 1 φεύγω: to flee, escape; avoid, 10 φόνος, ὁ: murder, slaughter, 27 τὴν μὲν (ψυχῆ): the soul... πεποιηκῶν: pf. act. pple πσωεω 5 ἤ...ἦ...either...or ἡμεῦνων: i.e. having committed; pf. mid. άπτω + partitive gen. ἀττα: some; alternate form of neuter τις εἰργασμένην: pf. mid. pple ἄδελφα, ἄδελφων: adjectives, not nouns 7 τυγχάνει: + pple, see p. 20 8 αὐτή δὲ: but (the soul) itself...; i.e. by itself 9 ἐν πάσῃ ἀπορίᾳ ἐξομένη: pass. pple, note the word order ἐως ἄν δὴ τινες...γένομαι: while certain fixed times come to pass; ἄν + aor. subj., indefinite temporal clause; intensive δὴ 2 τῶν ἐλθόντων: these coming to pass; abs.
αὐτῇ πρέπουσαν οἰκήσων· ἢ δὲ καθαρῶς τε καὶ μετρίως τὸν βιον διεξελθοῦσα, καὶ συνεμπόρων καὶ ἡγεμόνων θεών τυχοῦσα, ὀφθαλμοὶ τὸν αὐτή ἐκάστη τόπον προσηκούσαι· εἰςων δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ θαυμαστοί τῆς γῆς τόποι, καὶ αὐτὴ οὕτε οία οὕτε δοξάζεως ὑπὸ τῶν περὶ γῆς εἰωθότων λέγειν, ὡς ἐγώ ὑπὸ τυφεισμαί.

καὶ ὁ Συμμίας, πῶς ταῦτα, ἐφη, λέγεις, ὁ Σώκρατες; περὶ γάρ τοι γῆς καὶ αὐτὸς πολλὰ δῆ ἁκήκοα, ὡς μέντοι ταῦτα ἂ σὲ πείθει· ἢδεως οὖν ἂν ἀκούσαμι.

ἀλλὰ μέντοι, ὁ Συμμία, ὥς ἡ Γλαύκου τέχνη γέ μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι διηγήσασθαι ἄ γʹ ἕστιν· ὡς μέντοι ἄληθή, χαλεπώτερον μοι φαίνεται ἣ κατὰ τὴν Γλαύκου τέχνην, καὶ

Γλαύκου, ὁ: Glaucos, 2. 

δι-εξ-ἐρχομαι: to pass through, go through 5

δι-περάω: set out in detail, relate, narrate, 3

δοξάζω: to think, opine, suppose, imagine, 3

εἰσοθα: to be accustomed, 12

ἡγεμόνων, ὁ: leader, commander, guide, 5

ἡδεως: sweetly, pleasantly, gladly, 6

θαυμαστος, -η, -όν: wonderful, marvelous, strange, 11

μέτριος, -α, -ον: moderate, in due measure, 7

οικέω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 15

οἰκήσαι, ἡ: dwelling, 5

πρέπει: it is fitting, it is suitable (impers.) 8

προσ-ήκει: it belongs, it is fitting, befits 15

συν-ἐμπορος ὁ: fellow-traveller, companion 1

tέχνη, ἡ: craft, art, 6

χαλεπός, -ά, -όν: difficult, hard, harmful, 5

3 αὐτῇ: to it; i.e. soul, dat. of interest with the pple

ἡ δὲ: but the soul...

5 τυχοῦσα: aor. pple + partitive gen., see p. 20

οἴκησην: aor. οἰκέω

εἰσοθά: 3p pres. εἰσί

καὶ αὐτῇ οὔτε οία οὔτε δοξη: and (the earth) itself (is) neither the sort nor the size...; add a linking verb

7 εἰωθότων: pf. pple εἰσοθα, present in sense; gen. of agent

8 πέπεισαι: pf. pass. πείθω

11 λέγεις: i.e. what do you mean by these? δῆ: quite

2 αἰκήκοα: 1s pf. ἀκούω

3 πείθει: persuades you; neuter pl. ἂ is the subject

ἀν ἀκούσαμι: would...; potential opt.

4 ἀλλὰ μέντοι: well, certainly; ἀλλὰ as often in replies, μέντοι is confirmatory (GP 411)

ἡ Γλαύκου τέχνη...ἐστίν: it does not seem to me to be the art of Glaucus at least to explain what indeed it is; i.e. it does not take a genius to explain...; ἔστιν: is an idiom of unclear, though speculated, origin

5 οὕς...ἄληθη: that (these things are) true, however,...; ἄληθεα is predicate, add verb

6 χαλεπώτερον (δηγήσασθαι): supply an epexegetic inf. with this comparative

ἡ κατὰ τὴν Γλαύκου τέχνην: than compared to the art of Glaucus; ‘than according to...’ for κατά, see S 1690c

192
άμα μὲν ἐγὼ ἴσως οὐδ’ ἂν οἶσιν, ἄμα δέ, εἰ καὶ ἰπιστάμην, ὁ βίος μοι δοκεῖ ὁ ἐμός, ὁ Συμμία, τῷ μήκει τοῦ λόγου οὐκ ἐξαρκεῖν. τὴν μέντοι ἰδέαν τῆς γῆς οἶναν πέπεισμαι εἶναι, καὶ τοὺς τόπους αὐτῆς οὐδέν με κωλύει εἰ λέγειν.

ἀλλ’, ἐφ’ ὁ Συμμίας, καὶ ταῦτα ἀρκεῖ.

πέπεισμαι τοῖνυν, ἢ δ’ ὦς, ἐγὼ ὡς πρῶτον μέν, εἰ ἔστων ἐν μέσῳ τῷ οὐρανῷ περιφερῆς οὐσία, μηδὲν αὐτῇ δεῖν μήτε ἀέρος πρὸς τὸ μὴ πεσεῖν μήτε ἄλλῃς ἀνάγκης μιθέμας τοιαύτης, ἀλλὰ ἰκανὴν εἶναι αὐτῇ ἵσχειν τὴν ὁμοιότητα τοῦ οὐρανοῦ αὐτοῦ ἑαυτῷ πάντη καὶ τῆς γῆς αὐτῆς τὴν ἴσορροπίαν ἴσορροπον γὰρ πράγμα ὁμοίου τινὸς ἐν μέσῳ μέσῳ - ἦν - ον: middle, in the middle of, 8 μήκος, τό: length, 1 ὁμοιότης, -τητος, ἡ: similarity, resemblance, 3 οὐρανός, ὁ: sky, heaven, 10 πάντη: in every way, on every side, 1 περι-φερής, -ές: rounded, circular 1 πίπτω: to fall, 3 πράγμα, -ατος τό: deed, act; matter, affair 18

for acc + inf. in what follows πρῶτον: adverbial acc. ἔστων: (the earth) is; add ἡ γῆ as subject οὐσία: pple εἰμί

5 μηδὲν αὐτῇ δεῖν: that for it there is not at all a need for;...; + partitive gen.; ind. disc. (ignoring ὡς) + πέπεισμαι, for μῆ, S 2726 109a1 πρὸς...πεσεῖν: with regard to...; articular inf. πίπτω ἀνάγκης: force 2 ἰκανὴν εἶναι αὐτῇ ἱσχειν: ...are sufficient to hold it (in place); i.e. the earth; though ἰκανὴν is sg., there are two acc. subjects 3 ἐπετῆ: το...; dat. with ὁμοιότητα πάντη: on every side 4 πράγμα: object ὁμοίου τινὸς...μέσῳ: in the middle of something of this sort sort; i.e. something homogenous like the sky
5. **τεθὲν** οὖν ἐξείς μᾶλλον οὐδ' ἦττον οὐδαμόσε κλιθήμαι, ὀμοίως δ' ἐχον ἀκλινὲς μενεῖ. πρῶτον μὲν τοῖνυν, ἢ δ' ὅσ, τοῦτο πέπεισμαι.

καὶ ὀρθῶς γε, ἔφη ὁ Σωμιάς.

ἐτι τοῖνυν, ἔφη, πάμμεγά τι εἶναι αὐτό, καὶ ἡμᾶς οἰκεῖν

b τοὺς μέχρι Ἡρακλείων στηλῶν ἀπὸ Φάσιδος ἐν σμικρῷ τινι μορίῳ, ὀσπερ περὶ τέλμα μύρμηκας ἡ βατράχως περὶ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκονύτας, καὶ ἄλλους ἄλλοθι πολλοὺς ἐν πολλοὶς τοιοῦτος τόποις οἰκεῖν. εἶναι γάρ πανταχῇ περὶ τὴν γῆν πολλὰ κοιλα καὶ παντοδαπὰ καὶ τὰς ἱδέας καὶ τὰ μεγέθη, εἰς ἀν συνερρηκέναι τὸ τε ὧδερ καὶ τὴν ὧμίχλην καὶ τὸν ἄερα: αὐτὴν δὲ τὴν γῆν καθαρὰν ἐν καθαρῷ κείσθαι

---

α-κλινής, -ές: unbending, leaning either side, 1
ἀήρ, ἀέρος m.: air, mist 16
ἀλλο-θε: in another place, elsewhere, 7
βατραχος, ὁ: frog, 1
Ἑρακλεῖως, -α, -ου: of Heracles, 1
ἡττων, -ου: less, weaker, inferior, 16
θάλαττα, ἡ: the sea, 12
ἰδέα, ἡ: idea, character; appearance, form, 8
κείμαι: to lie, lie down 4
κλίνω: to bend, swerve; incline, lean, 1
κολός, -ης, -ου: hollow, hollowed, 5
μέγεθος, -εως, τό: size, magnitude, height, 17
μένω: to stay, remain, 8
μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 5
μόριον, τό: piece, portion, 2

---

5. **τεθέν**: neut. sg. aor. pass. pple τίθημι ἔξει: will be able; fut. ἔχεω ἦττων: less; comparative adverb κλιθήμαι: aor. pass. inf.
6. ὀμοίως ἔχω: neut. pple modifying πράγμα, for ἔχω + adv., see p. 7 ἢ δ' ὅς: see note on p. 9
7. πέπεισμαι: pf. pass. πείθω καὶ... γε: and rightly; emphasizing the intervening word
9. πάμμεγα... αὐτό (πέπεισμαι): (I am persuaded that it...); supply verb
b1 τοὺς μέχρι... στηλῶν... ὀκοντα: those...;
τῷ οὐρανῷ ἐν φιπέρ ἐστι τὰ ἀστρα, ὅπερ δὴ αἰθέρα ὁνομάζειν τοὺς πολλοὺς τῶν περὶ τὰ τοιαύτα εἰωθότων λέγειν· οὐ δὴ ἡ ὑποστάθμην ταῦτα εἶναι καὶ συρρεῖν ἀεὶ εἰς τὰ κοίλα τῆς γῆς. ἦμᾶς οὖν οἰκούντας ἐν τοῖς κοίλοις αὐτῆς λεληθέναι καὶ οἰέσθαι ἄνω ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς οἰκεῖν, ὁπέρ δὲν εἰς τὴν μέσω τῷ πυθμένι τοῦ πελάγους οἰκῶν οἰοτό τε ἐπὶ τῆς θαλάττης οἰκεῖν καὶ διὰ τοῦ ὑδατος ὅραν τὸν ἥλιον καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἀστρα τῆς θάλατταν ἡγοῖτο οὐρανὸν εἶναι, διὰ δὲ βραδυτῆτά τε καὶ ἀσθενεῖαν μηδεπώποτε ἐπὶ τὰ ἀκρα τῆς δ θαλάττης ἄφιγμενος μηδὲ ἑωρακὼς εἰς, ἐκδύναι καὶ ἀνακύψας ἐκ τῆς θαλάττης εἰς τὸν ἐνθάδε τόπον, ὅσοι καθαρώτεροι καὶ καλλίων τυγχάνει ἄν τοῦ παρά σφισι, μηδὲ ἄλλου

λαυθάνω: to escape notice of; forget, 7
μέσως, - η, -ον: middle, in the middle of, 8
μηδεπώποτε: not yet ever, never in the world 1
οικεω: to inhabit, dwell, live, 15
οὔμα, -ατος, τό: name, 7
οὐρανός, ό: sky, heaven, 10
πελάγος, ό: sea, 1
πυθμήν, -ένους: bottom, base, 2
συν-ρέω: to flow together, 4
οφεῖς: they, 4
ὑδωρ, υθατος, τό: water, 14
ὑπο-στάθμην, η: sediment, 1

8 τῷ οὐρανῷ: supply ἐν καθαρῳ
ἄν δὲ: the very one which, precisely what...
7 εἰωθότων: of those accustomed; partitive gen., pp. ple έκωσι
6 ή: of which very thing
5 ταύτα: acc. subject, i.e. the water, mist, and air from b6-7
4 ἦμας...οἰκούντας...λεληθέναι: pf. act. inf. λαυθάνω + complementary pple; often, the pple acts as main verb and λαυθάνω is translated as ‘unawares’ or ‘unknowingly’
3 ἄνω ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς: above on the earth ὡσπερ ἐν εἴ: just as if...; ὡσπερ εἴ, the ἄν suggests a suppressed (missing) apodosis οἰκῶν: nom. sg. pp. oικῶ
5 οἰοτό...ηγοίτο: should...should...; opt. in protasis of a future less vivid; οἴσμαι
4 τυγχάνει: pple εἰ, see p. 20
3 δαιρ...: how much...; by how much,” the clause is governed by ἀκήκοσος εἰς, a dat. of degree of difference
2 κηκο...: up, above, 6
1 ἀ-θραδυτῆς, -τίτοις, η: slowness, 2
0 εἴσθα: to be accustomed, 12
-δόω: to come out; take off, strip, 1
-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
-λίος, η: the sun, 7
-θάλαττα, η: the sea, 12
-καλλιων, -ον: more noble or beautiful, 7
-κολος, -η, -ον: hollow, hollowed, 5

φαιδών 109b

195
Μυθικό του Αιώνα

5 ἀκηκώς εἰη τοῦ ἐωρακότος. ταυτόν δὴ τούτο καὶ ἡμᾶς επισκόπηναι οἰκοῦντας γὰρ ἐν τινι κοιλω τῆς γῆς οἶεσθαι ἐπάνω αὐτῆς οἰκεῖν, καὶ τὸν ἀέρα οὐρανον καλεῖν, ὡς διὰ τοῦτον οὐρανοῦ ὄντος τὰ ἀστρα χωροῦντα· τὸ δὲ εἶναι ταὐτόν, ὑπ’ ἀσθενείας καὶ βραδυτήτος οὐχ ὀίους τε εἶναι ἡμᾶς διεξελθεῖν ἐπ’ ἐσχατὸν τὸν ἀέρα· ἐπει, εἰ τις αὐτοῦ ἐπ’ ἀκρα ἔλθοι ἡ πτηνὸς γενόμενος ἀνάπτυκτο, κατιδεῖν ὡς πεπεισμένης, ἄσπερ ἐνθάδε οἱ ἐκ τῆς θαλάτης ἱχθυῖς ἀνακύ-πτοντες ὄροις τὰ ἐνθάδε, οὕτως ἄν τινα καὶ τὰ ἑκεῖ κατιδεῖν, καὶ εἰ ἡ φύσις ἱκανὴ εἰη ἀνασχέσθαι θεωροῦσα, γνώναι ἂν ὅτι ἕκενιόν ἐστιν ὁ ἄληθως οὐρανός καὶ τὸ ἄληθινον φῶς καὶ ἡ ὄς ἄληθῶς γῆ. ἣδὲ μὲν γὰρ ἡ γῆ καὶ οἱ λίθοι καὶ

5 ἀσθενεία, ἡ: weakness, feebleness, 4
ἀἵμαρ, ἄροις: m.: air, mist 16
ἁκρος, -ην, -οιν: topos, most, excellent, 3
ἁλθινός, -η, -ον: truthful, true, real, 1
ἀν-έχω: to hold up; uphold, hold out, 1
ἀνα-κύπτων: to lift up one’s head, 3
ἀνα-πέτωμα: to fly up, fly away, 1
ἀστραυ, τό: a star, 5
βραδυτής, -τήτος, ἡ: slowness, 2
γιγανώσκω: learn to know, to learn, realize 12
διεξ-έρχομαι: to pass through, go through 5
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ἐνθάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
ἐπ-ἀνώ: above (+ gen.), 1

境外, to the upper air
ἐπεί: since
ἀυτοῦ: of it; i.e of the air
3 ἐλθοι...ἀνάπτυκτο: should go, should fly up
γενόμενος: aor. γέγονομαι + nom. predicate
κατιδεῖν: then he would see; inf. καθοράω
5 τὰ ἐνθάδε: things here
οὕτως...: so one could see things there also
6 εἰη...: were sufficient to sustain seeing
γνώναι ἄν...: he would know; aor. inf.
ὡς ἄληθῶς: in reality
ἀπασ ὁ τόπος ὁ ἐνθάδε διεφθαρμένα ἔστιν καὶ καταβεβρωμένα, ὡσπερ τὰ ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ ὑπὸ τῆς ἄλμης, καὶ οὔτε φύεται ἄξιον λόγου οὐδὲν ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, οὔτε τέλειον ὡς ἐτοι εἰπεῖν οὐδέν ἐστι, σήραγγες δὲ καὶ ἄμμος καὶ πῆλος ἀμήχανος καὶ βόρβορος εἰσιν, ὅπου ἄν καὶ [ἡ] γῆ ἥ, καὶ πρὸς τὰ παρ᾽ ἡμῖν κάλλη κρίνεσθαι οὐδ᾽ ὀπωσδειόν ἄξια. ἐκείνα δὲ ἄχ τῶν παρ᾽ ἡμῖν πολὺ ἄν ἐτί πλέον φανεῖν διαφέρειν· εἰ γὰρ δὴ καὶ μύθου λέγειν καλόν, ἄξιον ἀκούσαι, ὡς Σιμμία, οἰα τυγχάνει τὰ ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς ὑπὸ τῷ οὐρανῷ ὄντα. ἀλλὰ μὴν, ἐφεὶ ὁ Σιμμίας, ὡς Σῶκρατες, ἢμεῖς γε τοῦτο τοῦ μύθου ἥδεως ἄν ἀκούσαμεν.

2 ὁ ἐνθάδε: modifying ὁ τόπος  
διεφθαρμένα ἔστιν: periphratic pf. pass. (pf. pple + εἰμί), διαφθέρω; the use of the neuter pl. following plural subjects of different genders is not uncommon  
καταβεβρωμένα (ἔστιν): see above,  
3 τὰ...θαλάττῃ: things...; supply verb ὑπὸ...: gen. of cause  
4 ἄξιον λόγου: worthy of mention  
ὡς ἑποὺ ἐπιέφυ: so to speak; an inf. absolute  
6 ἄμμαχος: i.e. inconceivably immense  
ἔχω: 3rd pl. pres. εἰμί  
ὁποὺ ἄν...ἡ: wherever...; 3s pres. subj. εἰμί + ἂν in an indefinite relative clause  
7 πρὸς τὰ παρὰ ἡμῖν κάλλη: in comparison to beautiful things where we live they (are) in no way at all worthy to be judged; κάλλες; παρὰ is similar to ἀπόδιχες, see 109d4; κρίνεσθαι is an epexegetic inf.  
κατα-βιβρώσκω: corrode, eat up, devour,  
κρύω: to choose, pick out; judge, decide,  
μύθος, ὁ: story, word, speech,  
ὁποὺ: where,  
ὄπωστιόν: in any way whatever,  
οὐρανός, ὁ: sky, heaven,  
πῆλος, ὁ: mud, clay, earth,  
πλέων, ὁ: more, greater,  
σήραγγες:  
σήραγγος, ὁ: hollow rock, cave,  
τέλειον, τοῦ, -ον: perfect, completed,  
φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature,  
8 ἐκείνα δὲ: but those things...; i.e. real earth  
τῶν παρὰ ἡμῖν: than those where we live...; gen. of comparison with διαφέρειν, for παρὰ ἡμῖν, see a7  
πολὺ: i.e. inconceivably immense  
ἀν φανεῖν: would appear; 3s aor. pass. opt. φαίνω  
b1 εἰ γὰρ δὴ...καλόν (ἔστι): if indeed (it is) right also...; καλόν is impersonal, γὰρ is anticipatory, ‘since’ or ‘for,’ but here left untranslated  
δίον (ἔστι): (it is)...; predicate, supply a linking verb  
2 οἶα: the things which...; the missing antecedent is obj. of ἀκούσαμεν  
τυγχάνει: + pple, see p. 20  
3 ἀλλὰ μὴν: well certainly; a strong assent  
τοῦτο τοῦ μύθου: gen. of source, object of potential aor. opt. ἀκούσαμεν
5 λέγεται τοίνυν, ἡφι, ὡς ἐταΐρε, πρῶτων μὲν εἶναι τοιαύτη ἢ γῆ αὐτῇ ἱδεῖν, εἴ τις ἰἀνωθεν θεάω, ὥσπερ αἱ δωδεκάσκυντοι σφαίραι, ποικὴ, χρώμασιν διελμημένη, ὡν καὶ τὰ ἑνθάδε εἶναι χρώματα ὥσπερ δείγματα, οῖς δὴ οἱ γραφής καταχρώνται. ἐκεῖ δὲ πᾶσαν τὴν γῆν ἐκ τοιοῦτων εἶναι, καὶ πολὺ ἐτι ἐκ λαμπροτέρων καὶ καθαρωτέρων ἢ τούτων τὴν μὲν γὰρ ἀλουργῆ εἶναι [καὶ] θαυμαστὴν τὸ κάλλος, τὴν δὲ χρυσοεἰδῆ, τὴν δὲ ὅσῃ λευκῇ γύψῳ ὥς χιόνος λευκότεραν, καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἅλλων χρωμάτων συγκεμεμένην ὡσάιτως, καὶ ἐτι πλειώνων καὶ καλλιόνων ἢ ὅσα ἡμεῖς ἐωράκαμεν. καὶ γάρ αὐτὰ ταῦτα τὰ κοίλα αὐτῆς, ὦδας τὸ καὶ ἀέρος ἐκπλεά ὑπέ, χρώματος τι εἴδος παρέχεσθαι στίλβοντα ἐν τῇ τῶν κάλλος, -εος, τό: beauty, 2 κατα-χράομα: use, employ (+ dat.), 1 κοιλος, -η, -ου: hollow, hollowed, 5 λαμπρός, -η, -ου: bright, brilliant, 1 λευκός, -η, -ου: white, bright, brilliant, 3 παρ-έχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16 πλέων, -ου: more, greater, 17 ποικίλος, -η, -ου: varied; many-colored, 2 στίλβω: to gleam, flash, be bright, 1 συγ-κείμαι: be composed, be compounded, 6 σφαίρα: η, ball, sphere, globe, 1 υδωρ, υδατος, τό: water, 14 χιόν, χιόνος, το: snow, 7 χρυσο-εἰδῆς, -ές: of gold, like gold, 1 χρώμα, -ατος, τό: color, complexion, 9 ως-αύτως: in the same manner, just so, 4 γραφής: γραφε-ες, nom. pl. γραφεύς: e i τοιούτων: i.e. varied colors πολύ: much, far; adv. acc. (acc. of extent of degree) modifying the comparative (ἐκ) τούτων: supply missing preposition σπερ: η: in...; acc. of respect το κάλλος: in...; acc. of respect την δὲ χρυσοειδῆ: another part (is) golden την δὲ δοσ: and another part is as...as χιόνος: than...; gen. of comparision 6 ἐωράκαμεν: ἑπτα, χρώματος:...: the appearance of color
άλλων χρωμάτων ποικιλία, ὡστε ἐν τὶ αὐτῆς εἴδος συνεχές ποικίλον φαντάζεσθαι. ἐν δὲ ταύτῃ οὕσθ' τοιαύτῃ ἀνὰ λόγον τὰ φυόμενα φύεσθαι, δένδρα τε καὶ ἄνθη καὶ τοὺς καρποὺς· καὶ αὕ τὰ ὅρη ὀσαύτως καὶ τοὺς λίθους ἔχειν ἀνὰ τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον τὴν τε λειώτητα καὶ τὴν διαφάνειαν καὶ τὰ χρώματα καλλίων· ὅπως καὶ τὰ ἐνθάδε λιθίδια εἶναι ταύτα τὰ ἀγαπώμενα μόρια, σάρδια τε καὶ ἰάσπιδας καὶ σμαράγδους καὶ πάντα τὰ τοιαύτα· ἐκεῖ δὲ οὐδὲν ὃτι οὐ τοιοῦτον εἶναι καὶ ἐτο τούτων καλλίων. τὸ δ' αὐτοὶ τούτων εἶναι ὃτι ἐκεῖνοι οἱ λίθοι εἰσὶ καθαροὶ καὶ οὐ κατεδεσμένοι οὐδὲ διεφθαρμένοι ὥσπερ οἱ ἐνθάδε ὑπὸ σηπεδόνως καὶ ἀλίμης ὑπὸ τῶν δεύρω συνερρυηκότων, ἀ καὶ λίθοις καὶ γῆ καὶ τοίς ἀλλοις ζωῖσι τε

άγαπάω: to love, be fond of; satisfy, 1
αἴτιος· -α· -σων: responsible, blameworthy, 8
ἀλμή, ἥ: sea-water, brine, 2
ἀνθή, -ης, ἥ: full bloom, 1
dένδρον, τό: tree, 1
dέρο: here, to this point, hither, 7
dia-φάνεια, ἡ: transparency, 1
dia-φθείρα: to destroy, corrupt, kill, 6
eἰδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure, 17
ἐκεῖ: there, in that place, 17
ev-θάδε: here, hither, thither, 17
ζῷον, τό: a living being, animal, 6
ίαστις, ἵαστις, ἥ: jasper, 1
cαλλιών, -ους: more noble or beautiful, 7
cαρπός, ὁ: crop, fruit, benefit, 1
cατ-εθιδο: to eat up, corrode, devour, 1
λειώτης, -ητος, ἥ: smoothness, 1
λιθίδιον, τό: pebble, 1
λίθος, ὁ: a stone, 8
μόριον, τό: piece, portion, 2
ὀρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill, 2
ποικίλα, ἡ: variation, varied aspect, 1
ποικίλος, -ους: varied; many-colored, 2
σάρδιος, τό: sard, the Sardinian stone, 1
σηπεδόν, -ον, ἥ: decay, putrefaction, 2
σμαράγδος, ὁ: emerald, 1
συν-εχθής, ἐς: continuous, contiguous to, 1
συρ-ρέω: to flow together, 4
φαντάζομαι: appear, seem, become visible 1
φῶς: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14
χρώμα, -ατος, τό: color, complexion, 9
ὡς-αὐτος: in the same manner, just so, 4

subj. λιθίδια; i.e. our precious stones are but fragments of theirs
8 σάρδια· τοιαύτα: in apposition to λιθίδια
εἰ δ' οὐ τοιοῦτον: which (is) not this sort
2 τούτων: gen. comparison
καλλίων· καλλιόν(ν)α, neuter acc. pl.
tούτων: for this; subjective gen.
3 εϊ: 3p pres. εὗρ
κατεδεσμένου: pf. pass. κατ-εσθίω 110a2
dιεφθαρμένου: pf. pass. διαφθείρω, 110a2
4 ύπο...: because of...; gen. cause
5 συνερρυηκότων: pf. pple σφραγέω
λίθοις...ζωίσι...: to...; dat. ind. object
Myth of the Afterlife

καὶ φυτοὶς αἰσχ ὑπὲρ τε καὶ νόσους παρέχει. τὴν δὲ γῆν αὐτήν κεκοσμηθαί τοῦτος ἐπὶ καὶ ἔτι χρυσῷ τε καὶ ἀργύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις αὐτὸς τοιούτως. ἐκφανὴ γὰρ αὐτὰ πεφυκέναι, ὡς τα πολλὰ πλῆθει καὶ μεγάλα καὶ πανταχοῦ τῆς γῆς, ὡςτε αὐτήν ἰδεῖν εἶναι θέαμα εὐδαιμόνων θεατῶν. ἥξα δ᾽ ἐπὶ αὐτὴν εἶναι ἄλλα τα πολλὰ καὶ ἀνθρώπους, τοὺς μὲν ἐν μεσογαίᾳ οἰκοῦντας, τοὺς δὲ περὶ τὸν ἄερα ἄσπερ ἡμεῖς περὶ τὴν βαλαττᾶν, τοὺς δ᾽ ἐν νήσους ὁς περιπερεῖν τὸν ἄερα πρὸς τῇ ἱπέρῳ οὔσας· καὶ ἐνί λόγῳ, ὥσπερ ἢμῖν τὸ ὕδωρ τε καὶ ἡ βάλαττα ἐστὶ πρὸς τὴν ἠμετέραν χρέιαν, τούτῳ ἐκεῖν τὸν ἄερα, ὑμῖν ἄρη, ἐκεῖνος τὸν αἰθέρα. τᾶς δὲ ἄρας αὐτοῖς κράσιν ἔχειν τοιαύτην ὡςτε ἐκεῖνος ἀνόσους εἶναι καὶ ἐκεῖνοι.
χρόνον τε ξην πολυ πλειω των ενθάδε, και άθαλ και ακοη και
φρονησει και πασι των τοιουτοισ ήμων αφεσταναι τη αυτη
αποστασει ήπερ αηρ τε ύδατοσ αφεστηκεν και αθηρ αερος
προσ καθαροτητα. και δη και θεων αλοσ τε και ιερα αυτοισ
εναι, εν οι τω οντι οικητασ θεουσ εναι, και φήμασ τε και
μαντειασ και αισθησεις των θεων και τουατας συνουσιας
γηνυσθαι αυτοισ προσ αυτοισ: και των γε ήλιων και σεληνην
c και αστρα αρασθαι υπ' αυτων οια τυχανε οντα, και την
αλλην ευδαιμονιαν τουτων άκολουθον εναι.
και ολην μεν δη την γην ουτω πεφυκεναι και τα περι
την γην τοπουσ δ' εν αυτη εναι κατα τα έγκοιλα αυτης
κυκλω περι ολην πολλοισ, τοισ μεν βαθυυερουσ και ανα-

άθηρ, αερος m.: air, mist 16
αθήρ, -άρο ω: aether, air, sky, 4
αισθανεσις, -αιος, h: sensation, perception, 19
άκοη, h: hearing, 1
άκολουθον: to follow, 1
άλσος, -αιος, το: grove, sacred grove, 1
άναπταναιμι: to spread out, unfold, 1
άππο-στάσις, -αιος, h: distance, separation, 1
άστρον, το: a star, 5
άφ-αιστημι: to stand away from, remove; to make revolt, 3
βαθος, -εια, υ: deep, tall, 3
βεγκολος, -ον: hollow, sunken, 1
βεν-βαδε: here, hither, thither, 17
βεν-δαιμονια, h: happiness, good fortune, 2

χρονον...πολυ πλειω: for...; acc.
duration, πλειωνα is acc. sg.
tων ενθάδε: gen. comparison
δυναι...τοιουτοι: in...; acc. of respect
ημων: gen. of separation
αφεσταναι τη αυτη αποστάσει: that (they) are separated by the same distance; i.e. are superior in the same way, pf. inf. αφ-ιστημι and dat. of degree of difference
ηπερ: by which (distance); dat., degree
υδατος, αερος: from... gen. of separation
αφεστηκεν: is separated; pf. αφ-ιστημι
προς...: in regard to...
και δη και: especially; ‘and indeed also’

Ηλιος, ω: the sun, 7
ιερος, -ης, ων: holy, divine; temple 2
καθαροτης, ω: purity, cleanliness, 1
κυκλος, ω: a circle, round, ring, 10
μαντεια, h: oracle, prophecy, 1
οικητης, ω: inhabitant, dweller, 1
ολος, -ους, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 9
πλευρον, -ον: more, greater, 17
σεληνη, h: the moon, 2
συν-ουσια, h: association, company, 4
υβος, υδατος, το: water, 14
φημη, h: utterance or saying (of the gods), 1
φρονησις, -αιος, h: intelligence, wisdom, 15
φυω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14

αυτοισ εναι: they have; dat. of possession
το δυτι: really, actually; pple as adv.
αυτοισ: dat. of interest, the inhabitants
προς αυτοισ: to them; i.e. to the gods
και...γε...κα...κα: yes, and...and...and
τυγχανει δυτα: they happen to (really) be
ακολουθον: the following; predicate
μεν δη: certainly in fact; S 2900
περικεναι: are by nature thus; pf. φυω
τα περι...γην: things around the earth
κατα...: in...; ‘over’ distributive sense
κυκλω... in a circle round the whole
τοισ μεν...: some (are)...; add verb
ανα-πεπταμενους: pf. pass. pple, i.e. wider
πεπταμένους μᾶλλον ἡ ἐν ὧ ἡμεῖς οἴκονεν, τοὺς δὲ βαθυτέρους ὅντας τὸ χάσμα αὐτοὺς ἐλαττον ἐχειν τοῦ παρ’ ἡμῶν
d τόπου, ἦστι δ’ οὐς καὶ βραχυτέρους τῷ βάθει τοῦ ἐνδάδε εἶναι καὶ πλατυτέρους. τούτους δὲ πάντας ὑπὸ γῆν εἰς ἀλλήλους συντετρήσθαι τε πολλαχῇ καὶ κατὰ στενότερα καὶ εὐφύτερα καὶ διεζόνους ἐχειν, ἦ πολὺ μὲν ὑδωρ ῥεῖν ἐξ ἀλλήλων εἰς ἀλλήλους ὁσπερ εἰς κρατήρας, καὶ ἀενάνων
pοταμῶν ὁμίχλανα μεγέθη ὑπὸ τὴν γῆν καὶ θερμῶν ὑδάτων καὶ ψυχρῶν, πολὺ δὲ πῦρ καὶ πυρὸς μεγάλους ποταμῶν,
pολλοὺς δὲ ὑγροῦ πηλοῦ καὶ καθαρωτέρου και βορβορωδεῖ
e στέρου, ὁσπερ ἐν Σικελίᾳ οἱ πρὸ τοῦ ρύκακος πηλοῦ ῥέοντες
ποταμοὶ καὶ αὐτῶς ὁ ῥυαξ. ἦν δὴ καὶ ἐκάστους τοὺς τόπους

6 τοὺς δὲ...όντας: others being...; pple τιμί
7 τὸ χάσμα...ἐλαττον: in contrast to ἄναπαπταμένους above
   αὐτοὺς: themselves; intensive with τοὺς δὲ
   τοῦ παρ(α) ἡμῖν: than the place where we
   live; gen. of comparison; παρὰ is similar to apud or chez, see 109d4, 110a7, 110a8
6.1 ἦστι δ’ οὐς: and there are (those) whom; or just ‘some,’ a common idiom (S 2514)
   τῷ βάθει: in...; dat. of respect
   τοῦ ἐνδάδε: than...; gen. comparison
2 ὑπὸ γῆν: beneath...; acc. place to which
3 συντετρήσθαι: pf. pass. συντετράνω
   καὶ κατὰ...καὶ κατὰ...: both through and

πλατύς, -εὶα, -ύ: wide, broad, flat, 3
πολλα-χι: in many places; many times, 1
ποταμός, ὁ: river, stream 8
πρὸ: before, in front; in place of (+ gen.), 13
πῦρ, πυρός, τό: fire, 14
ῥέω: to flow, run, stream, 10
ῥύαξ, ῥύακος, ὁ: lava flow, rushing stream, 3
Σικελία, ἡ: Sicily, 1
στενός, -ῆς, -ῶν: narrow, 1
συν-τετράνω: to join by channels, 1
ὑγρός, -ά, -όν: moist, wet, 4
ὑδωρ, ὑδατος, τό: water, 14
χάσμα, -ατος, τό: chasm, hollow, gulf 3
ψυχρός, -ά, -όν: cold, chill, frigid, 10

through...; i.e. channels
4 ἦ: where; or ‘by which way,’ relative adv.
6 καὶ θερμῶν...καὶ: both of...and of...; gen. of
   quality (or material) with ποταμοῦν
8 πολλοὺς (ποταμοῦς): and many (rivers)...
καὶ...καὶ:...both...and; i.e. some rivers
   had purer mud and others were muddier
12 πρὸ τοῦ ρύκακος: before the lava flow
   πηλοῦ: gen. of quality with οἱ...ποταμοῖ;
2 οὖν δὴ...τῶν πληροῦσαι: of which very
   things (i.e. water, fire, mud) in fact each
   region are filled; relative pronoun is a
   partitive gen. of the passsive infinitive
   πληροῦσαι
πληροφορθαί, ὡς ἂν ἐκάστοις τύχῃ ἐκάστοτε ἡ περιρροὴ γινομένη. ταῦτα δὲ πάντα κινεῖ ἄνω καὶ κάτω ὀσπερ αἰώραν τωά ἐνούσαι ἐν τῇ γῇ ἐστι δὲ ἄρα αὐτὴ ἡ αἰώρα διὰ φύσιν τοιάνδε τωά. ἐν τι τῶν χασμάτων τῆς γῆς ἀλλως τε μέγιστον τυχάνει ὃν καὶ διαμερέστηκε τετρημένον δι᾽ ὠλὸς τῆς γῆς, τούτῳ ὀπέρ ὁ Ὄμηρος ἔλπις, λέγων αὐτόν.

“τῆλε μάλ’, ἃς βάθιστον ὑπὸ χθονὸς ἐστὶ βερεθρόν. ὁ καὶ ἄλλοθι καὶ ἐκεῖνος καὶ ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῶν ποιητῶν Τάρταρον κεκλήκασιν. εἰς γὰρ τούτῳ τὸ χάμα συφρέουσι τε πάντες οἱ ποταμοὶ καὶ ἐκ τούτου πάλιν ἐκρέουσιν· γίγνονται δὲ ἐκαστοὶ τοιούτοι δὶ ὀιας ἂν καὶ τῆς γῆς βέρεμον. ἥ δὲ αἰτία ἐστὶν τοῦ ἐκρείνει τε ἐντεῦθεν καὶ εἰσερέων πάντα τὰ βάθημα, ὃ τι πυθμένα ὅπερ ἔχει οὐδὲ βάσιν τὸ ύγρόν τούτο.”

αἰώρα, ἡ: swing, halter, oscillation, 2
ἀλλοθι: otherwise, in another place, elsewhere, 7
ἄλλος: otherwise, in another way, 14
ἄνω: up, above, 6
βαθύς, -εία, -ύ: deep, tall, 3
βάσις, ἡ: bottom, foundation; pedestal, 1
βερεθρόν, τό: pit, gulf, 1
διαμπερές: right through; continuously, 1
eισπρόω: to stream into, flow in, 4
ἐκέρω: to flow out, 2
ἐκάστοτε: on each occasion, each time, 4
ἐνεμί: to be in or within, 8
ἐντεῦθεν: from here, from there, 3
ὅ-χι: where, whither, 1
κάτω: downwards, below, beneath, 6
κινέω: to set in motion, move, 3
μάλα: very, very much, exceedingly, 10
μέγιστος, -ητος, -ον: very big, greatest, 6

3 ὡς ἂν...γιγνομένη: as the circling stream happens to come to each on each occasion
4 ὀσπερ αἰώραν: as if some oscillation...; αἰώραν denotes a swinging rope but here the activity itself: oscillation or fluctuation
5 διὰ: according to...; ‘on account of...’
6 ἄλλος τε...καὶ...τετρημένον: both in other respects and (by) being bored...; pf. pass.
112a1 τυγχάνει δὴ: pple. εἰμί, see p. 20
3 τῇλε...βερεθρόν: Iliad 8.14

ολός, -ητος, -ον: whole, entire, complete, 9
"Ομηρος, ὁ: Homer, 3
περιρροή, ἡ: a circling stream, 1
πληρόω: to fill, fill up of (gen.) 4
ποιητής, οῦ, ὁ: maker, creator, poet, 6
ποταμός, ὁ: river, stream 8
πυθμήν, -ένος ὁ: bottom, base, 2
ρείμα, -ατος, τό: stream, current, 5
ρέω: to flow, run, stream, 10
συρρέω: to flow together, 4
Τάρταρος, ὁ: Tartarus, 7
tετραίνω: to bore or pierce through, 1
τῇλε: at a distance, far off, 1
τύχη, ἡ: chance, luck, fortune, 5
ὑγρός, -ά, -όν: liquid, moist, wet, 4
φύσις, -εως, ἡ: nature, character; form, 11
χάσμα, -ατος, τό: chasm, hollow, gulf 3
χθών, χθονός, ἡ: earth, ground, 1

βάθιστον: superlative adj. βαθύς
4 ὁ καὶ ἄλλοθι: which in fact elsewhere; i.e. in other poetry; καὶ is adverbial
5 κεκλήκασιν: pf. καλέω with a double acc.
7 τοιοῦτοι δι(α) οίας...: the sort through whatever sort of earth they actually flow; i.e. they assume the qualities of the earth,
112b1 τοῦ ἐκρείνει...εἰσερέω: of...both flowing out and flowing in; βάθμα is acc. subject
2 τὸ ύγρόν τούτο: this liquid matter; subj.
ἀιωρεῖται δή καὶ κυμαίνει ἁνώ καὶ κάτω, καὶ ὁ ἀήρ καὶ τὸ πνεῦμα τὸ περὶ αὐτὸ ταῦτα ποιεῖ· συνέπεται γὰρ αὐτῷ καὶ ὅταν εἰς τὸ ἐπὶ ἐκείνα τῆς γῆς ὀρμήσῃ καὶ ὅταν εἰς τὸ ἐπὶ τάδε, καὶ ὁσπερ τῶν ἀναπνεύοντων ἀεὶ ἐκπνεῦ τε καὶ ἀναπνεῖ ῥέον τὸ πνεῦμα, οὕτω καὶ ἐκεῖ συναιρούμενον τῷ ὑγρῷ τὸ πνεῦμα δεινοῦς τινας ἀνέμους καὶ ἀμηχανίαν παρέχεται καὶ εἰσὶν καὶ ἐξίον. ὅταν τε οὖν ὑποχωρήσῃ τὸ ὕδωρ εἰς τὸν τόπον τὸν δὴ κάτω καλούμενον, τοῖς κατ’ ἐκείνα τὰ ῥεύματα διὰ τῆς γῆς εἰσπρέπε τε καὶ πληροί αὐτὰ ῥόπερ οἱ ἐπαντλούντες· ὅταν τε αὖ ἐκείθεν μὲν ἀπολίπῃ, δεύο δὲ ὀρμήσῃ, τὰ ἔνθαδε πληροὶ αὐθίς, τὰ δὲ πληρωθέντα ῥεὶ διὰ τῶν ὀχτῶν καὶ διὰ τῆς γῆς, καὶ εἰς τοὺς τόπους ἐκάστα ἄφυκνομενα, εἰς οὖς ἐκάστοις ὀδοποιήται, θαλάττας τε καὶ λίμνας

3 δὴ: accordingly; ‘then,’ resumptive, S 2846
4 τὸ περὶ αὐτὸ: i.e. ὕγρόν, modifies πνεῦμα ταὐτόν ποιεῖ: do the same; plural subject αὐτὸς: it, the liquid, τῷ ὑγρόν
5 ὀρμήσῃ: it moves; ἀν + aor. subj. ὀρμάω
6 εἰς τὸ... εἰς τὸ ἐπὶ...: to that (part) of the earth over there and to that (part) over here
7 τῶν ἀναπνεύοντων: of those breathing in
8 δέων: neuter pple
9 καὶ εἰσίον καὶ ἐξίον: both....and...; neut. pple

τότε ὀφθαλμῆσαι: whenever...; ἀν + 3s aor. subj., indefinite temporal
2 τὸν... κάτω καλούμενον: called ‘the lower’
3 τοῖς κατ’ ἐκείνα τὰ ῥεύματα ἐλεφῆ: it flows through the earth into those (parts) in the streams there; dat. of compound verb, compare l. 5 above
5 τὰ ἔνθαδε (ῥεύματα): streams here; see c2
7 εἰς οὖς... ὀδοποιήται into which it is made passable for each river; antecedent τόπους
καὶ ποταμοὺς καὶ κρήνας πουεὶ· ἐντεύθεν δὲ πάλιν δυόμενα κατὰ τῆς γῆς, τὰ μὲν μακροτέρους τόπους περιελθόντα καὶ πλείους, τὰ δὲ ἐλάττους καὶ βραχυτέρους, πάλιν εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον ἐμβάλλει, τὰ μὲν πολὺ κατωτέρω <ἡ> ἢ ἐπηνυτλεῖτο, τὰ δὲ ὀλγον· πάντα δὲ ὑποκάτω εἰσφεὶ τῆς ἐκροῆς, καὶ ἕνα μὲν καταντικρὸν <ἡ> ἢ εἴσφει έξεπεσεν, ἐνὶ δὲ κατὰ τὸ αὐτὸ μέρος· ἐστὶ δὲ ἀ παντάπασιν κύκλῳ περιελθόντα, ἢ ἄπαξ ἢ καὶ πλεονάκις περιελιθέντα περὶ τῆς γῆς ὀσπερ οἱ ὀφεις, εἰς τὸ δυνατὸν κάτω καθέντα πάλιν ἐμβάλλει. δυνατὸν δὲ ἐστὶν ἐκατέρωσε μέχρι τοῦ μέσου καθιέναι, πέρα δ᾽ οὐ· ἄναντες γὰρ ἀμφοτέρους τοῖς ῥεῖσι πολὺς ἐκατέρωθεν γίγνεται μέρος.

8 δυόμενα: supply τὰ ἰεύματα κατά... below...
d1 τὰ μὲν (ἰεύματα)...τὰ δὲ: some...others...
2 πλείους, ἐλάττους: πλείο(υ)ες, ἐλάττουνες
3 τὰ μὲν (ἰεύματα) πολύ...τὰ δὲ: some much below where they were pumped up and others a little (below); πολὺ, ὀλγον are acc. of extent by degree; ἢ is a relative adv.
5 ἕνα μὲν...ἔνια δὲ: some streams...others ἢ εἰσφεὶ: right opposite where; relative adv.
κρήνη, ἡ: spring, fountain, 1
κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 10
μακρός, ὁ, ὁν: long, far, distant, large, 4
μέρος, -εσ, τό: a part, share, portion, 4
μέσος, -ην, -ον: middle, in the middle of, 8
μέχρι: up to; until, as long as (+ gen.), 5
ὁλίγος, -ης, -ου: few, little, small, 15
ὁφις, ὀφεις, ὁ: serpent, snake, 1
παντά-πασι: all in all, absolutely 15
πέρα: further, beyond, 1
περιελίπτα: to wind, roll around, 4
περιερχόματι: to go around, 6
πλεονάκις: more often or frequently, 1
πλέων, -ου: more, greater, 17
ποταμός, ὁ: river, stream 8
ῥέυμα, -ατος, τό: stream, current, 5
Τάρταρος, ὁ: Tartarus, 7
ὑπο-κάτω: below, under (+ gen.), 1

6 κατὰ τὸ αὐτὸ μέρος: over the same side
ἐστὶ δὲ ἢ... there are (those) which; S 2513
7 περιελιθέντα: aor. pass. pple. περιελίπτω
8 εἰς τὸ δυνατὸν καθεντα: rushing below as far as possible; aor. pple καθιενι
εἰ δυνατὸν ἐστιν: and it is possible...
καθιενι: to rush down; inf. καθιενι
2 ἄναντες...μέρος: for a steep part rises from each side (of the earth) for both streams


τὰ μὲν οὖν δὴ ἀλλα πολλὰ τε καὶ μεγάλα καὶ παντοταπά

5 ῶεύματα ἐστὶν: τυχανóει δ' ἄρα δύτα ἐν τούτως τοῖς πολλοῖς
tέτταρ' ἀττα ῶεύματα, ὑν τὸ μὲν μέγιστον καὶ ἐξωτάτω ρέουν
περί κύκλω ὁ καλούμενος Ὄκεανός ἐστιν, τούτον δὲ καταν-
τικρύ καὶ ἐναντίως ρέων Ἀχέρων, ὅς δὲ ἐρῆμων τε τόπων

113 μὲν καὶ δὴ καὶ ὑπὸ γῆν ρέων εἰς τὴν λίμνην ἀφικνεῖται

tὴν Ἀχερουσίαδα, οὐ αἱ τῶν τετελευτηκότων ψυχαῖ τῶν
πολλῶν ἀφικνοῦνται καὶ τινὰς εἰμαρμένους χρόνους μεῖνασαι,
αἱ μὲν μακροτέρους, αἱ δὲ βραχυτέρους, πάλιν ἐκκυμνοῦνται
eἰς τᾶς τῶν ζώων γενέσεις. τρίτος δὲ ποταμὸς τούτων κατὰ
μέσον ἐκβάλλει, καὶ ἐγγὺς τῆς ἐκβολῆς ἐκκύπτει εἰς τόπον

Αχερουσίας, -άδος: Acherusian (fem. adj.), 4
Ἀχέρως, Ἀχέροντος ὁ: Acheron (river), 2
βραχὺς, -εία, -ο: short, 3
γένεσις, -εως, ἦ: coming-to-be, generation, 16
ἐγγύς: near (+ gen.); adv. nearby, 5
eὐμαρμένος, -ης, -ου: destined, allotted, 3
ἐκβάλλω: to throw out of, cast away, 2
ἐκβολή, ἦ: outlet; issue, ejection, 1
ἐκπέμπω: to send out, 1
ἐκπίπτω: to fall out, be driven out, 3
ἐκτατόμω: outermost (superlative of ἔξω), 1
ἐρημος, -ου: alone, desolate, bereft of (gen) 2
ζῷον, τό: a living being, animal, 6
καταντικρύ: right opposite, 4
κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 10
λίμνη, ἦ: a lake, 8
μακρός, ὁ, ὁν: long, far, distant, large, 4
μένω: to stay, remain, 8
μέσος, -ης, -ου: middle, in the middle of, 8
παντο-δαπτός, -ης, -ον: of every kind or sort, 3
ποταμός, ὁ: river, stream 8
ρέμια, -ατος, τό: stream, current, 5
ῥέω: to flow, run, stream, 10
τέτταρες, -α: four, 2
τρίτος, -ης, -ου: the third, 1
ὑκεανός, ὁ: Oceanus, 1

4 μὲν οὖν δὴ: certainly then; resumptive use of οὖν δὴ (GP 470), μὲν corresponds to δέ
5 τύχανει: pple εἰμί, see p. 20
ἀττα: some; alternate to indefinite τινά
6 δέων: neut. sg. pple
7 περί κύκλω: around in a circle
καλούμενος: what is called; or ‘so-named’
τούτου δὲ καταντικρύ: opposite this
ἐναντίως: i.e. in the opposite direction
113α1 καὶ δὴ καὶ: especially, in particular;
‘and indeed also’
μέγαν πυρὶ πολλῷ καόμενον, καὶ λίμνην ποιεῖ μείζω τῆς παρ’ ἡμῶν θαλάττης, ζέουσαν ὄδατος καὶ πηλοῦ ἐνεδέρεν δὲ χωρεί κύκλῳ θολερὸς καὶ πηλώδης, περιελιθτόμενος δὲ τῇ γῇ ἀλλοσὺ τέ ἀφικνεῖται καὶ παρ’ ἐσχατὰ τῆς Ἀχερουσίαδος λίμνης, οὐ συμμειγνύμενος τῷ ὄδατι περιελιθεῖς δὲ πολλάκις ὑπὸ γῆς ἐμβάλλει κατωτέρω τοῦ Ταρτάρου ὁδὸς δ’ ἐστὶν ὁν ἐπονομάζουσιν Πυριφλεγέθοντα, ο郤 καὶ οἱ ῥύακες ἀποστάσιμα ἀναφυσῶσιν ὅπῃ δὲν τῇ πύλαι τῆς γῆς. τούτῳ δὲ αὐ καταντικρύ ὅ τέταρτος ἐκτίπτει εἰς τότον πρῶτον δεινὸν τε καὶ ἄγριον, ὡς λέγεται, χρώμα δ’ ἔχοντα ὄλον οἶον ὁ κυανός, ὅ δη ἐπονομάζουσιν Στύγιον, καὶ τὴν λίμνην ἥν c ποιεῖ ὁ ποταμὸς ἐμβάλλαν, Στύγια: ὁ δ’ ἐμπεσὼν ἐνταῦθα

7 μείζος: μείζον(ν)α, acc. sg. τῆς θαλάττης: than…; gen. comparison παρ(ὰ) ἡμῖν: where we live; i.e. the Mediterranean sea; see 109d4 and 110a7-8 b1 κύκλῳ: in a circle; dat. of manner τῇ γῇ: around in the earth; dat. compound 2 παρὰ ἐσχατὰ: to…; place to which συμμειγνύμενος: mid. συμ-μίγνυμι 3 περιελιθεῖς: aor. pass. pple peri-ελίττω

λίμνῃ: a lake, 8 ὅλος, -ῆ,-ον: whole, entire, complete, 9 ὅπῃ: where; in what way, how, 11 περιελιθτῷ: to wind, roll around, 4 πηλῶς, ὁ: mud, clay, earth, 4 πηλώδης, -ες: of clay, muddy with clay, 1 πολλάκις: many times, often, frequently, 14 ποταμὸς, ὁ: river, stream 8 πῦρ, πυρός, τὸ: fire, 14 Πυριφλεγέθον, -οντος, ὁ: Pyriphlegethon, 4 ῥύαξ, ῥύακος, ὁ: rushing stream, torrent, 3 Στύγιος, -ης, -ον: Stygian, of Styx, 1 Στύξ, Στύγος ἡ: Styx (river), 1 συμ-μίγνυμι: mix with, commingle with 1 Τάρταρος, ὁ: Tartarus, 7 τέταρτος, -ης, -ον: fourth, 1 ὑδωρ, ὑδατος, τὸ: water, 14 χρώμα, -ατος, τὸ: color, complexion, 9 χωρέω: to go, come; have room for, 4

4 κατωτέρῳ τοῦ Ταρτάρου: lower down in Tartarus; partitive gen., not comparison 5 οὗ καὶ: whose...in fact; καὶ is adverbial ἀποστάσιμα: fragments (of it); acc. pl. 6 τ}'
καὶ δεινὸς δυνάμεις λαβὼν ἐν τῷ ὕδατι, δός κατὰ τῆς γῆς,  
περιελπτόμενος χωρεῖ ἐναντίος τῷ Πυριφλεγέθοντι καὶ  
ἂπαντὰ ἐν τῇ Ἀχερουσίαδι λίμη ἐξ ἐναντίας· καὶ οὐδὲ τὸ  
toῦτον ὕδωρ οὐδεὶς μείγνυται, ἀλλὰ καὶ οὕτως κύκλῳ περιελ-
θὼν ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον ἐναντίος τῷ Πυριφλεγέθοντι·  
όνομα δὲ τοῦτῳ ἐστὶν, ὡς οἱ ποιηταὶ λέγουσιν, Κωκυτός.

d) τούτων δὲ οὕτως πεφυκότων, ἐπειδὰν ἀφίκονται οἱ τετε-
λευτηκότες εἰς τὸν τόπον οἱ δὲ δαίμον έκάστον κομίζει,  
πρῶτον μὲν διεὶκάσαντο οἱ τε καλῶς καὶ οὐσίως βιῶσαντες  
καὶ οἱ μη. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἄν δόξωσι μέσως βεβιωκέναι, πορε-
θέντες ἐπὶ τὸν Ἀχέροντα, ἀναβάντες ἄ δὴ αὐτοῖς ὀχήματά  
έστιν, ἐπὶ τούτων ἀφικονούνται εἰς τὴν λίμην, καὶ ἐκεῖ

άνα-βαίνω: to go up, climb, mount, 1  
ἀπ-αντάω: to meet, encounter, 1  
Ἀχερουσίας, -άδος: Acherusian (fem. adj.), 4  
Ἀχέροντας: Acheron (river), 2  
βίω: to live, 4  
δαίμων, -ονος, ὁ: a divine being or spirit, 3  
δεν: -η,-δν: terrible; wondrous, clever, 6  
δια-δικάζω: to judge, submit for trial, 2  
δύναμις, -εας, ἡ: power, wealth, strength, 3  
δῦω: enter, make sink, sink, plunge, 3  
ἐκαί: there, in that place, 17  
ἐμ-βάλλω: throw in, put in; attack, 5  
καλῶς: well; beautifully, 11  
κομίζω: to carry, convey; travel, journey, 2  
κύκλος, ὁ: a circle, round, ring, 10  
Κωκυτός, ὁ: Cocytus, 2  
λίμνη, ἡ: a lake, 8  

μέσως: moderately, in a middle way, 1  
μίγνυμι: to mix, mix up, mingle, 1  
νομα, -ας, τό: name, 7  
οὐσίας, -ας, -ον: hallowed, sacred, ordained, 4  
ἀκαστος, τό: vehicle, raft, 2  
περι-ελίττω: to roll, roll around, 4  
περι-ήχομαι: to go around, 6  
ποιητής, οὗ, ὁ: maker, creator, poet, 6  
πορεύομαι: to travel, journey, march, 7  
Πυριφλεγέθοντι,-ουτος, ὁ: Pyrophlegethon, 4  
Τάρταρος, ὁ: Tartarus, 7  
τελευτάω: to end, complete, finish; die, 31  
ὑδωρ, ὑδατος, τό: water, 14  
φύω: to bring forth, beget, engender; am by nature, 14  
χωρέω: to go, come; have room for, 4

άφίκονται: aor. subj. in an indefinite relative clause  
τετελευτηκότες: pf. pple τελευτάω (die)  
ο: to where; relative adverb  
διεδίκασαντο: offer themselves for judgment; aor. mid.  
καλῶς: well  
οι μη (καλῶς...βιῶσαντες): add pple  
καί οἱ μὲν: those who...; answered in 113c1  
δὲ δόξωσι: they seem; aor. subj. δοκέω  
βεβιωκέναι: pf. inf. βεβάω  
πορευθέντες: aor. deponent pple  
ἐπὶ τούτων: upon these (rafts)
οἵκονσί τε καὶ καθαιρόμενοι τῶν τε ἀδικημάτων διδόντες
dίκας ἀπολύονται, εἰ τίς τι ἢδίκηκεν, τῶν τε ἐνεργειῶν
tιμᾶς φέρονται κατὰ τὴν ἀξίαν ἕκαστος· οἱ δὲ ἀν δόξωσιν ἐ
ἀνάτως ἔχειν διὰ τὰ μεγέθη τῶν ἀμαρτημάτων, ἡ ἱερο-
συλίας πολλάς καὶ μεγάλας ἤ φόνους ἀδίκους καὶ παρανόμους
πολλοὺς ἐξειραγμένοι ἢ ἄλλα ὡσα τοιαῦτα τυγχάνει ὄντα,
tούτους δὲ ἡ προσήκουσα μοῖρα ῥίπτει εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον,
ὅθεν ὁποτε ἐκβαίνοντω. οἱ δὲ ἰάσμα μὲν μεγάλα δὲ
dόξωσιν ἡμαρτηκέναι ἀμαρτήματα, οἶνον πρὸς πατέρα ἡ μη-
tέρα ὑπ’ ὀργῆς βιαῖον τι πράξαντες, καὶ μεταμέλουν αὐτοῖς
tὸν ἄλλον βίον βιῶσιν, ἢ ἀνδροφόνοι τοιοῦτω τινὶ ἄλλῳ
τρόπῳ γένωνται, τούτους δὲ ἐμπεσεῖν μὲν εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον

ἀ-δικέω: to be unjust, do wrong, injure, 3
ἀ-δίκημα, -ατος, τό: injustice, wrongdoing, 1
ἀ-δίκος, -ον: unrighteous, unjust, 6
ἀμαρτάνω: miss the mark, fail, do wrong, 1
ἀμαρτήματα, -ατος, τό: wrong, failure, fault, 2
ἀν-φόνος, -ον: man-slaying; homicide, 2
ἀν-ἀτος, -ον: incurable, incorrigible, 1
ἀξίος, -α, -ον: worthy of, deserving of, 15
ἀπο-λύω: to loosen up or from, release, 2
βίαιος, -α, -ον: forcible, violent, 1
βίος: to live, 4
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
δίκη, ἡ: justice; lawsuit, trial; penalty, 11
ἐκ-βαίνω: to step out, disembark, 5
ἐμ-πίπτω: to fall in, fall upon; attack, 3
ἐξ-αργάζομαι: accomplish, achieve, commit 1
ἐκ-εργασία, ἡ: good deed, kindness, 1
ἴασιμος, -ον: curable, 1

7 καθαιρόμενοι: passive pple
τῶν ἀδικημάτων: from…; gen. separation
tε…τε…: both…and
dιδόντες δίκας: paying the penalties; idiom
8 ἡδικηκεν: pf., τι is an inner acc.
c1 φέρονται: they carry off; mid. i.e. gain
κατὰ τὴν ἀξίαν ἕκαστος: each according to merit; sg. inf. very verb is plural
οἱ δὲ: but others who; in reply to 113d4
2 ἀνάτως, έχειν: ἔχω + adv., see p. 7
4 ἐξειραγμένοι: pf. mid. ἐξ-εργάζομαι

Ἡμαρτηκέναι ἀμαρτήματα: to have committed wrongs; pf. inf. and cognate acc.
οὐν: for example; ‘in respect to such’
πρὸς…: against
5 τούτους: i.e these bad souls
ὁ δὲ: but others who; in reply to 113d4,e1
6 ἡμαρτηκέναι ἀμαρτημάτα: to have committed wrongs; pf. inf. and cognate acc.
οὐν: for example; ‘in respect to such’
πρὸς…: against
7 ἀποστῆται: they carry off; mid. i.e. gain
κατὰ τὴν ἀξίαν ἕκαστος: each according to merit; sg. inf. very verb is plural
οἱ δὲ: but others who; in reply to 113d4
2 ἀνάτως, έχειν: ἔχω + adv., see p. 7
4 ἐξειραγμένοι: pf. mid. ἐξ-εργάζομαι

Πρὸς…: against
114a1 ὑπ’(ὁ): gen. of cause
2 τοιοῦτω…τρόπῳ: in…; dat. of manner
3 τούτους: i.e these souls
ἐμπεσεῖν: aor. inf. ἐμπίπττω
ἀνάγκη, ἐμπεσόντας δὲ αὐτοὺς καὶ ἐνιαυτὸν ἐκεῖ γενομένους ἐκβάλλει τὸ κύμα, τοὺς μὲν ἀνδροφόνους κατὰ τὸν Κωκυτόν, τοὺς δὲ πατραλοίας καὶ μητραλοίας κατὰ τὸν Πυριφλεγέθοντα· ἐπειδὰν δὲ φερόμενοι γένωνται κατὰ τὴν λίμνην τὴν Ἀχερουσιάδα, ἐνταύθα βοῶσι τε καὶ καλοῦσιν, οἱ μὲν οὗς ἀπέκτειναν, οἱ δὲ οὓς ὤβρισαν, καλέσαντες δὲ ἰκετεύουσιν καὶ δέονται εἶσαι ἐκβηναι εἰς τὴν λίμνην καὶ δέξασθαι, καὶ εὰν μὲν πείσωσι, ἐκβαίνουσι τε καὶ λήγουσι τῶν κακῶν, εἰ δὲ μὴ, φέρονται αὐθις εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον καὶ ἐκεῖθεν πάλιν εἰς τοὺς ποταμοὺς, καὶ ταῦτα πάσχοντες οὐ πρότερον παῦνται πρὶν ἄν πείσωσιν οὓς ἢδίκησαν· αὐτὴ γὰρ ἡ δίκη ὑπὸ τῶν δικαστῶν αὐτοῖς ἐτάχθη. οἱ δὲ δὴ ἂν δόξωσιν ἐνταύθα: here, hither, there, thither, then, 5 ἰκετεύω: to beseech, beg, 1 κύμα, -ατος, τό: wave, billow; flood, 1 Κωκυτός, ὁ: Cocytus, 2 λήγω: to leave off, cease, 1 λίμνη: a lake, 8 μητρ-αλοιῆς, -οι, ὁ: matricide, 1 πατρ-αλοιῆς, -ου, ὁ: patricide, 1 παῦσι: to stop, make cease, 6 ποταμός, ὁ: river, stream 8 Πυριφλεγέθον, -οῦτος, ὁ: Pyrophlegethon, 4 σφεῖτ: they (reflexive), 4 ταράττω: to trouble, stir, agitate, 6 Τάρταρος, ὁ: Tartarus, 7 τάττω: to post, arrange, marshall, 2 ὑβρίζω: assault, outrage (against), maltreat, 1

α-δικέω: to be unjust, do wrong, injure, 3 ἀνδροφόνος, -ον: man-slaying; homicide, 2 ἀπο-κτείνω: to kill, slay, 5 αὐθις: back again, later, 9 Ἀχερουσιάς, ἀδός: Acherusian (fem. adj.), 4 βοῶσι: to cry aloud, to shout, 3 δέομαι: lack, need, want; ask for (+ gen.) 7 δικαστής, οὗ: a juror, judge, 5 δίκη, ἡ: justice; lawsuit, trial; penalty, 11 ἔλατο: to permit, allow, let be, suffer, 9 ἐκβαίνω: to step out, disembark, 5 ἐκβάλλω: to throw out of, cast away, 2 ἐκάτι: there, in that place, 17 ἐκ-δένει: thence, from that place, 3 ἐμ-πίπτω: to fall in, fall upon; attack, 3 ἐνιαυτός, ὁ: long period of time, year, 1 ἐνταύθα: here, hither, there, thither, then, 5 ἰκετεύω: to beseech, beg, 1 κύμα, -ατος, τό: wave, billow; flood, 1 Κωκυτός, ὁ: Cocytus, 2 λήγω: to leave off, cease, 1 λίμνη, ἡ: a lake, 8 μητρ-αλοιῆς, -οι, ὁ: matricide, 1 πατρ-αλοιῆς, -ου, ὁ: patricide, 1 παῦσι: to stop, make cease, 6 ποταμός, ὁ: river, stream 8 Πυριφλεγέθον, -οῦτος, ὁ: Pyrophlegethon, 4 σφεῖτ: they (reflexive), 4 ταράττω: to trouble, stir, agitate, 6 Τάρταρος, ὁ: Tartarus, 7 τάττω: to post, arrange, marshall, 2 ὑβρίζω: assault, outrage (against), maltreat, 1

ἀνάγκη: (it is) necessary ἐμπεσόντας: aor. pple ἐμπίπτω ἐνιαυτῶν: for...; acc. duration of time τοὺς μὲν...τοὺς δὲ: those...but those... κατὰ: down the...; acc. place to which φερόμενοι γένωντα: they come to be carried along; indefinite temporal clause τῶν κακῶν: neut. pl. gen. separation εἰ δὲ μὴ: i.e. they do not persuade πρότερον: comparative adv. πρὶν...πείσωσιν: until...; aor. subj. πείθω 6 ἐτάχθη: 3s aor. pass. τάττω 6 ὑβρίζω: assault, outrage (against), maltreat, 1

4 ἀνάγκη: (it is) necessary ἐμπεσόντας: aor. pple ἐμπίπτω ἐνιαυτῶν: for...; acc. duration of time 5 τοὺς μὲν...τοὺς δὲ: those...but those... κατὰ: down the...; acc. place to which 7 φερόμενοι γένωντα: they come to be carried along; indefinite temporal clause (ἀν + aor. subj.), pple as predicate (S 2091) 8 8 οἱ μὲν...οἱ δὲ...: some (calling)...others (calling)... οὖς...: (those) whom...; supply an antecedent as object of calling b1 δέονται: ask (them) to...
διαφερόντως πρὸς τὸ ὅσιός βιώναι, οὕτως ἐώς οἱ τῶν μὲν
τῶν τόπων τῶν ἐν τῇ γῇ ἐλευθεροῦμενοὶ τε καὶ ἀπαλλαττό-
μενοι ἄσπερ δεσμωτηρίων, ἀνὼ δὲ εἰς τὴν καθαρὰν οἰκήσων
ε ἄφικνομενοι καὶ ἐπὶ γῆς οἰκίζομενοι. τοῦτων δὲ αὐτῶν οἱ
φιλοσοφία ἰκανῶς καθηράμενοι ἂνευ τε σωμάτων ζῶσι τὸ
παράπαν εἰς τὸν ἐπεπτά χρόνον, καὶ εἰς οἰκήσεις ἐτι τοῦτων
καλλίους ἄφικνονται, ὁς οὔτε ράδιον δηλώσαι οὔτε ὁ χρόνος
ἰκανός ἐν τῷ παρόντι. ἀλλὰ τούτων δὴ ἔνεκα χρῆ ὧν διεληλύ-
θαμεν, ὃ Σωμία, πᾶν ποιεῖν ὡστε ἁρετῆς καὶ φρονήσεως ἐν
τῷ βίῳ μετασχείν καλὸν γὰρ τὸ ἄθλον καὶ ἡ ἔλπις μεγάλη.
τὸ μὲν οὖν ταῦτα διωχυρίσασθαι οὕτως ἔχειν ὡς ἔγῳ δ
διελήλυθα, οὗ πρέπει νοῦν ἔχοντι ἀνδρὶ. ὅτι μέντοι ἡ ταῦτ';
ἔστιν ἡ τοιαῦτ' ἄττα περὶ τὰς ψυχὰς ἡμῶν καὶ τὰς οἰκήσεις,

7 διαφερόντως (βιώναι): (to have lived)exceptionally; supply aor. inf.
πρὸς...βιώναι: with regard to...; governing an articular aor. inf.
τῶν...τόπων: from...; gen. of separation
c1 δεσμωτηρίων: gen. of separation
2 ἐπὶ γῆς: upon the earth
τοῦτων...αὐτῶν: among...; partitive gen.
οἱ...καθηράμενοι: those having purified
themselves; aor. mid. is reflexive in sense
3 ζώσι: 3p pres. ζῶ
τὸ παράπαν: altogether
4 εἰς τὸν ἐπεπτά χρόνον: for future time; ‘for
time thereupon’

ἐνεκα: for the sake of, because of, for (gen) 13
καθ-αἰρα: to cleanse, purify, 4
καλλίων, -ον: more noble or beautiful, 7
μετ-έχω: to partake of, have share in (gen) 13
νοῦς, ὁ: mind, intention, attention, thought, 14
οἶκης, ἡ: dwelling, 5
οἰκίζω: to found a colony, settle, 1
ὀσίος, -α, -ον: hallowed, sacred, ordained, 4
παρά-παν: altogether, absolutely, 3
πρέπει: it is fitting, it is suitable (impers.) 8
ῥάδιος, -α, -ον: easy, ready, 9
φιλο-σοφία, ἡ: pursuit or love of wisdom, 13
φρόνησις, -εως, ἡ: intelligence, wisdom, 15
καλλίους: καλλίος(ν)ες, comparative
ῥάδιον (ἔστι): it is...; impersonal + aor. inf.
ἐν τῷ παρόντι (χρόνῳ): pple πάρεμι
τοῦτον δὴ: these very things; + ἔνεκα
ζών: which; gen. object of pf. διέχομαι
μετασχείν: aor. inf. μετ-έχω
tὸ ἄθλον (ἔστι)...ἡ ἔλπις (ἔστι): add verbs
d1 μὲν οὖν: certainly indeed; as a correction
tὸ...διωκυρίσασθαι: that to...; articular inf.
is subject of οὕτως ἔχειν (see p. 7)
2 διελήλυθα: pf. δι-έχομαι
νοῦν ἔχοντι: having sense
ὁτι μέντοι: however that...; in contrast
ἔστιν: are the case; i.e. are true
ἄττα: some; alternative to neut. pl. τινά
θαρρέω: to be bold; be brave, 5
ἐπείπερ ἀθάνατόν γε ἡ ἴσχυς φαίνεται οὖσα, τοῦτο καὶ πρέπειν μοι δοκεῖ καὶ ἄξιον κινδυνεύσαι οἰομένῳ οὕτως ἐχεῖν—καλὸς γὰρ ὁ κίνδυνος—καὶ χρῆ τὰ τοιαῦτα ὠσπερ ἐπάρθεν ἑαυτῷ, διὸ δὴ ἐγγυεῖ καὶ πάλαι μηκύνῳ τὸν μῶθον. ἀλλὰ τοῦτων δὴ ἔνεκα θαρρεῖν χρῆ περὶ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ ἴσχυς οὖν κινδυνεύω ἀλλὰ τῷ αὐτῆς κόσμῳ, σωφροσύνη τε καὶ δικαιοσύνη καὶ ἀνδρεία καὶ ἐλευθερία καὶ ἀληθεία, οὕτω περιμένει τῇ ἐν Ἄδου πορελαίν ως πορευόμενος ὅταν ἡ...

ἀ-θάνατος, -ον: undying, immortal, 28
Ἄιδος, -ου: Hades, 15
ἀλήθεια, ἡ: truth, 7
ἀλλότριος, -α, -ον: of another, alien, foreign 3
ἀνδρεία, ἡ: manliness, bravery, courage, 5
ἄξιος, -α, -ον: worthy of, deserving of, 15
ἀπεργάζομαι: produce, complete, finish, 2
δικαιοσύνη, ἡ: justice, righteousness, 4
διὸ: δ' ὃ, on account of which, 4
ἐάν: to permit, allow, let be, suffer, 9
ἑλευθερία, ἡ: freedom, liberty, 1
ἐνέκα: for (the sake of), because of, (gen.) 13
ἐπὶ-πορεῖ: to chant, sing as a charm, 2
ἐπεί-περ: (the very time) when, since, 1
ἡδονή, ἡ: pleasure, enjoyment, delight, 17
θαρρέω: be confident, take courage; be bold 9
κινδυνεύω: to risk, venture; it is likely, 7
κίνδυνος, ὁ: risk, danger, venture, 2
κοσμέω: to order, arrange, adorn, 5
κόσμος, ὁ: good order, world; adornments 2
κοντα: to learn, understand, 12
κυκλώματι: to lengthen, prolong; delay, 1
μῦθος, ὁ: story, word, speech, 7
περι-μένω: to wait for, await, 6
πλέων, -ον: more, greater, 17
πορεία, ἡ: march, journey, way, 3
πορεύομαι: to travel, journey, march, 7
πρέπει: it is fitting, it is suitable (impers.) 8
παντελείω: to be serious, be eager, hasten 2
σωφροσύνη, ἡ: temperance, prudence, 8
χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, enjoy; fare well 12

4 ἀθάνατον: (something) immortal; neuter nom. sg., predicate καὶ...καὶ...: both...and
5 κινδυνεύσαι: explanatory inf. with ἄξιον οἰομένῳ οὕτως ἐχεῖν: to one thinking that...; dat. of interest, pple οἰομαί
6 ὁ κίνδυνος: risk, venture
7 διὸ δὴ: for which very reason; for precisely which reason
8 καὶ πάλαι: for a very long time; καὶ is adverbial (S 2882)
9 μῦθος: I have been lengthening; πάλαι + pres. is often pf. progressive in sense
10 τούτων δὴ: these very things; + ἔνεκα

115 ἄνδρα ὁ...; acc. subj. of θαρρεῖν
2 ἐλάσει χαίρειν: dismissed; aor., ἐλάστο χαίρειν, 'I allow...to say farewell' is an idiom that relies on the fact that χαίρε, 'fare well' is a common way for saying goodbye
τοὺς κόσμους: adornments
ὡς...ἀντία: on the grounds that they...; ὡς + pple eiί expresses alleged cause
3 πλέον βάτερον: more harm than good; an idiom, 'more other,' βάτερον = τὸ ἐτέρουν τάς δὲ (ἡδονᾶς): but pleasures concerning...
5 ἀλλοτρίος: not by another's but one's own adornment; dat. means

115b2 ὡς: so as going...; expressing purpose
εἰμαρμένη καλὴ. ύμεῖς μὲν οὖν, ἐφη, ὡς Σωμιὰ τε καὶ Κέβης καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι, εἰς αὐθεὶς ἐν τοῖς χρόνωι ἐκαστοὶ πορεύσεσθε· ἐμὲ δὲ νῦν ἣδη καλεῖ, φαίη ἃν ἄνὴρ τραγικὸς, ἡ εἰμαρμένη, καὶ σχεδὸν τί μοι ὥρα τραπέζαι πρὸς τὸ λουτρόν· δοκεῖ γὰρ ὅτι βέλτιον εἶναι λουσάμενον πιεῖν τὸ φάρμακον καὶ μὴ πράγματα ταῖς γυναιξὶ παρέχειν νεκρὸν λούειν.

ταῦτα δὴ εἰσόντως αὐτοῦ ὁ Κρίτων, εἶπεν, ἐφη, ὡς Σώκρατες· τί δὲ τούτοις ἢ ἐμοὶ ἐπιστέλλεις ἢ περὶ τῶν παιδῶν ἢ περὶ ἄλλου του, ὅτι ἂν σου ποιοῦντες ἴμεῖς ἐν χάριτι μάλιστα ποιοῦμεν;

ἀπερ ἀεὶ λέγω, ἐφη, ὡς Κρίτων, οὐδὲν καινότερον· ὅτι ύμῶν αὐτῶν ἐπιμελοῦμενοι ὑμεῖς καὶ ἐμοὶ καὶ τοῖς ἐμοῖς καὶ ύμῶν αὐτοῖς ἐν χάριτι ποιῆσετε ἀττ' ἂν ποιῆτε, κἂν μὴ

παρ-ἔχω: to provide, furnish, supply, 16
πίνω: to drink, 16
πορεύομαι: to travel, journey, march, 7
τραγικός, -ῆ, -ῶν: tragic, of tragedy, 1
πράγμα, -ατος τὸ: deed, act; matter, affair 18
σχεδὸν: nearly, almost, just about, 8
τραγικός, -ῆ, -ῶν: tragic, 1
τρέπω: to turn, 4
φάρμακον, τὸ: medicine, remedy, drug, 10
χάρις, χάριτος, ἡ: gratitude, thanks, favor, 2
ὥρα, ἡ: season, time, 3
νεκρὸν λούειν: epexegetic (explanatory) inf. with πράγματα

b1 ταῦτα...αὐτοῦ: gen. abs., aor. λέγω ἐπεξεργασμένη

3 Αὐτοῦ το: something else; ἄλλου τινος ὅτι: which...; ὃ τι, obj. of ποιοῦντες
ποιοῦντες: by...; pple is causal in sense

5 ἀπερ: (the things) which...
καινότερον (ἐστι): add a verb
ὅτι...: (namely) that...; in apposition to ἀπερ...λέγω

6 ὑμῶν αὐτῶν: yourselves; reflexive

7 ἄττ(α)...: whatever you do; alternative to neut. pl. interrogative τίνα
κἂν: even if...; καὶ εἰ ἂν

3 ἡ εἰμαρμένη (μοῖρα): destined fate
καλὴ: 3s subj. καλέω, indefinite temporal clause
μὲν οὖν: certainly indeed; here, a strong affirmation
4 εἰς αὐθεὶς: hereafter; idiom for future time
5 θαλὼ ἦν: would said; potential opt. φημι
ἀνήρ τραγικὸς: tragedian; i.e. τραγωδὸς
6 σχεδὸν τι...ὥρα: (it is) just about time
τραπέζαι: aor. mid. τρέπω
7 γαρ δὴ: for of course
πιεῖν: aor. πίνω
8 πράγματα...παρέχειν: cause trouble for...; 'make trouble for...' a common idiom
νόν ὠμολογήστητε: ἐὰν δὲ ύμῶν μὲν αὐτῶν ἀμελήτε καὶ μὴ ἑθέλητε ὁσπερ κατ’ ἰχνη κατὰ τὰ νόν τε εἰρημένα καὶ τὰ ἐν τῷ ἐμπροσθεν χρόνῳ ζην, οὐδὲ ἐὰν πολλὰ ὠμολογήστη ἐν τῷ παρόντι καὶ σφόδρα, οὐδὲν πλέον ποιήσετε.

ταῦτα μὲν τοῖνυν προβοηθήσομεθα, ἐφη, οὕτω ποιεῖν πάπτωμεν δὲ σε τίνα τρόπον;

ὅπως ἄν, ἐφη, βούλησθε, ἐάνπερ γε λάβητε με καὶ μὴ ἐκφόγω ύμας. γελάσασι δὲ ἀμα ἡσυχία καὶ πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἀποβλέψας ἐλεψον οὐ πείθω, διὰ ἄνδρας, Κρίτωνα, ὡς ἐγὼ εἰμι οὗτος Σωκράτης, ὃ νυν διαλεγόμενοι καὶ διατάττων ἑκαστὸν τῶν λεγομένων, ἀλλ᾽ οἰεστά με ἐκεῖνον ἐδύν

δὲν ὄμωται ὀλίγον ὑστερον νεκρόν καὶ ἐρωτάτη δὴ πῶς με θάπτη. ὅτι δὲ ἐγὼ πάλαι πολύν λόγον πεποίημαι, ὡς,

ἀμελέω: to have no care for, neglect (gen) 5
ἀπο-βλέπω: to look at, see, 1
γελάω: to laugh, 6
δια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
δια-τάττω: to arrange, appoint, 1
ἐάν-περ: ei ἐὰν, if, if really (+ subj.), 3
ἐθέλω: to be willing, wish, desire, 17
ἐκ-φεύγω: to flee out away, escape, 1
ἐμ-προσθεν: before, former; earlier, 7
ἐρωτάω: to ask, inquire, question, 10
ἡσυχία: gently, softly, 1
θάπτω: to honor with funeral rites, 4

8 ὠμολογήστη: aor. subj. as protasis in a future more vivid (ei ἐὰν + subj., fut.)
ἐάν...ἀμελήτε...ποιήσετε: a lengthy fut. more vivid

ὑμῶν μὲν αὐτῶν: yourselves for your part;
reflective and a solitary μὲν (S 2896)

(9) (ἐ)θέλητε...ζην: from ἐθέλω, infl. ζόω
κατ(α) ἰκνη: step by step; ‘by steps’
κατὰ τὰ...: according to...
εἰρημένα: pf. pass. pple λέγω (ἐ)

10 τὰ...χρόνῳ (εἰρημένα): supply participle
οὐδὲ: not even
πολλὰ: many times, often; adverbial acc. or inner acc., e.g. ‘agree with many things’

καὶ: and; joining adverbial πολλὰ with
the adverb σφόδρα
οὐδὲν πλέον: i.e. nothing good; compare πλέον θάπτεσθαι in 114e3

3 θάπτωμεν: let us...; hortatory subj.

τίνα τρόπον: in what...?; interrogative

4 ὅπως ἄν: however...; relative, in reply
ἐάνπερ γε: if at any rate; or ‘if, that is,...’

5 πείθω: I am persuading; pres. progressive

7 ὄ...διαλεγόμενος: the one just now...;

1 ὄμωται: 3s fut. dep. ῥαῷ
ὁ...λίγον: a little; acc. extent by degree

δὴ πῶς: just how; precisely how; πῶς δὴ

2 θάπτη: he is to...; 3s deliberative subj.

ὅτι δὲ: but that...
ἐπειδὰν πῶ τὸ φάρμακον, οὐκέτι ὑμῖν παραμενό, ἀλλ᾽ οἰχίσσομαι ἀπίων εἰς μακάρων δῆ τινας εὐδαιμονίας, ταύτα μοι δοκῶ αὐτῷ ἄλλως λέγειν, παραμυθοῦμενος ἀμα μὲν ὑμᾶς, ἀμα δ᾽ ἐμαυτόν. ἐγγυήσασθε οὖν με πρὸς Κρίτωνα, ἐφη, τὴν ἐναντίαν ἐγγύην ἢ ἢν οὕτοι πρὸς τούς δικαστὰς ἡγγυάτω, οὕτως μὲν γὰρ ἢ μὴν παραμενεῖν ὑμεῖς δὲ ἢ μὴν μὴ παραμενεῖν ἐγγυήσασθε ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνω, ἀλλὰ οἰχίς-

σεθαι ἀπίωντα, ἢν Κρίτων πρὸν φέρη, καὶ μὴ ὄρων μοῦ τὸ σῶμα ἢ καόμενον ἢ κατορύττομεν ἀγανακτῇ ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ ὡς δεινὰ πάσχοντος, μηδὲ λέγῃ ἐν τῇ ταφῇ ἢ πρωτίθεται Σωκράτη ἢ ἐκφέρει ἢ καταρύττει. εὖ γὰρ θεία, ἢ δ᾽ ὃς, ὡς ἄριστε Κρίτων, τὸ μὴ καλῶς λέγεν οὐ μόνον εἰς αὐτὸ τοῦτο πλημμελεῖ, ἀλλὰ καὶ κακὸν τι ἐμποιεῖ ταῖς ὑπαχαῖ. ἀλλα

άγανακτέω: to be annoyed, be troubled at, 12
ἄλλος: otherwise, in another way; in vain, 14
ἀπ᾽ ἐρχομαι: to go away, depart, 14
ἀριστος: -ης, -ων: best, most excellent, 6
δινός, -ης, -ων: terrible; wondrous, clever, 6
δικαστής, οῦ, ο: a juror, judge, 5
ἐγγύσαμαι: to create in, produce in, cause, 2
εὖ-δαιμονία, ἡ: happiness, good fortune, 2
ἡ: in truth, truly (begins open question), 5
γίνε: in order that (+ subj.); where (+ ind.), 7
καλός: well; beautifully, 11
πῖο: aor. subj. πινω, indefinite relative
ὁς...παραμενω: that...; assume ὁς is from
d2, 1s fut.in the indirect discourse
οἰχίσσομαι ἀπίων: fut.: οἰχίσσομαι, governs a
complementary pple (S 2099); ἀπέρχομαι
εἰς μακαρων δὴ τινας εὐδαιμονίας: to
certain happiness of the blessed; `certain joys’;
tinας δη, δѣ is intensive (see 107d7)
αὐτός: myself; intensive pronoun with moi
ἀλλός: in vain
tον ἐναντιαν ἐγγύην ἢ ἤν: the opposite
pledge than (the one) which; a cognate acc.
κατ-ορύττω: bury in the earth, bury, 2
μακαρος, -α, -ον: blessed, happy, 1
οἰχίσσω: to go, go off, depart, 14
οὐκ-έται: no more, no longer, no further, 4
παρα-μένω: to abide, remain, 2
παρα-μυθεομαι: exhort, encourage, 1
πῖνω: to drink, 16
πλημμελ&-ες: in discord, faulty, out of tune 1
προ-τίθεμι: to set out, set forth, propose, 2
ῥών: more easily, 2
ταφή, ἡ: burial, funeral, 1
ὑπέρ: above, on behalf of (gen.); over, beyond (acc.), 6
φάρμακον, τό: medicine, remedy, drug, 10
ἕγγυάτω: tried to...; conative impf.
έγγυσαμαι: Crito tried but failed to secure
a pledge on Socrates’ behalf
οὕτως μέν...ὑμεῖς...ἐγγυήσασθε: this one
(pledged)...and you pledged...; ellipsis
ἡ μὴ: truly indeed that (I)...; ἢ μὴ
introduces oaths, here in ind. disc.
ἀποθάνω: aor. subj. ἀποθνήσκω
eἶναι:... so that...; purpose + 3s subj. verbs
ὁς...: that...
πρωτίθεται...: set out, lay out; i.e. the body
Σωκράτης: Σωκράτης-α, acc. sg.
ἰσθι: imperative ισθα
εἰς αὐτὸ τοῦτο: in regard to this itself
116a ῥαρρεῖν τε χρὴ καὶ φάναι τούμον σώμα θάπτειν, καὶ θάπτειν ὀντως ὅπως ἄν σοι φίλον ἦ καὶ μάλιστα ἡγη νόμμον εἶναι.

ταῦτ᾽ εἰπὼν ἐκεῖνος μὲν ἀνίστατο εἰς οἰκήμα τι ὡς λουσό- μενος, καὶ ὁ Κρίτων ἐπέτει αὐτῷ, ἐκεῖσ ἐκέλευεν περιμένειν. 

περιμένομεν οὖν πρὸς ἡμᾶς αὐτός διαλεγόμενοι περὶ τῶν 

εἰρημένων καὶ ἀνασκοποῦντες, τοτε δ᾽ αὖ περὶ τῆς συμφορᾶς 

dioξύντες ὁ σα ἡμῖν γεγονία εἴη, ἀτεχνῶς ἡγούμενοι ὡσπέρ 

πατρὸς στερηθέντες διάξειν ὀρφανοί τὸν ἐπετα βίον. ἐπειδὴ 

δὲ ἐλούσατο καὶ ἴνεχθη παρ᾽ αὐτὸν τὰ παιδία— dúo γὰρ αὐτῷ 

ὑεῖς σμικροί ἥσαν, εἰς δὲ μέγας— καὶ αἱ οἰκεῖαι γυναῖκες 

ἀφίκοντο ἐκεῖναι, ἐναντίον τοῦ Κρίτωνος διαλεχθεῖσ τε καὶ 

ἐπιστελλάς ἀττα ἑβούλετο, τὰς μὲν γυναίκας καὶ τὰ παιδία 

ἀπιέναι ἐκέλευσεν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἤκε μαρ ἡμᾶς. καὶ ἦν ἥδη 

λούω: to wash, 5

νόμμος, -η, -ον: customary, lawful, 2

οἰκήμα, -α, -ον: of the family, one’s own, 4

οἶκημα, -ατος, το: room; storeroom, 1

ὅπως: how, in what way; in order that, that 10

ὁρφανός, -η, -ον: orphan, fatherless, bereft 1

παιδίον, το: a little or young child, child, 3

πατήρ: a father, 3

περι-μένω: to wait for, await, 6

συμφορᾶ: small, little, 19

στερεῦσι: to deprive of or from, rob, defraud, 5

συμφορᾶ: mischief, mishap, 3

ὑός (ὑόσ), ὁ: son, 2

φίλος -ν-ου: dear, friendly; noun friend, kin 8

δοσι: how great (a misfortune)...

γεγονύια εἴ: periphrastic pf. opt. (pf. pple + εἰ) fem. sg. pple γίγνομαι

7 πατρός: from/of...; gen. of separation

στερηθέντες: aor. pass. pple
diάξειν: that (we)...

7 τον ἐπετα βίον: life hereafter

b1 ἴνεχθη: 3s pass. φέρω, plural subject αὐτῷ: dat of possession

2 al...γυναῖκες: the women of the family

ἐναντίον...: in Crito’s presence

3 διαλεχθεῖσ, ἐπιστελλάς: aor pass & act. pple
talking to the women, giving instructions

4 ἄττι(α)...: what...

216
ἐγγὺς ἥλιος δυσμῶν χρόνον γὰρ πολὺν διέτριψεν ἐνδόν.
ἔλθον δ' έκαθέζετο λελουμένος καὶ οὐ πολλὰ ἄττα μετὰ
tαῦτα διελέξθη, καὶ ἤκεν ὁ τῶν ἐνδεκα ὑπηρέτης καὶ στὰς
παρ' αὐτῶν, ὅ Σώκρατες, ἔφη, οὐ καταγνώσμαι γε σοῦ
c ὁπερ ἄλλων καταγγώνας, ὅτι μοι χαλεπάνουσι καὶ κατα-
ρώνται ἐπειδὰν αὐτοῖς παραγγείλω πίνειν τὸ φάρμακον
ἀναγκαζόντων τῶν ἀρχόντων. σὲ δὲ ἐγὼ καὶ ἄλλως
ἐγινοκα ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ γενναίοτάτον καὶ προάτοταν
καὶ ἀριστον ἀνδρὰ ὄντα τῶν πᾶποτε δεύρῳ ἀφικομένων, καὶ
δὴ καὶ νῦν εὖ οἴδ' ὅτι οὐκ ἐμοὶ χαλεπαίνεις, γιγνῶσκεις γὰρ
tοὺς αἰτίους, ἄλλα ἐκείνους. νῦν οὖν, οίσθα γὰρ ᾧ ἥλιον
ἀγγέλλων, χαίρε τε καὶ πειρῶ ὡς ῥάστα φέρει τά ἀναγκαῖα. 
d καὶ ἀμα δακρύσας μεταστρεφόμενος ἀπῆλε.
καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ἀναβλέψας πρὸς αὐτόν, καὶ σὺ, ἔφη, χαῖρε, καὶ ἥμεις ταῦτα ποιήσομεν. καὶ ἁμα πρὸς ἡμᾶς, ώς ἀστείος, ἔφη, ὁ ἀνθρωπος· καὶ παρὰ πάντα μοι τὸν χρόνον προσήκει καὶ διελέγετο ἐνίοτε καὶ ἦν ἀνδρῶν λύστος, καὶ νῦν ώς γενναίως με ἀποδικρύει. ἀλλ’ ἄγε δή, ὁ Κρίτων, πειθόμεθα αὐτῷ, καὶ ἐνεγκάτω τις τὸ φάρμακον, εἰ τέτριπται· εἰ δὲ μή, τρυφάτω ὁ ἀνθρωπος.

καὶ ὁ Κρίτων, ἀλλ’ οἴμαι, ἔφη, ἔγωγε, ὁ Σωκράτες, ἐτὶ ἡλιον εἶναι ἐπὶ τοῖς ὀρέσιν καὶ ὑπὸ δεδυκέναι. καὶ ἁμα ἐγὼ οἶδα καὶ ἄλλους πάνιν ὑφὲ πίνοντας, ἐπεδιδόν παραγγελθῇ αὐτοῖς, δειπνήσαντάς τε καὶ πιόντας εἰ μάλα, καὶ συγγενέ-μένους γ’ ἐνίους ὁν ἄν τύχουσιν ἐπιθυμοῦντες. ἀλλὰ μηδὲν ἐπείγου· ἐτὶ γὰρ ἐγχωρεί.

ἀγώ: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 12
dύνα-βλέπω: to look at, 1
ἄπο-δακρύω: to weep away, lament, 1
ἀστείος, -ος, -ον: of the town; urbane, refined, 1
gενναῖος, -άς, -αν: noble, well-born, 4
dειπνέω: to make dinner, eat dinner, 1
dια-λέγομαι: to converse with, discuss, 13
δύω: enter, make sink, sink, plunge, 3
ἐγχωρεῖ: imper. there is time or room, 1
ἐνοία, -ος, -α: some, 7
ἐν-οτε: sometimes, 7
ἐπείγω: urge on; mid. hurry, make haste, 1
ἐπι-θυμέω: to desire, long for, 10

καὶ: too, also; adverbial
χαῖρε: farewell,! imperative
πρὸς ἡμᾶς: (he said) to us
ἀστείος, -ος, -ον: how...!; in exclamation, i.e. the prison attendant
παρὰ πάντα...τοῦ χρόνου: throughout...; acc. duration of time
προσήκει...διελέγετο: was accustomed to... and accustomed to...; customary impf.
προσέρχομαι, διαλέγομαι: ἦν: impf. εἰτί
ἀγε δή: come now; the imperative ἀγω draws attention to the following imperative
πειθόμεθα: let us...; hortatory subj.

καὶ: too, also; adverbial
χαῖρε: farewell,! imperative
πρὸς ἡμᾶς: (he said) to us
ἀστείος, -ος, -ον: how...!; in exclamation, i.e. the prison attendant
παρὰ πάντα...τοῦ χρόνου: throughout...; acc. duration of time
προσήκει...διελέγετο: was accustomed to... and accustomed to...; customary impf.
προσέρχομαι, διαλέγομαι: ἦν: impf. εἰτί
ἀγε δή: come now; the imperative ἀγω draws attention to the following imperative
πειθόμεθα: let us...; hortatory subj.

ἔγνωκατο τὸν Σώκρατέως: let someone...; 3rd pers. aor. imperative φέρω
τέτριπται: pf. pass. τρίβω i.e. the drug has been ground and prepared
τριβᾶτο: let...; 3rd pers. aor. imperative τρίβω; the missing obj. is τὸ φάρμακον
c2 ἐπι... over
δεδυκέναι: pf. act. inf. δύω with οἴμαι
καὶ ἄλλους: others also
παραγγελθῇ: it was...; impersonal, aor. pass. subj. παραγγέλω
δων ἄν: whomever they happened to love
μηδὲν: not at all; inner acc.
ἐπείγου: ἐπείγει(ο), pres. mid. imperative
καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης, εἰκότως γε, ἑφή, ὦ Κρίτων, ἐκεῖνοι τε ταῦτα ποιοῦσιν, οὕς σὺ λέγεις—οἶνοι γὰρ κερδαίνεις ταῦτα ποιήσαντες—καὶ ἔγγυε ταῦτα εἰκότως οὐ ποίησον· οὐδὲν γὰρ ὅμως κερδανεῖν ὃλιγον ύστερον πιὸν ἅλλο γε ἐγὼ γέλωτα ὁφλῆσεν παρ᾽ ἐμαυτῷ, γυλιχόμενος τοῦ ἥν καὶ φειδόμενος συνδεῦστε ἐτι ἐνόντος. ἀλλ᾽ ἔδο, ἑφή, πείθομεν καὶ μὴ ἄλλος ποιεῖ.

καὶ ὁ Κρίτων ἀκούσας ἔνευσε τῷ παιδὶ πλησίον ἔστωτι. καὶ ὁ παῖς ἐξελθὼν καὶ συχνῶν χρόνον διατρῆσας ἤκεν ἂν ἄον τὸν μέλλοντα δώσειν τὸ φάρμακον, ἐν κύλικι φέροντα τετριμ-μένον. ἰδὼν δὲ ὁ Σωκράτης τὸν ἀνθρώπον, εἶν, ἑφή, ὦ βελτιστεῖ, σὺ γὰρ τούτων ἐπιστῆμας, τὶ χρή ποιεῖν;

ἀγω: to lead, bring, carry, convey, 12
ἄλλος: otherwise, in another way, 14
βέλτιστος, -ης, -ον: best, 14
γέλοις, -ωτος, ο: laughter, 1
γυλιχύμα: to cling to, long for, (gen) 1
δια-τριβή: to spend (time), waste (time), 5
δίδωμι: to give, offer, grant, provide, 15
εἰκότως: reasonably, suitably, fairly, 5
ἐν-εἰμι: to be in or within, 8
ἐξ-ἐρχόμαι: to go out, come out, 5
ἐπιστήμων, -ον: wise in, skilled in, (gen) 1
ἡμικύλις: child, boy, girl; slave, 6
ἰστημι: to make stand, set up, stop, establish 3
κερδαίνειν: that (they)....; add acc. subject
κοίτες, κοίκισ, ἢ: cup, kylix, 2
κυλίς, κύλικος, ἢ: to nod, beckon, incline, 1
ὀλίγος, -ης, -ον: few, little, small, 15
ὀμάλακώς: to owe, be liable for; incur, 1
παις, παιδός, ὁ, ἢ: child, boy, girl; slave, 6
πινω: to drink, 16
πλησίος, -ης, -ον: near, close to; neighbors, 4
προικός, -ης, -ον: long, much, great, 4
πριβό: to rub, grind, knead; wear out, 5
ὑστερος, -α, -ον: later, last, adv. later 17
φάρμακον, τό: medicine, remedy, drug, 10
φείδωμι: to use sparingly, spare 2
οὐδενδός...ἐνόντος: nothing still being within; Rowe sees an allusion to Hesiod Works and Days II. 368-9
ὅθι: sg. imperative ἐρχομαι
πελθεῖο: pres. mid. imperative
πεινα: πινεῖ, sg. imperative ε-contract verb
τῷ παῖδι: to...; dat. of interest, ὦ παῖς can denote a slave
πλησίον: adverbial acc.
εστῶτι: dat. sg. pf. pple, ἵστημι
ἀγων τὸν μέλλοντα δώσειν: bringing the one intending to give... fut. inf. δίδωμι
τετριμμένου: ground; pf. pass. τριβω
ἴδων: nom. sg. aor. pple. ὑπάρχει (ἐδον) εἶνε: well then
σῦ: you (are); add linking verb
οὐδὲν ἄλλο, ἡ πιόντα περιέναι, ἐως ἂν σου βάρος

ἐν τοῖς σκέλεσι γένηται, ἐπειτα κατακείσαι: καὶ οὕτως αὐτὸ ποιήσει. καὶ ἅμα ὄρεξε τὴν κύλικα τῷ Σωκράτει.

καὶ ὁς λαβὼν καὶ μάλα ὦλεως, ὡς Ἐχέκρατες, οὐδὲν τρέσας οὐδὲ διαφθείρας οὐτε τοῦ χρώματος οὐτε τοῦ προσώπου, ἀλλὰ ὡσπερ εἰώθει ταυρηδόν ύποβλέψας πρὸς τὸν ἀνθρωπόν, τί ἱέρει, ἡπῃ, περὶ τοὺδε τοῦ πώματος πρὸς τὸ ἀποσπεῖσαι τινι; ἐξετιν ἡ οὐ;

tosούτων, ἤπῃ, ὡς Σώκρατες, τρίβομεν ὀςον οἵμεθα μέτριον εἶναι πιεῖν.

9 πιόντα: acc. sg. aor. pple πίνω

περιέναι ᾧ (χρη): i.e. to walk around

ἐξας ἀν... γένηται: until... ἂν + aor. subj. in an indefinite temporal clause

b1 αὐτό: it; nom. subject

3 ὁς: and this one; demonstrative, i.e. the attendant

λαβὼν: supply τὴν κύλικα as object

Ἰλεως: gently; when referring to people, ‘propitiously’ when referring to the gods

περι-ἐρχομαι: to go around, 6

πίνω: to drink, 16

προσώπον, τό: expression, face, 1

πώμα, -ατος, τό: drink, 1

σκέλος, -εος, τό: leg, 6

ταύρηδον: like a bull, savagely, 1

τοσούτων, -οςτη, -οτο: so great, so many, 3

τρέω: to flee from fear, flee away, 1

τρίβω: to grind, rub, knead; wear out, 5

ὑπο-βλέπω: to look from under the brow, look askance at, 1

χράομαι: to use, employ, enjoy, (+ dat.) 11

οὐδὲν: not at all; inner acc. with pple

4 διαφθείρας: losing; aor. pple

τοῦ χρώματος: (any) color; partitive gen.

τοῦ προσώπου: (any) expression; partitive

6 πρὸς τὸ ἀποσπείσαι: with regard to...;

8 τοσούτων...δοσον: as much as; correlatives, demonstrative and relative pronouns

τινι: for someone; dat. of interest

9 πιεῖν: expegetic (explanatory) aor. inf.

πίνω governed by μέτριον
μανθάνω, ἥ δ᾽ ὃς· ἀλλ᾽ εὐχεσθαί γέ που τοῖς θεοῖς ἐξεστι κεν τε καὶ χρή, τὴν μετοίκησιν τὴν ἐνθένδε ἐκεῖσε εὐτυχὴ γενεσθαι· ἀ δὴ καὶ ἐγὼ εὐχομαί τε καὶ γένοιτο ταύτῃ. καὶ ἀμείπτων ταῦτα ἐπισχόμενος καὶ μάλα εὐχερῶς καὶ εὐκόλως ἐξέπτευν. καὶ ἡμῶν οἱ πολλοὶ τέως μὲν ἐπιεικῶς οὐκέτα, ἀλλ᾽ ἐμοῦ γε βία καὶ αὐτοῦ ἀστακτὶ ἑξώρει τὰ δάκρυα, ὡστε ἐγκαλυψάμενος ἀπέκλαον ἐμαυτοῦ—οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἐκεῖνον γε, ἀλλὰ τὴν ἐμαυτοῦ τύχην, οὐκ ἀνδρὸς ἐταίρου ἐστηρμένοις ἐην. ὁ δὲ Κρίτων ἐτί πρότερος ἐμοῦ, ἐνταίρος ὁ για το τὴν κατέχειν τὰ δάκρυα, ἐξανέστη.

c1 ἡ δ᾽ ὃς· Socrates is speaking, see p. 9
2 τὴν μετοίκησιν...: that the departure...; ind. disc. governed by εὐχεσθαί
3 ἀ δὴ καὶ: which very things in fact...
4 γένοιτο: may it!...; opt. of wish, this is part of the actual prayer
5 ἄτι: in this way; dat. of manner
6 πινόν ταῦτα: aor. pple λέγω
7 ἐπαίσχυνος: holding it up to (his lips)
8 δομεν: aor. ὀρᾶω
9 πινοντα...πεπωκότα: (him)...; pres. and pf. pple πινω; modifying a missing acc. sg.
10 οὐκέτα: i.e. no longer were able to withhold
11 ἐμοῦ γε βία καὶ αὐτοῦ: against my own will and...; dat. of manner βία + gen. often means 'against one’s will’
12 γὰρ δὴ: for accordingly. for of course
13 ἐκεῖνον γε: i.e. for that one; i.e. Socrates
14 τήν...τύχην: also obj. of ἀπέκλαον
15 οἶκον ἀνδρὸς: from...; gen. of separation
16 ἐταίρου: as a companion
17 ἐστηρμένοις ἐην: I had been...; 1st opt., pf. pass. periphrastic (pf. pass. pple + εἰμι), the opt. suggests implied indirect discourse
18 ἐμοῦ: gen. of comparison
19 ἐξανέστη: plpf. act. ἐξ-ανίστημι
Ἀπολλόδωρος δὲ καὶ ἐν τῷ ἐμπροσθεν χρόνῳ οὐδὲν ἐπαύετο δακρύων, καὶ δὴ καὶ τότε ἀναβρυχησάμενος κλάων καὶ ἄγανακτῶν οὐδένα ὄντων οὐ κατέκλασε τῶν παρόντων πλήν γε αὐτοῦ Σωκράτους.

ἐκείνος δὲ, ἡδακτρύω, ποιεῖτε, ὦ θαυμάσιοι. ἡγομένων οὖν ἥκιστα τοῦτον ἐνεκα τὰς γυναίκας ἀπέπεμψα, ἦν μὴ τοιαῦτα πλημμελοῖεν· καὶ γὰρ ἀκήκοα ὅτι ἐν εὐθημίᾳ χρή τελεύταν. ἀλλ’ ἡσυχίαν τε ἄγετε καὶ καρπείτη.

καὶ ἥμεις ἀκούσαντες ἱσχύνθημεν τε καὶ ἐπέσχομεν τοῦ δακρύειν. ὁ δὲ περιελθὼν, ἐπειδή οἱ βαρύνεσθαι ἐφῆ τὰ σκέλη, κατεκλίνη ὑπτίος—οὔτω γὰρ ἐκέλευεν ὁ ἀνθρωπος—καὶ ἁμα ἐφαπτόμενος αὐτοῦ οὕτος ὁ δοὺς τὸ φάρμακον,

ήσυχαι, ἡ: silence, quiet, stillness, rest, 1
αἰσχύνομαι: to be ashamed, feel shame, 1
θαυμάσιος, -α, -ον: wonderful, strange, 3
γανακτά: (there is) aor. pass.; i.e. walking around, 3
ἐς: on one’s back, prone, 1
φάρμακον: medicine, remedy, drug 10

ἡμα μή...: so that...might...; purpose; + opt. in secondary seq.; τοιαῦτα is an inner acc.

发现了内含的单词和短语，并将它们翻译成现代英语：

- ἁμα: also
- οὐδέν: not at all; inner acc.
- καὶ δὴ καὶ: in particular; ‘and indeed also’
- ἀναβρυχησάμενος: bursting to wailing
- κατεκλάσατο: (there is) no one whom he did not make break down;
- τῶν παρόντων: partitive, pple πάρεμι
- οίᾳ: i.e. what sort of conduct...!; in exclamation
- μέντοι: certainly
- ἥκιστα: superlative adverb

Death by Hemlock
διαλιπὼν χρόνων ἐπέσκοπε τοὺς πόδας καὶ τὰ σκέλη, κάπετα σφόδρα πιέσας αὐτοῦ τὸν πόδα ἥρετο εἰ αἰσθάνοιτο, ὁ δ' οὐκ ἔφη. καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο αὖθις τὰς κυήμας· καὶ ἐπανών οὔτως ἦμιν ἐπεδείκνυτο ὅτι ψύχοιτο τε καὶ πήγνυτο. καὶ αὐτὸς ἦπτετο καὶ ἐἶπεν ὅτι, ἑπειδὲν πρὸς τῇ καρδίᾳ γένηται αὐτῷ, τότε οἰχήσεται.

ὁ δὲ οὖν σχεδὸν τι αὐτοῦ ἢν τὰ περὶ τὸ ἦτρον ψυχόμενα, καὶ ἐκκαλυψάμενος—ἐνεκεκάλυπτο γὰρ—ἐἶπεν—ὁ δὴ τελευταῖον ἐφθέγξατο—‘ὁ Κρίτων, ἔφη, τῷ Ἀσκληπιῷ ὁφείλομεν ἀλεκτρυών· ἀλλὰ ἀπόδοτε καὶ μὴ ἀμελήσητε.’

ἀλλὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ἔσται, ὁ Κρίτων· ἀλλ’ ὥρα εἰ τὶ ἀλλὸ λέγεις.


ταῦτα ἐρωμένου αὐτοῦ οὐδὲν ἐτί ἀπεκρίνατο, ἀλλ’ ἄλγον χρόνον διαλιπὼν ἐκινήθη τε καὶ ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἐξεκάλυψεν αὐτόν, καὶ ὁ τὰ ὀμματα ἐστησεν· ἰδὼν δὲ ὁ Κρίτων συνέλαβε τὸ στόμα καὶ τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς.

ἡδὲ ή τελευτή, ὡς Ἐχέκρατε, τοῦ ἐταίρου ἦμιν ἐγένετο, ἄνδρός, ὡς ἦμεις φαίμεν ἃν, τῶν τότε ἰδὼν ἐπειράθημεν ἄριστον καὶ ἄλλως φρονιμοτάτου καὶ δικαιοτάτου.

ἀλλως: otherwise, in another way, 14
ἀπο-κρίνομαι: to answer, reply, 13
ἄριστος, -ης, -ον: best, most excellent, 6
δια-λείπω: to leave (an interval) between, 2
δίκαιος, -ας, -ατος: just, righteous, fair, 13
ἐκ-καλύπτω: to uncover, disclose, 2
ἐρομαι: to ask, enquire, question, 12
ἔταίρος, ὁ: a comrade, companion, mate, 11
ἔστημι: to make stand, fix, set up, stop, 3

κινέω: to set in motion, move, agitate, 3
ὀμμα, -ατος, τὸ: the eye, 5
ὀφθαλμός, ὁ: the eye, 3
πειράω: to try, test, make trial of (gen.), 11
στόμα, -ατος, τὸ: mouth, 1
συλ-λαμβάνω: hold together, close; help, 1
τελευτή, ἡ: an end, completion; death, 1
φρόνιμος, -ον: sensible, wise, prudent, 8

11 ταῦτα...αὐτοῦ: gen. abs., αὐτοῦ refers to Crito
12 διαλιπὼν: aor. pple, see 117ε7
ἐκινήθη: 3s aor. pass., the poison creates violent convulsions, which Plato, likely out of respect, does not emphasize in the narrative
13 ὃς: this one; demonstrative, i.e. Socrates ἐστησεν: transitive aor. ἔστημι

идὼν: nom. sg. aor. pple ὀράω (εἶδον)
16 ὡς: as…; parenthetical remark
φαίμεν ἃν: could…; potential opt. φημί
τῶν τότε: of those (men) at that time; partitive gen.
ἐν ἐπειράθημεν: whom we made trial of, whom we experienced; aor. pass. deponent, πειράω
καὶ ἄλλως: and otherwise; i.e. and also
Glossary
## Nouns and Pronouns

### Declensions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ἡ κρήνη, τῆς κρήνης - spring</td>
<td>ὁ ἄγρος, τοῦ ἄργου - field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>τῆς κρήνης</td>
<td>τῶν ἄγρων</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>τῇ κρήνῃ</td>
<td>τοῖς ἄγροις</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>τῷ ἄγρῳ</td>
<td>τοῖς ἄγροις</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Personal Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ἐγώ</td>
<td>ἡμεῖς</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ἐμοῦ μου</td>
<td>ἡμῶν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ἐμοί μοι</td>
<td>ἡμῖν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ἐμέ</td>
<td>ἡμᾶς</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Nom. | ὑμῖν | ὑμᾶς | you |
| Gen. | σοῦ σου | ὑμῶν | your |
| Dat. | σοί σοι | ὑμῖν | to you |
| Acc. | σέ σοι | ὑμᾶς | you |

| Nom. | αὐτός (himself), αὐτή (herself), αὐτό (itself) | αὐτά (themselves) |
| Gen. | αὐτοῦ his | αὐτῆς her | αὐτοῦ its |
| Dat. | αὐτῷ to him | αὐτῇ to her | αὐτῷ to it |
| Acc. | αὐτόν him | αὐτήν her | αὐτό it |
| Nom. | αὐτοῖ (themselves) | αὐταῖ (themselves) | αὐτά (themselves) |
| Gen. | αὐτῶν their | αὐταῖς their | αὐτῶν their |
| Dat. | αὐτοῖς to them | αὐταῖς to them | αὐτοῖς to them |
| Acc. | αὐτοῦσ them | αὐταῖσ them | αὐτά them |

### Relative Pronoun – who, which, that

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ὃς</td>
<td>ἦς</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>οὗ</td>
<td>ἦς</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ὁ</td>
<td>ἦ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ὅν</td>
<td>ἦν</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Indefinite Relative Pronoun – whoever, anyone who; whatever, anything which

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ὁστις</td>
<td>ἡτις</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ὁστινος (ὁτου)</td>
<td>ἡστινος</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ὁστιν (ὁτω)</td>
<td>ἡστιν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ὁστινα</td>
<td>ἡστινα</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Nom. | αστινες | αστινες | αστινα |
| Gen. | ἀστινων (ἀτων) | ἀστινων | ἀστινων (ἀτων) |
| Dat. | ἀστισιν (ἀτοις) | ἀστισιν | ἀστισιν (ἀτοις) |
| Acc. | ἀστινας | ἀστινας | ἀστινα |
### Correlative Adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interrogative</th>
<th>Indefinite</th>
<th>Demonstrative</th>
<th>Relative</th>
<th>Indefinite Relative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>πού</td>
<td>πού</td>
<td>ενθάδε</td>
<td>ού</td>
<td>ὁπού</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>where?</td>
<td>somewhere</td>
<td>here</td>
<td>where</td>
<td>where(vert)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ποῖ</td>
<td>ποί</td>
<td>δεύρο</td>
<td>οῖ</td>
<td>ὁποῖ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to where?</td>
<td>to somewhere</td>
<td>to here</td>
<td>to where</td>
<td>to where(vert)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>πόθεν</td>
<td>ποθεν</td>
<td>ενθένδε</td>
<td>οθεν</td>
<td>ὁπόθεν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from where?</td>
<td>from anywhere</td>
<td>from here</td>
<td>from where</td>
<td>from where(vert)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>πότε</td>
<td>ποτέ</td>
<td>τότε</td>
<td>ὅτε</td>
<td>ὁπότε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>when?</td>
<td>at some time, ever, then</td>
<td>at that time, then</td>
<td>when</td>
<td>when(vert)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>πῶς</td>
<td>πῶς</td>
<td>ὦδε, ὦτως</td>
<td>ὦς</td>
<td>ὁπῶς</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how?</td>
<td>somehow</td>
<td>thus, so in this way</td>
<td>how, as</td>
<td>how(vert)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Correlative Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interrogative</th>
<th>Indefinite</th>
<th>Demonstrative</th>
<th>Relative</th>
<th>Indefinite Relative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>τίς, τι</td>
<td>τίς, τι</td>
<td>ὁδε οὕτως</td>
<td>ὅς, ἢ, ὴ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>who, what?</td>
<td>someone/thing</td>
<td>this (ἕ)κεῖνος</td>
<td>who, which</td>
<td>anyone who, whoever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>πότερος</td>
<td>ποτερος</td>
<td>ἐτερος</td>
<td>ὁπότερος</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which of two?</td>
<td>one of two</td>
<td>one (of two)</td>
<td>which of two</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>πόσος</td>
<td>ποσος</td>
<td>τοσόδε</td>
<td>ὁπόσος</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how much?</td>
<td>of some amount</td>
<td>so much/many</td>
<td>of whatever size/number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ποῖος</td>
<td>ποῖος</td>
<td>τοιοῦδε</td>
<td>ὁποῖος</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of what sort?</td>
<td>of some sort</td>
<td>such</td>
<td>of whatever sort</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>πηλίκος</td>
<td>πηλικος</td>
<td>τηλικόδε</td>
<td>ὠπηλικός</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how old/large?</td>
<td>of some age</td>
<td>so old/young/ of such an age</td>
<td>of whatever age/size</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Verb Synopsis (Attic)

λύω, λύσω, ἐλυσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην: loosen, ransom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>FUTURE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Active</strong></td>
<td><strong>Middle/Pass.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύω</td>
<td>λύομαι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύεις</td>
<td>λύε(σ)αι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύει</td>
<td>λύεται</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύομεν</td>
<td>λύομεθα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύέτε</td>
<td>λύεσθε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύουσι(ν)</td>
<td>λύουσται</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Secondary</strong></td>
<td><strong>Indicative</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Active</strong></td>
<td><strong>Middle</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td><strong>Passive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύω</td>
<td>λύομαι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύης</td>
<td>λύη</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύη</td>
<td>λύηται</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύομεν</td>
<td>λυόμεθα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύέτε</td>
<td>λύεσθε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύουσι(ν)</td>
<td>λύουσται</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subjunctive</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Active</strong></td>
<td><strong>Middle/Pass.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύοιμι</td>
<td>λυοίμην</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύοις</td>
<td>λύοι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύοι</td>
<td>λύοιτο</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύοιμεν</td>
<td>λυοίμεθα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύοιτε</td>
<td>λύοισθε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύοιεν</td>
<td>λύοιντο</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Optative</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Active</strong></td>
<td><strong>Middle/Pass.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύοιμι</td>
<td>λυοίμην</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύοις</td>
<td>λύοι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύοι</td>
<td>λύοιτο</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύοιμεν</td>
<td>λυοίμεθα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύοιτε</td>
<td>λύοισθε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύοιεν</td>
<td>λύοιντο</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imp</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύε</td>
<td>λύε(σ)ο</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύέτε</td>
<td>λύεσθε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plp</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύων</td>
<td>λύομενος,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύουσα</td>
<td>λυομένη,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύον</td>
<td>λυομενον</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inf</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύειν</td>
<td>λύεσθαι</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2nd sg. mid/pass -σ is often dropped except in pf. and plpf. tenses: ε(σ)αι → ηιει ε(σ)ο → ου
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AORIST</th>
<th>PERFECT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Active</strong></td>
<td><strong>Middle</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐλύσα</td>
<td>ἐλυσάμην</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐλυσάς</td>
<td>ἐλύσα(σ)ο</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐλευ(ν)</td>
<td>ἐλυσάμεθα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐλύσαμεν</td>
<td>ἐλυσάθε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐλύσατε</td>
<td>ἐλύσαντο</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐλύσαι</td>
<td>ἐλύσαι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύσω</td>
<td>λυσώμαι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λῦση</td>
<td>λυσῃ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύσωμεν</td>
<td>λυσώμεθα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύσητε</td>
<td>λυσῆθε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύσωσι(ν)</td>
<td>λυσῶσι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύσαιμι</td>
<td>λυσαιμῆν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύσαι</td>
<td>λυσαῖο</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύσαι</td>
<td>λυσαιτο</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύσαιμεν</td>
<td>λυσαιμέθα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύσατε</td>
<td>λυσαῖθε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύσαιν</td>
<td>λυσαίντο</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύσαι</td>
<td>λυσαῖ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύσατε</td>
<td>λυσαὐθε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύσαι, λύσασα, λύσαν</td>
<td>λυσάμενος, λυσάμενη, λυσάμενον</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>λύσαι</td>
<td>λυσασθαί</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adapted from a handout by Dr. Helma Dik (http://classics.uchicago.edu/faculty/dik/niftygreek)
### -μι verbs (Attic)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Aorist</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>ίμι, ίμεν</td>
<td>ίμεν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ίσι, ίτε</td>
<td>ίτε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ίσιν, ίάσι</td>
<td>ίσαν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp</td>
<td>έι, έτε</td>
<td>έτε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pple</td>
<td>έις, έισα, έν</td>
<td>έσ, έσα, έν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>άντος, έισας, άντος</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inf.</td>
<td>ίέναι, έριμέναι</td>
<td>έιναι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle</td>
<td>ίέμαι, ίέμαθα</td>
<td>έμεθα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ίέσαι, ίέσθη</td>
<td>έσθη</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ίένται, ίέντα</td>
<td>έντα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp</td>
<td>ίέσθη</td>
<td>έσθη</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pple</td>
<td>ίέμενος, ή, έν</td>
<td>έμενος, ή, έν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inf.</td>
<td>ίέσθαι</td>
<td>έσθαι</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### ίστημι, στήσω, έστην, έστηκα, έσταμαι, έστάθην: stand, stop, set

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>1st Aorist (transitive)</th>
<th>Aorist (intransitive)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>ίστημι, ίσταμεν</td>
<td>έστησα, έστησαμεν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ίστης, ίστατε</td>
<td>έστησα, έστησατε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ίστησιν, ιστάσιν</td>
<td>έστησα, έστησατε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp</td>
<td>ίστη, ίστατε</td>
<td>στήσον, στήσατε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pple</td>
<td>ίστάς, ιστάσα, ιστάν</td>
<td>στήσας, άσα, άν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ιστάντος, ιστάσα, ιστάντος</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inf.</td>
<td>ίστάναι</td>
<td>στήσαι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle</td>
<td>ίσταμαι, ίστάμεθα</td>
<td>έστησαμεν, έστησαμεθα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ίστασαι, ίστασθη</td>
<td>έστησα, έστησατε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp</td>
<td>ίστασο, ίστασθη</td>
<td>στήσαι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pple</td>
<td>ίσταμενος, ή, έν</td>
<td>στησαμενος, ή, έν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inf.</td>
<td>ίστασθαι</td>
<td>στησαθαι</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Synopses: -μι verbs (Attic)

#### δίδωμι, δώσω, ἔδωκα, δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην: give

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Aorist</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>δίδωμι</td>
<td>δίδομεν</td>
<td>ἔδωκα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>δίδοσ</td>
<td>δίδοσαι</td>
<td>ἔδωκα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>δίδωσιν</td>
<td>δίδοσαι</td>
<td>ἔδωκα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp</td>
<td>δίδου</td>
<td>δίδοτε</td>
<td>δό</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pple</td>
<td>διδοὺς, διδοῦσα, διδόν</td>
<td>δόυσ, δοῦσα, δόν</td>
<td>δότος, δοῦσα, δόν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inf.</td>
<td>διδόναι</td>
<td>δοῦναι</td>
<td>δόμεναι</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle</td>
<td>δίδομαι διδόμεθα</td>
<td>ἐδομην ἐδομεθα</td>
<td>ἐδομην</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>δίδοσαι διδόσθη</td>
<td>ἐδοσσο ἐδοσθε</td>
<td>ἐδοσου</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>δίδοται διδόνται</td>
<td>ἐδοστο ἐδοσντο</td>
<td>ἐδοστο</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp</td>
<td>δίδου</td>
<td>δίδοσθη</td>
<td>δόσθη</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pple</td>
<td>διδόμενος, η, ον</td>
<td>δόμενος, η, ον</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inf.</td>
<td>διδοσθαι</td>
<td>δόσθαι</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα, τέθηκα, τέθειμαι, ἔτεθην: put, place; make

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Aorist</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>τίθημι</td>
<td>τίθεμεν</td>
<td>ἐθήκα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>τίθησ</td>
<td>τίθετε</td>
<td>ἐθηκα</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>τίθησιν</td>
<td>τιθέασιν</td>
<td>ἐθηκεν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp</td>
<td>τίθει</td>
<td>τίθετε</td>
<td>θεσ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pple</td>
<td>τιθεις, τιθεισα, τιθεν</td>
<td>θεις, θεισα, θεν</td>
<td>θεντος, θεισα, θεντος</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inf.</td>
<td>τιθεναι</td>
<td>θειναι</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle</td>
<td>τιθεμαι τιθεμεθα</td>
<td>ἐθεμην ἐθεμεθα</td>
<td>ἐθεμην</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>τιθεσαι τιθεσθε</td>
<td>ἐθεσου ἐθεσθε</td>
<td>ἐθεσου</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>τιθεται τιθενται</td>
<td>ἐθετο ἐθεντο</td>
<td>ἐθετο</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp</td>
<td>τιθεσο</td>
<td>τιθεσθε</td>
<td>θεσ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pple</td>
<td>τιθεμενος, η, ον</td>
<td>θεμενος, η, ον</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inf.</td>
<td>τιθεσθαι</td>
<td>θεσθαι</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Synopses: οἶδα, εἰμί, εἴμι

**οἶδα: to know (pf. with pres. sense)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>οἶδα</td>
<td>ἤδη</td>
<td>ἤσμεν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>οἴσθα</td>
<td>ἥδησθα</td>
<td>ἥστε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>οἴδε</td>
<td>ἥδει</td>
<td>ἥσαν</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imp</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ἵσθι</td>
<td>ἵστε</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pple</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>εἰδός, εἰδύια, εἰδός</td>
<td>εἰδεῖν εἰδεῖμεν</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>εἰδότος, εἰδύιας, εἰδότος</td>
<td>εἰδείς εἰδεῖτε</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inf.</td>
<td>εἰδέναι</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subj. opt</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>εἰδῶ εἰδῶμεν</td>
<td>εἰδεῖν εἰδεῖμεν</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>εἰδής εἰδήτε</td>
<td>εἰδείς εἰδεῖτε</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>εἰδὴ εἰδώσι</td>
<td>εἰδείη εἰδεῖν</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ἐἰμί (to be)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>εἰμί</td>
<td>ἐσμέν</td>
<td>ἦ, ἦν ἦμεν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>εἶ</td>
<td>ἐστέ</td>
<td>ἡσθα ἦτε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>εἶστιν</td>
<td>εἰσίν</td>
<td>ἦν ἦσαν</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imp</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ἵσθι</td>
<td>ἵστε</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pple</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ὁν, οὐσα, ὄν</td>
<td>εἰην εἰμεν</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ὄντος, οὐσης, ὄντος</td>
<td>εϊης εϊτε</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inf.</td>
<td>εἰναι</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subj. opt</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ὦ</td>
<td>ὦμεν</td>
<td>ειην ειμεν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἦς</td>
<td>ἦτε</td>
<td>εϊης εϊτε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἤ</td>
<td>ὦσιν</td>
<td>ειη ειεν</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ἐἰμι (will go; present is employed as the fut. of ἔρχομαι)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>εἰμί</td>
<td>ἤμεν</td>
<td>ἦ, ἦμεν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>εἶ</td>
<td>ἤτε</td>
<td>ἦεισθα ἦτε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>εἰσι</td>
<td>ἤσιν</td>
<td>ἦειν ἦσαν</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imp</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ἵθι</td>
<td>ἵτε</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pple</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ἵων, ἱοῦσα, ἰόν</td>
<td>ιοιμί ιοιμεν</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἱόντος, ἱούσης, ἱόντος</td>
<td>ιοίσ ιοίτε</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inf.</td>
<td>εἰναι</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subj. opt</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ἵω</td>
<td>ἵωμεν</td>
<td>ιοιμί ιοιμεν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἰς</td>
<td>ἱτε</td>
<td>ιοίσ ιοίτε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἦ</td>
<td>ἱσιν</td>
<td>ιοί ιοιεν</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Image of the synopses table]

---

232
**φύω**

φύω is transitive or intransitive depending on the form. The present active, future active, and 1st aorist forms are transitive (produce, beget), while the present middle, future middle, 2nd aorist active, and perfect active are intransitive (be, be born). As the superscripts reveal below, the forms of φύω and its compounds ἐκφύω and ἔκφυω are employed once each in the present and future but numerous times in the 1st aorist, 2nd aorist, and perfect tenses.

transitive (bring forth, beget, produce): φύω, φύσω, ἔφυσα
intransitive (be (by nature), be born): φύομαι, φύσομαι, ἔφυν, πέφυκα

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1st aorist (begat)</th>
<th>2nd aorist (formed as -μι verb) (be, be born)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ἔφυσα</td>
<td>ἔφυσαμεν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἔφυσας</td>
<td>ἔφυσατε</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἔφυσε</td>
<td>ἔφυσαν</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>φύσας</td>
<td>φύσασα, φύσαν</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pple φύσας, φύσασα, φύσαν φύς, φύσα, φύν

There are two additional points worth noting: (1) The 2nd aorist ἔφυν and its participle are employed often in the tragedy and follow the paradigm of 2nd aorist -μι verb, as above. (2) The 2nd aorist ἔφυν and perfect πέφυκα are very often translated with the present tense of the verb “to be” and govern nominative predicates.

**φαίνω**

φαίνω is also transitive or intransitive depending on the form. The 1st aorist active, 1st perfect, and 1st aorist passive are transitive (show, reveal), while the 2nd aorist active, 2nd perfect, and 2nd aorist passive are intransitive (appear). Some forms, such as the future passive and perfect passive, can be translated either way depending on the context. As the superscripts reveal, the forms of φαίνω and its compounds ἐκφαίνω and προφαίνω are employed with the following frequencies:

transitive (show, reveal):
φαίνω, φανέω (φανέομαι), ἔφηνα, πέφαγκα, πέφασαι, ἔφάνθην
show, will show, showed, have shown, have been shown, were shown

intransitive (appear):
φαίνομαι, φανήσομαι (φανέομαι), ---, πέφηνα, πέφασαι, ἔφάνην
appear, will appear, appeared, have appeared, have appeared, appeared

In some instances, it is difficult to decide between “was shown (to be)” and “appeared,” and so the frequencies above are but approximations. Note that both the future φανέω and aorist pass. ἔφανην, which employs the stem φαν- in participles and subjunctives, share a similar stem. Since both forms are found somewhat frequently, readers must be careful to distinguish the future from the perfect passive stem by the endings and context.
Plato’s *Phaedo*
Alphabetized Vocabulary (20 or more times)

The following is an alphabetized list of all words that occur twenty or more times in *Phaedo*. These words are not included in the commentary and therefore must be reviewed as soon as possible. The number of occurrences, indicated at the end of the dictionary entry, were tabulated by the author. A .doc file of these core words and a “10 to 19 times” list may be downloaded from the website.

- ἀ-θάνατος, -ον: undying, immortal, 28
- ἀγαθός, ἡ, ὁν: good, brave, capable, 28
- ἀεὶ: always, forever, in every case, 47
- ἀιτία, ἡ: cause, responsibility, blame, 31
- ἀκούω, ἀκούσμαι, ἴκουσα, ἀκῆκοα, ἴκουσθῆν: to hear, listen to, 42
- ἀληθής, ἐς: true, 63
- ἀλλά, ἀλλήλος, ἀ-α, ὁν: one another, 28
- ἀλλος, ἀ-η, ὁ: other, 200
- ἀλλος, ἀγκαῖος, ζα-αι, ἐκούσθην: necessary, inevitable, 20
- ἀλήρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ: a man, 31
- ἀνθρώπος, ὁ: human being, 66
- ἀπ-όλλυµι, ἀ-λω, ὤλεσα, ὠλωλα: to destroy, lose; mid. perish, die, 16
- ἀποθνῄσκω, ἀθανοῦαι, ἐθανοῦ, -τεθνηκα: to die off, perish, 39
- ἀπό: from, away from. (+ gen.), 31
- ἄρα: introduces a yes/no question, 37
- ἄρα: then, therefore, it seems, it turns out, 51
- ἀρμονία, ἡ: harmony, a fastening, joint, 44
- αὖ: again, once more; further, moreover, 42
- αὐτός, -η, -ο: -self; he, she, it; the same, 455
- αὐτοῦ (ἐαυτοῦ), ἦς, -οῦ: himself, herself, itself, themselves, 37
- ἀφικνέομαι, ἀφίξομαι, ἀφικόμην, —, ἀφίγμαι, —: to come, arrive, 32
- βίος, ὁ: life, 28
- βουλομαι: to wish, be willing, desire, 28
- γάρ: for, since, 322
- γε: at least, at any rate; indeed, 172
- γῆ, γῆς ἡ: earth, land, ground, 44
- γενομαι, γενησομαι, ἐγενόμην, γέγονα: come to be, be born, 143
- δέ: but, and, on the other hand, 474
- δεί: it is necessary, must, ought (+ inf.), 37
- δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδέξαμην, δέδεγμαι, ἐδέχθην: to receive, accept, 26
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Greek Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>δὴ</td>
<td>indeed, surely, really, certainly, just</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>διά</td>
<td>through (gen), on account of, because of (acc)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δοκέω, δόξω, ἐδοξα, δέδογµαι</td>
<td>to seem (good), think, imagine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δύο</td>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐάν</td>
<td>if (+ subj.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ</td>
<td>himself, herself, itself, themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἔγω-γε</td>
<td>I for my part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἑαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ</td>
<td>himself, herself, itself, themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐγὼ</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐἰ-περ</td>
<td>if really, if that is to say (to imply doubt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐι</td>
<td>if, whether</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐἰς, µία, ἐν</td>
<td>one, single, alone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐς</td>
<td>into, to, in regard to (+ acc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐκ, ἐξ</td>
<td>out of, from (+ gen.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐκαστὸς, -η, -ον</td>
<td>each, every one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐκέννος, -η, -ον</td>
<td>that, those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐλάττων, -ον</td>
<td>smaller, fewer; less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐµαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ</td>
<td>myself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐν</td>
<td>in, on, among. (+ dat.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐναντίος, -α, -ον</td>
<td>opposite, contrary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐοικα</td>
<td>to be like, seem likely (dat.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐπι-ειτα</td>
<td>then, next, secondly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐπειδᾶν</td>
<td>whenever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐπειδή</td>
<td>when, since, after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐπί</td>
<td>near, at (gen.), to (acc), near, at (dat.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐπιστήµη, ἑ</td>
<td>knowledge, understand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐρέω</td>
<td>will speak (fut. λέγω)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐρχοµαι, ἐµι, ἡλθον, ἐληλυθα</td>
<td>—, —: to come or go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐτερος, -α, -ον</td>
<td>one of two, other, different</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἐτι</td>
<td>still, besides, further</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ἐχεκράτης, ὁ</td>
<td>Echecrates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ἐχω, Ἐξω, Ἐσχον, Ἐσχηκα</td>
<td>have, hold, possess; be able; be disposed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ζάω</td>
<td>to live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἥ</td>
<td>or (either...or); than</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἡγεοµαι, ἡγῆσοµαι, ἡγησάµην,, ἡγῆθην</td>
<td>lead; consider, believe (dat.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἡµεῖς</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἡµέρα</td>
<td>day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ἡµῖλ</td>
<td>to say, (ἡ δ’ ὦς – ‘he said’),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θάνατος, ὁ</td>
<td>death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θεός, ὁ</td>
<td>a god, divinity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θνῆσκω, θανοῦµαι, ἔθανον, τέθνηκα</td>
<td>to die</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ικανός, -ης, -ον: enough, sufficient; capable, 27
Τοσος, -ης, -ον: equal to, the same as, like, 30
καθαρός, -άς, -ον: clean, pure, spotless, 22
καλέω, καλέω, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην: to call, summon, 24
καλός, -άς, -όν: beautiful, fair, noble, fine, 32
καί: and; also, even, too, in fact, 1371
κακός, -ής, -όν: bad, base, cowardly, evil, 20
καλέω, καλέω, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην: to call, summon, 24
καλέω, καλέω, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην: to call, summon, 24
κατά: down from (gen), down along (acc), 78
Κέβης, Κέβητος ο: Cebes, 90
Κρίτων, Κρίτωνος ο: Crito, 22
λαμβάνω, λήσω, ἔλαθον, λέληθα: to take, receive, catch, grasp, 29
λέγω, λέξω (ἐρέω), ἔλεξα (ἐίπον), εἶλοχα, ἔλέγην: to say, speak, tell, 214
λόγος ο: word, speech, discourse, account 115
μάλιστα: most of all; certainly, especially, 28
μάλλον: more, rather, 38
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, great, important, 25
μείζων, μείζον: larger, greater, 26
μέλλω: to be about to, intend to (fut. inf.) 19
μέν: on the one hand, 214
μέντοι: however, nevertheless; certainly, 37
μετά: with (+ gen.); after (+ acc.), 30
μη-δέ: and not, but not, nor, 20
μη: not, lest, 151
μηδ-είς, μηδ-είμαι, μηδ-έν: no one, nothing, 24
μὴ: truly, surely, certainly, 22
μόνος, -ης, -ον: alone, only, solitary, 28
νῦν: now; as it is, 55
ο, η, το: the, 2279
οδε, ήδε, τόδε: this, this here, 45
οθέα: to know, 38
οθομαι (οθμαι), οθοσομαι, οθήθην: to suppose, think, imagine, 71
οιος, -α, -ον: of what sort, as, 56
ομο-λογέω: to agree, acknowledge, 25
ομοιος, -α, -ον: similar, resembling, 24
οπως: how, in what way; in order that, that 10
οράω, ορομαι, ειδον, ἐώρακα, ἐώραμαι, ὠθην: to see, behold, 135
οροθος, -ης, -ον: straight, upright, right, 25
ος, η, ο: who, which, that, 360
οςος -ης -ον: as many as; all who, all which 22
οπερ, ήπερ, οπερ: the very one who, very thing which, 42
οτις, ήτις, ο τι: whoever, whichever, whatever, 30
 résultis, ήtis, ὁ tì: whoever, whichever, whatever, 30
ὅταν: ὅτε ἂν, whenever, 28
ὅτι: that; because, 116
οὐ-δέ: and not, but not, nor, not even, 73
οὐ-τε: and not, neither...nor, 34
οὐ, ούκ, οὐχ: not, 306
οὐδ-εἰς, οὔδε-μία, οὐδ-ἐν: no one, nothing, 94
οὐκόν: therefore, then, accordingly, 42
οὖ: and so, then; at all events, 130
οὔτς, αὕτη, τούτο: this, these, 459
οὔτως: in this way, thus, so, 104
πάλιν: again, once more; back, backwards, 26
πάνυ: quite, entirely, exceedingly, 70
πάρ-ειµι: to be near, be present, be at hand, 29
παρά: from, beside, alongside; in respect to 36
πᾶς, πάσα, πάν: every, all, the whole, 122
πάσχω, πείσω, ἔπαθον, πέπονθα: to suffer, experience, 43
πείθω, πείσω, ἔπεισα, πέποιησα, ἔπεισοµαι, ἔπεισθην: persuade, win over, trust; mid. obey, 29
περί: around, about, concerning, 123
ποιέω, ποιήσω, πεποίησα, πεποίησα, ἐποίησα: to make, 64
πολύς, πολλά, πολύ: much, many, 102
ποτέ: ever, at some time, once, 27
πού: somewhere, I suppose, 48
πρίν: until, before, 28
πρός: to (acc), near, in addition to (dat), 62
πρότερος, -α, -αν: previous; earlier, 29
πρώτος, -η, -ον: first, earliest, 25
πώς: how? in what way?, 34
Σιµµίας, Σιµµίου, ὁ: Simmias, 85
σκοπέω (for ther tenses, use σκέπτοµαι): to look at, examine, consider, 30
σύ: you, 112
σφόδρα: very much, exceedingly, earnestly 18
Σωκράτης, -οῦς, ὁ: Socrates, 117
σῶµα, -ατος, τό: the body, 104
τε: and, both, 152
τελευτάω, τελευτήσω, ἐτελεύτησα, τετελεύτηκα: to end, finish; die, 31
τις, τί: anyone, anything, someone, -thing, 283
τίς, τί: who? which? 117
τοι-νυν: well then; therefore, accordingly, 21
τοιοῦτος, -άτης, -αὐτός: such, 20
τοιοῦτος, -αὐτη, -οὕτο: such, 103
τόπος, ὁ: a place, region, 22
τότε: then, at that time, 30
τυγχάνω, τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον, τετύχημα: chance upon, meet, get; happen 51
ὑμεῖς: you, 28
ὑπό: by, because of, from (gen), under (dat) 50

Φαίδων, -ωνος, ὁ: Phaedo, 31
φαινω, φανῶ, ἐφηνα, ἐφάνθην (ἐφάνην): show; mid. appear, seem, 46
φέρω, οἶσω, ἡνεγκα, ἔνηνοχα, ἡνέχθην: to bear, carry, bring, convey, 20
φημι, φήσω, ἐφησα: to say, claim, assert, 304

χρή: it is necessary, is fitting; must, ought, 23
χρόνος, ὁ: time, 47
ψυχή, ἡ: breath, life, spirit, soul, 138
ὦ: O! oh! 164
ὡς: as, thus, so, that; when, since, 166
ὡςπερ: as, just as, as if, 81
ὡςτε: so that, that, so as to, 23